

体育学院本科讲义

英 語



北京体育学院外語教研組編写

体育学院本科讲义

英 語

北京体育学院外语教研组编写

人民体育出版社

一九六四年·北京

統一書号: 7015·1192

体育学院本科讲义

英 語

北京体育学院外語教研組編写

*

人民体育出版社出版·北京天壇路·

(北京市書刊出版業營業許可証出字第 049 号)

北京崇文印刷厂印刷

新华書店北京發行所發行

全国新华書店經售

*

850×1168毫米 1/32 277千字 印張 11 $\frac{23}{32}$

1963年6月第1版

1984年8月第2次印刷

印數: 1,501—3,000册

定价: [10]1.70元

編 者 的 話

这本講义是供体育学院和高等院校体育系科学生学习英語之用。本講义由課文、簡明語法和总詞彙表三部分組成。共有課文83篇，單詞1926个。学完整本講义約需250到300学时，相当于5到6个学期（每週3学时）。本講义开始部分比較淺，略有英語基础的学生可以从头学起；基础較好的学生可以根据情况从当中学起。在教完这本講义后，教师可根据学生的实际水平，安排专业閱讀的教学。

編写本講义的原則是：課文为主，語法为輔。在課文方面，第1課到第68課属于基础性質的課文，每課都附有課文練習和語法練習；第69到第83課属于过渡性質的課文，每一課后不附練習。每到一定阶段，还安排有复习課。語法沒有分开編入每一課中，而是集中起来，成为一个系統的簡明語法部分。在进行語法教学时，教师可根据每課的語法練習內容，参考附录，給学生进行一些必要的講解，然后引导学生做練習。語音和构詞法部分，教师可以选择适当的时候，抽出一定時間进行教学，并要求学生把常用的不規則動詞記熟。关于課时的划分，教师可根据本单位的外語学时数和学生的实际水平适当安排。

在教学中，應該严格要求，充分利用听、說、讀、写等手段，引导学生反复練習，在69課以前要特別重視口头練習，務必使学生熟練地掌握每一課的語言材料。

本講义由张俊福、林明劍同志編写，在編写过程中曾得到賈世儀、程千里两位同志的帮助。由于編者水平有限，編写時間短促，还存在不少缺点，誠懇地希望提出批評和指正。

編者

1963年1月

目 录

Lesson 1.	What and Where	1
Lesson 2.	Who	2
Lesson 3.	The Verb "to be" (I)	3
Lesson 4.	The Verb "to be" (II).....	4
Lesson 5.	The Verb "to have" (I)	5
Lesson 6.	The Verb "to have" (II)	6
Lesson 7.	The Verb "to do" (I)	8
Lesson 8.	The Verb "to do" (II)	9
Lesson 9.	Revision Exercises	11
Lesson 10.	Revision Exercises	12
Lesson 11.	Possessives	13
Lesson 12.	Objective Case and the Plural of Nouns.....	14
Lesson 13.	Two Kinds of Verb	16
Lesson 14.	The Positive Degree	17
Lesson 15.	The Comparative Degree	18
Lesson 16.	The Superlative Degree	20
Lesson 17.	Time (I)	22
Lesson 18.	Time (II).....	23
Lesson 19.	Revision Exercises	24
Lesson 20.	Revision Exercises	25
Lesson 21.	Our Classroom	26
Lesson 22.	At an English Lesson	29
Lesson 23.	National Day.....	32
Lesson 24.	Union Is Strength	34

Lesson 25.	A Basketball Game.....	36
Lesson 26.	Our Purpose in Learning English	39
Lesson 27.	Revision Exercises	41
Lesson 28.	A Student's Day	43
Lesson 29.	The Food	46
Lesson 30.	Revision Exercises	48
Lesson 31.	Revision Exercises	50
Lesson 32.	China	53
Lesson 33.	The Cock Crowed at Midnight	56
Lesson 34.	Going to the Stadium.....	60
Lesson 35.	Exercise	64
Lesson 36.	Revision Exercises	67
Lesson 37.	Alexander Matrosov	70
Lesson 38.	A Letter.....	74
Lesson 39.	Round the Institute	79
Lesson 40.	Revision Exercises	83
Lesson 41.	The Ass and his Burden	86
Lesson 42.	Education Today	90
Lesson 43.	What Muscles Need	94
Lesson 44.	A Dialogue	99
Lesson 45.	Revision Exercises	103
Lesson 46.	Leaping Forward to Socialism and Communism	106
Lesson 47.	A Game of Football	110
Lesson 48.	An Athletic Meet	114
Lesson 49.	Passing in Basketball	118
Lesson 50.	Revision Exercises	122
Lesson 51.	Relay Race	126
Lesson 52.	Ting-po Catches a Ghost	131
Lesson 53.	Crossing a River	136

Lesson 54.	Revision Exercises	140
Lesson 55.	A Few Things about Karl Marx	144
Lesson 56.	In Training	147
Lesson 57.	Speed Walking	150
Lesson 58.	Revision Exercises	155
Lesson 59.	Can a Man Lift an Ox?	157
Lesson 60.	The Brave twenty two	162
Lesson 61.	Second Wind	166
Lesson 62.	Learning by Heart	170
Lesson 63.	Revision Exercises	174
Lesson 64.	My Private Property (I)	177
Lesson 65.	My Private Property (II)	182
Lesson 66.	A Letter to the Youth (I)	187
Lesson 67.	A Letter to the Youth (II)	191
Lesson 68.	Revision Exercises	195
Lesson 69.	Football	197
Lesson 70.	Running	200
Lesson 71.	The Muscle	203
Lesson 72.	The Story of Miroslav Jurek	205
Lesson 73.	Revision Exercises	208
Lesson 74.	General Footwork in Table Tennis	210
Lesson 75.	Age not Decisive in Sport	212
Lesson 76.	Basketball Game (I)	216
Lesson 77.	Basketball Game (II)	218
Lesson 78.	Revision Exercises	220
Lesson 79.	Warming up	222
Lesson 80.	Ambitions? Possibilities? Limits? (I)	225
Lesson 81.	Ambitions? Possibilities? Limits? (II)	229
Lesson 82.	Conscious Activity in War	232
Lesson 83.	Revision Exercises	236

簡明語法	239
第一部分 語音	239
第二部分 語法	244
第一章 詞和句	244
第二章 名詞 (The Noun)	247
第三章 冠詞 (The Article).....	249
第四章 形容詞 (The Adjective)	249
第五章 數詞 (The Numeral)	251
第六章 代詞 (Pronoun)	254
第七章 動詞 (The Verb)	258
第八章 副詞 (The Adverb)	285
第九章 前置詞 (The Preposition)	287
第十章 連接詞 (The Conjunction)	288
第十一章 感嘆詞 (The Interjection)	289
第十二章 句子種類 (Kinds of Sentences)	290
第十三章 句子類型 (Types of Sentences)	292
第十四章 “It” 的用法	300
第十五章 省略句 (Elliptical Sentences)	303
第十六章 假設語氣 (The Subjunctive Mood)	304
第十七章 標點符號 (Punctuation)	307
第三部分 構詞法	310
第四部分 不規則動詞表	313
總詞彙表	319

LESSON ONE

WHAT AND WHERE

What is it? It is a book.
What is it? It is a pen.
What is it? It is a blackboard.

What colour is the book? The book is red.
What colour is the pen? The pen is blue.
What colour is the blackboard? The blackboard is black.

What day is it to-day? It is Monday.
What time is it? It is ten o'clock.
What is your name? My name is Li-ming.

Where is the book? The book is on the desk.
Where is the desk? The desk is in the room.
Where is the blackboard? The blackboard is on the wall.

EXERCISES

- I. 抄写全课。
- II. 写出课文中的名词。

LESSON TWO

WHO

Who is she? She is my sister.

Who is he? He is my brother.

Who is our English teacher?

Comrade Wang is our English teacher.

Who is she? She is a first-year student.

What is he? He is an athlete.

What are you? I am an athlete too.

Who works at a school? A teacher works at a school.

Who works at a hospital? A doctor works at a hospital.

Who works at a factory? A worker works at a factory.

What colour is the sky? The sky is blue.

It is fine to-day.

Where is Li-ming? He is in the class-room.

He sits by the window.

EXERCISES

I. 抄写全課。

II. 翻譯:

1. 你的兄弟在哪里? 他在房間里。

2. 我在工厂里工作。他的姐姐也在工厂里工作。

III. 列举 1—2 課中的形容詞。

LESSON THREE

THE VERB "TO BE" (I)

I am a student. I study English.

He is a teacher. He teaches English.

She is a doctor. She works at a hospital.

It is a door. The door is close.

It is a window. The window is open.

It is a ball. The ball is round.

You are students. You study English.

They are football players. They play football very well.

We are Chinese. We live in China.

What day is it to-day? It is Tuesday to-day.

Where is the lamp? The lamp is above the desk.

Memory work

I	am
You	are
He (she, it)	is
We	are
They	are

EXERCISES

I. 抄写全課。

II. 翻譯：

我是一年級學生。我在教室里學英語。我在窗子旁邊坐着。
我的書放在書桌上。

Ⅲ. 列举1—3課中的前置詞，并利用这些前置詞各造一个短語。

LESSON FOUR

THE VERB "TO BE" (II)

Is the man your father? Yes, he is my father.

Is the woman your mother? Yes, she is my mother.

Are they your parents? Yes, they are my parents.

Are you a teacher? No, I am not a teacher. I am a first-year student.

Is he an English teacher? No, he is not an English teacher. He is a coach.

Are they Chinese? No, they are not Chinese. They are Russians.

He is not my father. He is my uncle.

She is not my mother. She is my aunt.

They are not workers. They are doctors.

Who are they? They are my brothers and sisters.

Who live in this house? My family live in this house.

Memory work

Am I——?	I am not——
Are you——?	You are not——
Is he (she, it)——?	He (she, it) is not——
Are we——?	We are not——
Are they——?	They are not——

EXERCISES

I. 抄写全課。

II. 翻譯：

1. 他不是一个人医生。
她不是一个工人。
我不是一个英語教員。
2. 他們不是学生。
我們不是教員。
你們不是学生。
3. 你是一个運動員嗎？是的，我是。
誰足球踢得很好？
門是开着的嗎？

LESSON FIVE

THE VERB "TO HAVE" (I)

I have two hands. These are my hands.

I have two feet. These are my feet.

He has two arms. Those are his arms.

She has two legs. Those are her legs.

She has a nose. This is her nose.

She has a mouth. This is her mouth.

We have eyes and ears. They also have eyes and ears.

Is this your right foot? Yes, it is.

Is this his left hand? Yes, it is.

Is this your right leg? No, it isn't.

Is this your left arm? No, it isn't.

What is it? It is a leg.

What is it? It is an arm.

Memory work

I, you, we, they	have
he, she, it	has

EXERCISES

I. 抄写全課。

II. 用 a 或 an 填充下列句子:

1. It is _____ arm.
2. It is _____ ball.
3. It is _____ English book.
4. It is _____ ear.
5. It is _____ lamp.
6. It is _____ eye.

III. 写出1—5課中的名詞、形容詞。

IV. 用 have 或 has 填充下列句子:

1. We _____ a ball.
2. You _____ a book.
3. He _____ an uncle.
4. The student _____ eyes and ears.

LESSON SIX

THE VERB "TO HAVE" (II)

Has she an English book? No, she has not an English book.
Has she a red pen? No, she has not any red pen.

Has he a basketball? No, he has not a basketball.

Has he a football? No, he has not any football.

Have I a head? Yes, I have a head.

Have I a mouth and a nose? Yes, I have a mouth and a nose.

Have they eyes and ears? Yes, they have eyes and ears.

Have they legs and arms? Yes, they have legs and arms.

Have you any shoes? Yes, I have a pair of black shoes.

Have you any jacket? Yes, I have a blue jacket.

Have you any trousers? Yes, I have several trousers.

Have you any shirts? Yes, I have some new shirts.

What colour is your hair? My hair is black.

Who is your coach? Comrade Wang is our coach.

Memory work

Have I _____?	I have not _____
Have you _____?	You have not _____
Has she (he, it) _____?	She (he, it) has not _____
Have we _____?	We have not _____
Have they _____?	They have not _____

EXERCISES

I. 抄写全课。

II. 用“have”或“has”填充下列句子，再把句子改成疑问句，然后用否定句回答。

1. We _____ a football.

2. They _____ a coach.

3. You——a pair of shoes.
4. I——an uncle.
5. He——a brother.
6. She——a sister.

III. 把以下句子改成疑問句，然后用否定句回答

1. The doctor has a new shirt.
2. They have a football.
3. The workers have blue jackets.
4. Comrade Wang is an athlete.

LESSON SEVEN

THE VERB "TO DO" (I)

I live in Peking. She lives in Peking too.

I work at a factory. She works at a hospital.

I am a worker. She is a nurse.

I like swimming. I go to swim in summer.

He likes skating. He goes to skate in winter.

We like basketball. We go to play basketball together.

This is a jacket. These are jackets.

That is a shirt. Those are shirts.

It is a coat. They are coats.

Have you a blue pen? Yes, I have.

Has she a pair of red shoes? No, she hasn't.

Memory work

I, you, we, they	work
he, she, it	works

EXERCISES

I. 抄写全課。

II. 翻譯：

1. 我喜欢游泳。他們喜欢滑冰。他喜欢学习。

2. 我去踢足球。你去学习英语。

III. 找出1—7課中的副詞。

LESSON EIGHT

THE VERB "TO DO" (II)

Do you like swimming? Yes, I like swimming.
Do you like skating? No, I do not like skating.
Does she like basketball? Yes, she likes basketball.
Does she like football? No, she does not like football.

Do we get up early in the morning? Yes, we do.
Do we go to bed at night? Yes, we do..
Do they swim in winter? No, they don't.
Do they skate in summer? No, they don't.
Does he live in Peking? No, he doesn't.
Does he work at a factory? No, he doesn't.

Can you speak English? Yes, I can speak English.
May I speak English? Yes, you may speak English.
Must we speak English? Yes, we must speak English.

Memory work

Do I work . . . ?	I do not (don't) work . . .
Do you work . . . ?	You do not (don't) work . . .
Does he (she, it) work . . . ?	He (she, it) does not (doesn't) work . . .
Do we work . . . ?	We do not (don't) work . . .
Do they work . . . ?	They do not (don't) work . . .

EXERCISES

I. 抄写全課。

II. 翻譯:

1. 你的兄弟教籃球嗎?

不, 他不教籃球。他教足球。

2. 你喜欢滑冰嗎?

不, 我不喜欢滑冰。我喜欢游泳。

III. 将下列句子改为否定句:

1. I live in Peking.

2. I work at a factory.

3. I am a worker.

4. She lives in Peking.

5. She works at a hospital.

6. She is a nurse.

IV. 找出下列單詞中的動詞。

factory, work, together, swim, live, have,
black, red, right, are, foot, teach,
is, study, above, sit, fine, play,

LESSON NINE

REVISION EXERCISES

I. 翻譯以下單詞:

1. 男人, 女人, 父亲, 母亲, 双亲, 伯父(或叔父), 伯母(或叔母), 兄弟, 姐妹, 工人, 学生, 教員, 運動員, 教練員, 医生, 护士, 中国人, 苏联人, 同志。
2. 头, 头髮, 眼睛, 鼻子, 嘴, 耳, 臂, 手, 腿, 脚。
3. 鞋, 褲, 衬衣, 外衣, 夾克。

II. 翻譯以下句子:

1. 他籃球打得很好。
2. 他坐在我旁边。
3. 我喜欢踢足球。
4. 他也喜欢足球。
5. 我冬天去滑冰。
6. 他去工作。
7. 他們去学习英語。
8. 我們家住在这房子里。
9. 窗子开着。
10. 門开着。

III. 用学过的前置詞填充下列句子:

1. They work — the factory and live — this house
2. The book is — the desk.
3. The lamp is — his head.
4. The pen is — my hand.

LESSON TEN

REVISION EXERCISES

I. 改下列句子为疑問句，然后用否定句回答：

1. They work at a hospital.
2. Our teacher sits by the door.
3. The students get up early.
4. My brother studies English.
5. You play basketball together.
6. She can speak English very well.
7. We have legs and arms.
8. She has a red pen.
9. They have books and pens.
10. My sister is a student.
11. We are teachers.
12. The woman is her mother.

II. 写出以下单詞的詞性：

round, china, name, wall, too, early, fine,
right, black, study, new, hand, year,
ball, window, above, sky, go, bed, very,
live, family, well, open, doctor.

III. 翻譯：

1. 你的外衣什么顏色？
2. 誰住這間房子？
3. 工厂在哪儿？
4. 誰是你們的教練？

LESSON ELEVEN

POSSESSIVES

I have an old watch. This is my old watch.

The old watch is mine.

You have a white shirt. This is your white shirt.

The white shirt is yours.

She has a beautiful skirt. This is her beautiful skirt.

The beautiful skirt is hers.

He has a cup. This is his cup.

The cup is his.

We have a large room. This is our room.

The room is ours.

They have many books. These are their books.

The books are theirs.

This newspaper belongs to Li-ming. It is Li-ming's newspaper.

That magazine belongs to the boy. It is the boy's magazine.

The table has four legs. These are the legs of the table.

Our classroom has two windows. Those are the windows of our classroom.

Memory work

I	my	mine	Li-ming's newspaper
you	your	yours	boy's magazine
he	his	his	
she	her	hers	
it	its	its	the legs of the table
we	our	ours	the windows of the
they	their	theirs	classroom

EXERCISES

I. 翻譯

1. 他有三个兄弟。他們是他的兄弟。
2. 你有一件兰色外衣。这件兰色外衣是你的。
3. 这是我的两只手。这两只手是我的。
4. 我們的教練有一块新的手表。这块新的手表是她的。
5. 王同志的書。
6. 我叔叔的鞋。
7. 我們教室的黑板。
8. 他們房間里的床。
9. 这位医生的笔。
10. 李明的杯子。

II. 將下段的主語“*I*”改为“*she*”，句子的其他部分也作相应的改变。

I am a student. I live in this room. This room is mine.
This is my bed. That is my desk. The books on the desk
are also mine.

LESSON TWELVE

OBJECTIVE CASE AND THE PLURAL OF NOUNS

She likes reading books. I give her many books to read.
He likes reading magazines. I give him some magazines to
read.
They like playing ball games. I give them a ball to play.
We like studying English. He gives us English books to
study.

I like doing homework. The teacher gives me homework to do.

This is a boy. They are boys.

This is a girl. They are girls.

He is a man. They are men.

She is a woman. They are women.

He has a knife. The man has three knives.

She has a baby. The woman has three babies.

This is a box. These are boxes.

This is a radio. These are radios.

Please give me two cups of water.

Please give me some paper.

Memory work

I	—	me
you	—	you
he	—	him
she	—	her
it	—	it
we	—	us
they	—	them

boy	—	boys,	book	—	books,
student	—	students,	ball	—	balls
knife	—	knives			
baby	—	babies			
box	—	boxes			
man	—	men,	foot	—	feet,
water	—	a cup of water,	two cups		
		of water			

EXERCISES

I. 按照例句的結構形式翻譯下列句子:

例: He likes reading books.

1. 他喜歡講英語。
2. 我喜歡靠窗子坐着。
3. 我們喜歡早起。

4. 他們喜歡住在北京。

II. 寫出下列名詞的複數:

1. worker, pen, arm, house, shirt, hand, year, athlete, name, cup.
2. coach, watch.
3. man, woman, foot.

LESSON THIRTEEN

TWO KINDS OF VERB

We take breakfast in the morning.

We take lunch at noon.

We take supper in the evening.

We take three meals a day.

They give me a cup of milk.

They give him a cup of coffee.

They give her a piece of bread.

They give us some sugar.

I get up early every morning.

I always go to school by bus after breakfast.

My father comes to school to meet me when classes are over.

We usually walk slowly home together.

Memory work

transitive (with obj.)	intransitive (without obj.)
to take breakfast to do homework	to go by bus to walk slowly
to give us some sugar to teach us English (with two objects—direct and indirect)	to come to school to live in Peking

EXERCISES

1. 找出下列句中的動詞，說明它是及物或不及物，如果是及物，請指出其賓語：

例： 1. They give us some sugar.

及物動詞 間接賓語 直接賓語

2. I get up early every morning.

不及物動詞

1. The doctor works at a hospital.
2. They study English every day.
3. Students do their homework at night.
4. We play basketball together.
5. My parents live in Peking.
6. I give my sister a beautiful skirt.
7. We usually read newspapers in the morning.
8. He sits by me.
9. Students go to the classroom on foot.
10. I give them three cups of water.

LESSON FOURTEEN

THE POSITIVE DEGREE

How tall are you?

I am six feet.

He is as tall as I.

How old are you?

I am eighteen years old.

He is as old as I.

When do you get up in the morning?

I get up at six.

He gets up as early as I.

This book is not so good as that book.

This story is not so interesting as that story.

This box is not so large as that one.

This radio is not so small as that one.

Do you like books? Yes, I do. Please give me one.

Do you like eggs? Yes, I do. Please give me some.

Do you like these fruits? Yes, I do. Please give me them.

EXERCISES

I. 翻譯:

1. 我的英語書和他的英語書一樣新。
2. 這個球和那個球一樣圓。
3. 這個房間和那個房間一樣大。
4. 她走得象我一樣慢。
5. 你籃球打得象我們教練一樣好。
6. 他和我一樣早來到學校。
7. 這件襯衣不象那件襯衣那樣個。
8. 這個女孩子沒有那個女孩子高。
9. 這把小刀不如那把好。

LESSON FIFTEEN

THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE

Jack is fifteen years old.

I am eighteen.

I am older than he.

He is younger than I.

John is five feet and six inches high.

I am six feet.

I am taller than he.

He is shorter than I.

This story is more interesting than that one.

This skirt is more beautiful than that one.

This dictionary is more useful than that one.

This game is more exciting than that one.

Where is the cup? The cup is on the table.

Where is the chair? The chair is under the table.

Where is the bookcase? The bookcase is near the window.

Where is comrade Wang? He is not here. He is at home now.

Memory work

positive	comparative
old	older
young	younger
tall	taller
short	shorter
interesting	more interesting
beautiful	more beautiful
useful	more useful
exciting	more exciting

EXERCISES

I. 翻譯:

1. 王同志比我高。
2. 我的房間比他的小。
3. 我的妹妹比他的妹妹年輕。
4. 他起床比我早。
5. 这兰夾克比那件黑的美。
6. 这本書比那本有用。
7. 請給我一双鞋。
8. 什么時間了? 現在九点了。
9. 這場比賽和那場比賽一样紧张。

LESSON SIXTEEN

THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE

Jack is older than John.

I am older than Jack.

I am the oldest of us three.

Jack is taller than John.

I am taller than Jack.

I am the tallest of us three .

Who is the best student of the class?

Jack is the best student of the class.

Which ball game is the most exciting of all?

Basketball game is the most exciting of all.

Which book is the most useful of these books?

This one is the most useful of these books.

Memory work

positive	comparative	superlative
old young tall	older younger taller	oldest youngest tallest
interesting useful exciting	more interesting more useful more exciting	most interesting most useful most exciting
good little bad much, many	better less worse more	best least worst most

EXERCISES

I. 填充:

1. This room is larger——that room.
2. This story is——short——that one.
3. He speaks English better——I.
4. My brother is older——I. He is younger——my sister. My sister is the oldest——us three.
5. I play football better——he.
6. Jack is the youngest——our class.
7. He takes breakfast earlier——I.
8. This dictionary is not——useful——that one.
9. This story is the most interesting——all.
10. You do not walk——slowly——I.

II. 写出下列单词的比较级和最高级:

small, large, young, old, tall, short, good,
bad, beautiful, exciting.

LESSON SEVENTEEN

TIME (A)

How many hours are there in a day?

There are twenty-four hours in a day.

How long do you work every day?

I work eight hours every day.

When do you get up in the morning?

I get up at a quarter (fifteen minutes) past six in the morning.

When do you go to bed at night?

I go to bed at half past nine at night.

How many days are there in a week?

There are seven days in a week.

Sunday is the first day of the week.

Monday is the second day of the week.

Tuesday is the third day of the week.

Wednesday is the fourth day of the week, and the others are

Thursday, Friday, Saturday.

Do you go to school on Sunday?

No, we don't go to school on Sunday.

We usually go to the pictures or the theatre.

EXERCISES

I. 回答問題:

1. How long do you study every day?
2. When do you get up on Sunday?

3. Do you go to ~~the pictures~~ on Saturday night?
4. Are you a second-year student?
5. When do you take your lunch?
6. Do you take your dinner with your parents?
7. Where is your pen?
8. ~~Can you speak Russian?~~
9. Are you the tallest of your class?
10. Must I come earlier than he?

II. 翻譯:

星期日 星期一 星期二 星期三 星期四
 星期五 星期六

LESSON EIGHTEEN

TIME (II)

How many seasons are there in a year?

Spring, summer, autumn, winter are the four seasons in a year.

Summer is the hottest season of the year.

We usually go to swim in summer.

Winter is the coldest season of the year.

We usually go to skate in winter.

How many months are there in a year?

There are twelve months in a year.

Can you tell us the names of the months?

Yes, I can. They are: January, February, March, April, May, June, July, August, September, October, November, December.

EXERCISES

I. 写出月份的名称。

II. 回答问题:

1. When do you go to swim?
2. When do you go to skate?
3. Is summer the hottest season of the year?
4. What time is it now?
5. What day is it to-day?
6. How many days are there in a week?

III. 翻譯:

1. 第一、第二、第三、第四。
2. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 8. 7. 8. 9. 10. 11. 12. 13. 14. 15.

LESSON NINETEEN

REVISION EXERCISES

I. 翻譯以下單詞:

1. 年、季、月、周、日、上午、中午、黃昏、夜、
小時、分鐘。
2. 春、夏、秋、冬。

II. 写出月份和星期的名称。

III. 翻譯:

1. 我喜欢讀報紙。
2. 他每天去游泳。
3. 他喜欢打籃球嗎？不，他不喜欢打籃球。
4. 我父亲給我一些杂志看。
5. 現在几点了？現在9点半。

6. 我經常乘公共汽車上學。他經常步行回家。

IV. 用所學過的形容詞填充下列句子，每一個形容詞只能用一次：

1. This is a ——room.
2. Our teacher has ——books and magazines.
3. My mother gives me a ——watch.
4. She has a ——coat.
5. He is a ——comrade.
6. Basketball game is ——.
7. The story is very ——.
8. It is very ——to-day.
9. This dictionary is ——.
10. The ball is ——.

LESSON TWENTY

REVISION EXERCISES

I. 翻譯：

1. 他做家庭作業比我做得好。
2. 這本雜誌比那本雜誌有趣味。
3. 我們的教員年齡比我們大。
4. 我的手比你的小。
5. 這個女學生同我的妹妹年齡一樣大。
6. 這個故事象那個故事一樣有趣味。
7. 我的房間象這位同志的房間一樣大。
8. 學生們起床象教員一樣早。
9. 他是我們班最高的學生。
10. 這個收音機是這些收音機中最好的一個。

II. 說明以下動詞是及物或不及物，如果是及物，則找出其賓語：

1. Please come in.
2. He tells us an old story.
3. We like reading magazines.
4. They always get up early in the morning.
5. We skate in winter.
6. Students go to school every morning.

III. 寫出以下名詞的複數：

name, hospital, desk, teacher, woman, foot,
head, story, meal, inch, knife, month,
doctor, factory, house.

IV. 把下列句子改為疑問句：

1. The teacher meets the students in the class.
2. It is half past eleven.
3. They have supper in the evening.
4. Students go to school by bus.
5. We usually walk home slowly.

V. 把下列句子改為否定句：

1. They have a good dictionary.
2. She likes to go to the pictures.
3. My father is a doctor.
4. They can speak English.

LESSON TWENTY-ONE

OUR CLASSROOM

This is our classroom. It has two windows. It faces south. The room is warm and bright.

There are many chairs and desks in the room. In one corner of the room there is a bookcase. There are a lot of books in it.

On one of the walls there is a blackboard. Above the blackboard there is a picture of Chairman Mao.

In this classroom we have English lessons. We also have lectures on Marxism-Leninism and many other subjects.

We have a student on duty every day. He sweeps the floor and cleans the blackboard, desks and chairs.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. face [feɪs] <i>v.</i> 面对 | 8. lecture ['lektʃə] <i>n.</i> 講課 |
| 2. south [saʊθ] <i>n.</i> 南方 | 9. Leninism ['lenɪnɪzəm] <i>n.</i> 列宁主义 |
| 3. warm [wɔ:m] <i>adj.</i> 温暖的 | 10. subject ['sʌbdʒɪkt] <i>n.</i> 科目 |
| 4. bright [braɪt] <i>adj.</i> 明亮的 | 11. duty ['dju:ti] <i>n.</i> 义务, 本务 |
| 5. corner ['kɔ:nə] <i>n.</i> 角落 | 12. sweep [swi:p] <i>v.</i> 扫除 |
| 6. a lot of... 許多... | 13. clean [kli:n] <i>v.</i> 擦干净 |
| 7. Marxism ['mɑ:ksɪzəm] <i>n.</i> 馬克思主义 | |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. How many windows are there in our classroom?
2. Is our classroom warm and bright?
3. What are there in our classroom?
4. How many chairs are there in our classroom?
5. Where is the blackboard?
6. Is there a picture of chairman Mao in our classroom?
7. What subjects do you have in this classroom?
8. What is on duty to-day?

9. What does he do when he is on duty?

II. 翻譯:

1. 牆上有許多美麗的图画。
2. 書桌上有一些有趣的書。
3. 房間里有一台收音机。
4. 教室里有19名学生和1位老师。
5. 房間的一个角落里有一个籃球。
6. 我們的一名学生擦黑板和扫地。
7. 我們的一位老师喜欢游泳。

III. 用学过的前置詞填充:

1. I am——duty to-day.
2. There is a picture——Chairman Mao——the wall.
3. ——this classroom we have our English lessons.
4. I like to have one——the books——your desk.
5. There is a pair of shoes——his bed.
6. He sits——the door.

語法練習

I. 找出下列句中的主語和謂語(參考簡明語法第一章§2):

例:

He sweeps the floor.

主語 謂語

The room is warm and bright.

主語 謂語

There is a blackboard.

(引導詞) 謂語 主語

1. In this classroom we have English lessons.
2. The room faces south.
3. Spring, summer, autumn, winter are the four seasons.
4. There are twelve months in a year.
5. Basketball game is an exciting ball game.

6. We usually walk slowly home together.
7. We take three meals a day.
8. I always go to school by bus.
9. This book belongs to me.
10. Those are the windows of our classroom.
11. The doctor gives him a cup of water.
12. He can tell us the names of the months in English.

LESSON TWENTY-TWO

AT AN ENGLISH LESSON

It is nine o'clock. The bell rings and the teacher comes in. The teacher and the students greet with each other. The class begins. It is an English lesson.

The teacher says: "Please open your books at page six. To-day we have a new lesson. It is about the importance of physical culture and sports in our daily life." The teacher reads and explains the text. And the students listen to him carefully.

Then the students read the text after the teacher. They read in one voice. They read correctly.

It is ten o'clock. The bell rings again and the lesson is over.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. bell [bel] <i>n.</i> 鈴 | 5. physical ['fizikəl] <i>adj.</i> 身体的 |
| 2. ring [riŋ] <i>v.</i> 响 | 6. culture ['kʌltʃə] <i>n.</i> 文化 |
| 3. greet [gri:t] <i>v.</i> 问候 | physical culture 体育 |
| 4. importance [im'pɔ:təns] <i>n.</i> 重要 | 7. daily ['deɪli] <i>adj.</i> 每日的 |

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 8. life [laif] <i>n.</i> 生活 | 12. carefully ['kæʃəfʊli] <i>adv.</i> 小心地 |
| 9. explain [eks'plein] <i>v.</i> 解釋 | 13. voice [vois] <i>n.</i> 聲音 |
| 10. text [tekst] <i>n.</i> 課文 | 14. correctly [kə'rekʃtli] <i>adv.</i> 正確地 |
| 11. listen ['lɪsn] <i>v.</i> 听 | |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. Do the teacher and students greet with each other in class?
2. What do they say when they greet with each other?
3. Does the teacher tell the students to open their books?
4. What was the subject in this lesson?
5. Do you listen to the teacher carefully in class?
6. Can you read and explain the text correctly?
7. Does the bell ring when class is over?
8. What do the teacher and students say when class is over?

II. 翻譯:

1. 今天我們上了一次講述体育运动的重要性的課。
2. 請告訴我关于体育运动在我們生活中的重要性。
3. 請听我講。
4. 請跟我讀。
5. 足球比賽結束了。
6. 運動員們互相問候。
7. 教室里有一位年輕的英語教員。

III. 填充:

1. He reads _____ carefully _____ I.
2. He reads more carefully _____ I.
3. The teacher explains the text _____.

4. The teacher reads first. Then the students read—
him—one voice.

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第一章§2)

I. 找出下列句中的簡單謂語和合成謂語:

例: The class begins.

簡單謂語

This is an English lesson.

合成謂語

1. The room is warm and bright.
2. We live in Peking.
3. They go to school by bus.
4. They speak English very well.
5. Students do their homework at night.
6. The sky is blue.
7. They are my brothers and sisters.

II. 找出下列句中的簡單謂語及其賓語:

The bell rings again.

簡單謂語

He explains the text.

簡單謂語 賓語

He gives me a book.

簡單謂語 間接賓語 直接賓語

1. They read correctly.
2. He cleans the blackboard, desks and chairs.
3. The teacher gives me homework to do.
4. We usually work and study together.
5. I study English at school.
6. The students listen to him carefully.
7. I tell him to come.

LESSON TWENTY-THREE

NATIONAL DAY

We love our country, the people's Republic of China.
We love Peking, the capital of our country.

Every year on the first of October, we celebrate our National Day. There is a big parade in Peking. Men of the People's Liberation Army come to the parade first. Workers, peasants and students come after them. They come to pay respects to Chairman Mao and other leaders of the Party and of the Government.

When they see Chairman Mao, they all cheer with one voice:

"Long live the People's Republic of China!

Long live the Communist Party of China!

Long live Chairman Mao!"

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. national ['næʃnl] <i>adj.</i> 国家的 | to pay respect to... 向...致敬 |
| 2. capital ['kæpɪtl] <i>n.</i> 首都 | 9. leader ['li:də] <i>n.</i> 领导者 |
| 3. celebrate ['selibreɪt] <i>v.</i> 庆祝 | 10. party ['pa:ti] <i>n.</i> 党 |
| 4. republic [ri'pʌblɪk] <i>n.</i> 共和国 | 11. government ['gʌvənmənt] <i>n.</i> 政府 |
| 5. parade [pə'reɪd] <i>n.</i> 游行 | 12. cheer [tʃiə] <i>v.</i> 欢呼 |
| 6. peasant ['pezənt] <i>n.</i> 农民 | 13. long [lɒŋ] <i>adv.</i> 长久 |
| 7. pay [peɪ] <i>v.</i> 支付 | 14. communist ['kɒmjʊ:nɪst] <i>adj.</i> |
| 8. respect [rɪs'pekt] <i>n.</i> 尊敬 | 共产主义的 |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. Please tell us the name of our country in English.
2. Where is the capital of our country?
3. When do we celebrate our National Day?
4. How do we celebrate our National Day?
5. What do we do when we see Chairman Mao?

II. 翻譯:

1. 当我住在北京的时候, 我经常去看他。
2. 当教员解释课文的时候, 我们都仔细听。
3. 当我在教室的时候, 我讲英语。
4. 当我在工厂工作的时候, 我喜欢打篮球。
5. 当我们在学校的时候, 我们学习马克思列宁主义。
6. 他们在国庆节来北京向毛主席致敬。
7. 北京是中华人民共和国的首都。
8. 每年国庆节有一次大游行。

III. 翻譯:

1. This is a lesson about our National Day.
2. He is the student on duty.
3. We have a lecture on Marxism-Leninism.
4. It is twelve o'clock.
5. We love the capital of our country.

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第一章§2)

I. 找出下列句中的定語成分:

例: There is a **big** parade in Peking.

定語

1. Our classroom has two windows.
2. We have three meals every day.

3. There is a small radio in the room.
4. I have a blue coat and she has a beautiful skirt.
5. My brother gives me a new watch.
6. It is an exciting game.

II. 找出下列句中的主語、謂語、賓語:

1. We have two legs and two arms.
2. He speaks English very well.
3. The teacher reads carefully and correctly.
4. We meet our coach at his home.
5. We are students of new China.
6. The bell rings again and the class is over.

LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

UNION IS STRENGTH

Long long ago, there was a poor old peasant. His three sons often quarrelled with each other. The old man was sad at heart. One day, he gave each of his sons a stick and said:

“Break them!”

They took the sticks, and broke the sticks easily. Then the old man took nine other sticks and tied them together in bundles of three.

“Now break these bundles,” he said.

They took the bundles and tried to break them, but they failed.

“You see,” the old man said, “you can break one single stick easily, but you cannot break them in a bundle. This is a good lesson for you: In union there is strength.”

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. union ['ju:njən] <i>n.</i> 團結 | 8. easily ['i:zili] <i>adv.</i> 容易地 |
| 2. strength ['streŋθ] <i>n.</i> 力量 | 9. then [ðen] <i>adv.</i> 然后 |
| 3. quarrel ['kwɔrəl] <i>n.</i> 爭吵 | 10. tie [tai] <i>v.</i> 捆綁 |
| 4. sad [sæd] <i>adj.</i> 伤心的 | 11. bundle ['bʌndl] <i>n.</i> 成捆 |
| 5. heart [hɑ:t] <i>n.</i> 心脏 | 12. try [traɪ] <i>v.</i> 設法, 試 |
| 6. stick [stɪk] <i>n.</i> 棒 | 13. fail [feɪl] <i>v.</i> 做不到, 失敗 |
| 7. break [brek] <i>v.</i> 折断 | 14. single ['sɪŋgl] <i>adj.</i> 单个的 |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. How many sons had the old peasant?
2. Did his sons often quarrel with each other?
3. What did the old peasant do after his sons broke one single stick easily?
4. What was the good lesson for the old peasant's three sons?

II. 翻譯:

1. 他設法折断成捆的棍子, 但是他失敗了。
2. 他能夠讀一篇英語課文, 但他不能講英語。
3. 這名學生能夠容易地解釋課文, 但他不能正確地讀課文。
4. 鈴响了, 老師進來了。
5. 有一天, 他打破了一個杯子。
6. 我們熱愛我們的黨和國家的領導人。
7. 學生們不互相吵架。

III. 完成句子:

1. Our English teacher tries to . . .
2. One day, the old man tried to . . .
3. The students try to . . .

4. When I was a boy, I tried to

5. My sister tries to

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第一章§2)

I. 找出下列句中的狀語成分:

Long long ago, there was a poor old peasant.

狀語

He broke the stick **easily**.

狀語

1. The old man was sad at heart.
2. We have a student on duty every day.
3. Please open your books at page twenty-four.
4. There is a big parade in Peking.
5. In one corner of the room there is a bookcase.
6. We study and work together.
7. They often walk slowly home.
8. My parents live in Shanghai?
9. Students read the text in one voice.
10. Class begins again.

II. 找出下列句子中的主語、謂語、賓語、定語:

1. In this classroom we have English lessons.
2. This is a good lesson.
3. Long long ago, there was a poor old peasant.
4. He gave each of his three sons a stick.
5. He can tell us some interesting stories.

LESSON TWENTY-FIVE

A BASKETBALL GAME

Two teams of students are going to play basketball. Before the game begins, the players are running back and forth and

shooting at the basket. They are warming themselves up.

The referee blows the whistle. The game begins with a centre-jump. Team A gets the ball. Now they are moving forward quickly with the ball. The game is fast and exciting. Every player is running as hard as he can. Suddenly the whistle blows. Time is up. The players stop playing and go off the court. The score is 78-69 against Team B.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. team [ti:m] <i>n.</i> 队 | 13. forward [fə:wəd] <i>adv.</i> 向前地 |
| 2. game [geim] <i>n.</i> 运动(指球类) | 14. quickly [kwikli] <i>adv.</i> 迅速地 |
| 3. run [rʌn] <i>v.</i> 跑 | 15. fast [fɑ:st] <i>adj.</i> 快的 |
| 4. back [bæk] <i>adv.</i> 向后地 | 16. hard [hɑ:d] <i>adv.</i> 努力地 |
| 5. forth [fɔ:θ] <i>adv.</i> 向前地 | 17. suddenly ['sʌdnli] <i>adv.</i> 突然地 |
| 6. shoot [ʃu:t] <i>v.</i> 投篮 | 18. stop [stɒp] <i>v.</i> 停止 |
| 7. referee [ˈrefəˈri:] <i>n.</i> 裁判 | 19. off [ɔ:f] <i>prep.</i> 离 |
| 8. blow [bləʊ] <i>v.</i> 吹 | 20. court [kɔ:t] <i>n.</i> 球場 |
| 9. whistle ['hwisl] <i>n.</i> 哨子 | 21. score [skɔ:] <i>n.</i> 比分 |
| 10. centre ['sentə] <i>n.</i> 中心 | 22. against [ə'geɪnst] <i>prep.</i> |
| 11. jump [dʒʌmp] <i>n.</i> 跳 | 反对(这里作“不利于”解释) |
| 12. move [mu:v] <i>v.</i> 移动 | |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. What do the players do before the game begins?
2. What does the game begin with?
3. Is the game fast and exciting?
4. What does every player do in the game?
5. What was the score?

II. 翻譯:

1. 在比賽開始以前, 運動員都來到了球場。

2. 在上課以前，學生都來到了教室。
3. 在我們讀課文以前，教員仔細地解釋了課文。
4. 我們正在做準備活動。
5. 他們現在正在打籃球。
6. 這個學生正在掃地和擦黑板。
7. 他跑得和我一樣快。
8. 我折斷這一根棍子象他一樣容易。
9. 我讀得象老師一樣正確。

III. 完成句子:

1. I am going to
2. He is going to
3. The players are going to
4. The teacher stopped reading
5. They stopped breaking
6. My brother stops telling

語法練習

- I. 找出下列句中當狀語用的前置詞短句 (參考簡明語法第九章):

They are shooting at the basket.

1. The game begins with a centre-jump.
2. They are moving forward with the ball.
3. The players go off the court.
4. The score is 78-69 against team B.
5. We see a picture of Chairman Mao on the wall.
6. We usually go to bed at 10 o'clock.
7. We often go to skate in winter.
8. On Sunday mornings I usually go to the pictures.
9. The old man's three sons often quarrelled with each other.
10. We study and work for the people.

II. 分析下列句子的成分:

1. Team A gets the ball.
2. Suddenly the whistle blows.
3. The game is fast and exciting.
4. The teacher meets the students in the classroom.
5. We always get up early in the morning and go to bed at ten in the evening.

LESSON TWENTY-SIX

OUR PURPOSE IN LEARNING ENGLISH

Our purpose in learning English is to use it to serve the cause of socialism. Language is a weapon and also is a means of social intercourse. We want to tell our friends in America and Britain about the great leap forward in our country. We want to know their struggle against their oppressors. We want to learn from them their useful experiences in the field of physical culture and sports. For all this, we have to learn English and to use it well.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. purpose ['pə:pəs] <i>n.</i> 目的 | 10. intercourse ['intə:kə:s] <i>n.</i> 交际 |
| 2. use [ju:z] <i>v.</i> 使用 | 11. America [ə'merikə] <i>n.</i> 美洲 |
| 3. serve [sə:v] <i>v.</i> 服务 | 12. Britain ['britən] <i>n.</i> 不列颠 |
| 4. cause [kə:z] <i>n.</i> 事业 | 13. leap [li:p] <i>v.</i> 跳跃 |
| 5. socialism ['səʊʃəlɪzəm] <i>n.</i> 社会主义 | 14. struggle ['strʌgl] <i>n.</i> 斗争 |
| 6. language ['læŋgwɪdʒ] <i>n.</i> 语言 | 15. oppressor [ə'presə] <i>n.</i> 压迫者 |
| 7. weapon ['wepən] <i>n.</i> 武器 | 16. experience [iks'piəriəns] <i>n.</i> 经验 |
| 8. means [mi:nz] <i>n.</i> 手段 | 17. field [fi:ld] <i>n.</i> 场所, 领域 |
| 9. social ['səʊʃəl] <i>adj.</i> 社会的 | |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. What is our purpose in learning English?
2. What is language?
3. Can we tell American people about the great leap forward in our country in Chinese?
4. What is the purpose in learning English for students of physical culture and sports?

II. 翻譯:

1. 我們學習的目的是要為人民服務。
2. 語言是一種鬥爭的手段。
3. 這場比賽的分數是60比51, B隊失利。
4. 我們應該向工人和農民學習。
5. 我要去打籃球。
6. 現在我們必須停止讀課文。
7. 請告訴我們關於你們的學校生活。

III. 完成句子并翻譯:

1. Our basketball coach wants to . . .
2. My sister wanted to . . .
3. The students want to . . .
4. The players have to . . .
5. I have to . . .
6. My brother has to . . .

語法練習

- I. 找出下列句子中作定語用的前置詞短語并翻譯全句(參考簡明語法第九章):

例:

We want to tell our friends in America and Britain

about the great leap forward in our country.

我們要告訴我們的美国和英国朋友关于我們国家的大跃进

1. We want to know their struggle against their oppressors.
2. The book on your desk belongs to me.
3. They cannot break the sticks in bundle.
4. My purpose in learning English is to use it to serve the cause of physical culture and sports.
5. The girl in the classroom is a second-year student.
6. The capital of our country is Peking.
7. We learn from them their useful experience in the field of physical culture and sports.

II. 分析句子:

1. Language is a weapon and also is a means of social intercourse.
2. He can use English in reading magazines.
3. The teacher and the students greet with each other.
4. Suddenly the referee blows the whistle and the game is over.
5. The old man tied the sticks in bundles of three.

LESSON TWENTY-SEVEN

REVISION EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 把以下短語应用到下列的翻譯句中去:

a lot of, with each other, in our daily life, listen to,
to read after, back and forth, a means of, in one

voice, warming up, the cause of, to tell about, in the field of, have to, to learn from.

1. 學生們跟着教員齊聲朗讀。
2. 運動員都注意听着裁判員講話。
3. 我跑來跑去，做準備活動。
4. 我的兄弟向他學習英語。
5. 他在體育運動方面有許多經驗。
6. 我們班的同學彼此相親相愛。
7. 在我們的日常生活中，我們必須努力學習和工作。
8. 我們學習的目的是要為社會主義事業服務。
9. 語言也是一種鬥爭的工具（或手段）。
10. 我要告訴你關於我的生活。

II. 利用下列動詞各造一個句子：

face, come, explain, use, want, try, begin, go, stop, say, see, blow, know, open, tell.

III. 完成句子：

1. She has to . . .
2. We have to . . .
3. Students want to . . .
4. The player tries to . . .
5. The teacher begins to . . .
6. The worker comes to . . .

IV. 將下列英語句譯成漢語，將漢語句譯成英語（仿英語例句結構）。

1. There are two windows in our classroom.
他的書桌上有一台收音機。
2. When the bell rings, they are all in the classroom.
當課開始時，教員和學生互相問候。
3. I tried to get the ball, but I failed.
他設法解釋課文，但他做不到（或失敗了）。

4. He gets up as early as I.

我学习得象他一样用功。

5. The players stop shooting at the basket.

裁判員停止吹哨子。

V. 按例句格式分析句子:

例: I have a black pen

主 謂 定 宾

1. We have a new lesson to-day.
2. The students read in one voice.
3. I read and explain the text correctly.
4. I see the teacher in the classroom.
5. I tell my friend the story.
6. Students learn the experiences in playing basketball from their coach.
7. They serve the cause of physical culture and sports.
8. Suddenly the bell rings.
9. They are good players.
10. There is strength in union.
11. The sons of the old man could not break the sticks in bundle.
12. The old peasant was sad at heart.
13. The teacher tells the students to do their homework carefully.

LESSON TWENTY-EIGHT

A STUDENT'S DAY

I study at the Peking Institute of Physical Culture. I am a first-year student. I like the life at the institute.

I wake at about six o'clock. I jump out of bed and put on my clothes. After washing my face and brushing my teeth, I go to do morning exercises. Morning exercises are good for our health and training. At a quarter to seven I take my breakfast. Then I go to the classroom or sports ground.

I take my lunch at half past eleven. After lunch I usually have a good rest. Then I go to the classroom or sports ground again. There are eight classes a day altogether.

Supper begins at six. After supper I often have some recreational activities, such as singing or playing cards. Then I begin to do my homework and prepare my lessons.

I go to bed at ten.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. institute ['ɪnstɪtju:t] <i>n.</i> 学院 | 11. quarter ['kwɔ:tə] <i>n.</i> 四分之一 |
| 2. wake [weɪk] <i>v.</i> 醒 | 12. ground [graʊnd] <i>n.</i> 場地 |
| 3. put [pʊt] <i>v.</i> 放, put on, 穿 | 13. rest [rest] <i>n.</i> 休息 |
| 4. clothes [klaʊðz] <i>n.</i> 衣服 | 14. altogether ['ɔ:ltoʊ'geðə] <i>adv.</i> 一共 |
| 5. wash [wɒʃ] <i>v.</i> 洗 | 15. recreational ['rekri'eɪʃənəl] <i>adj.</i>
娱乐的 |
| 6. brush [brʌʃ] <i>v.</i> 刷 | 16. activity [æk'tɪvɪti] <i>n.</i> 活动 |
| 7. tooth (teeth) [tu:θ] <i>n.</i> 牙齿 | 17. card [kɑ:d] <i>n.</i> 卡片, 紙牌 |
| 8. exercise ['eksəsaɪz] <i>n.</i> 操練 | 18. prepare [prɪ'peə] <i>v.</i> 准备 |
| 9. health [helθ] <i>n.</i> 健康 | |
| 10. train [treɪn] <i>v.</i> 訓練 | |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. What was the name of our institute in English?
2. Do you like the life at the institute?

3. When do you get up?
4. What do you do after getting up?
5. Do you go to the classroom or sports ground after breakfast?
6. When do you take your lunch?
7. How many classes are there in a day?
8. What do you do after supper?

II. 翻譯:

1. 我們大約早上七點吃早飯。
2. 我通常在七點半到教室去。
3. 我喜歡文娛活動，例如唱歌、看電影。
4. 運動場上一共有二十二個運動員。
5. 我穿上衣服並開始做早操。

III. 完成句子:

1. She wants to. . .
2. We are going to. . .
3. They like to. . .
4. Our coach begins to. . .
5. I go to. . .

IV. 按例句格式完成下列句子並翻譯全句:

After washing my face, I go to do morning exercises.

洗過臉後，我去做早操

1. After reading. . .
2. After taking. . .
3. After having. . .
4. After playing. . .

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第五章)

I. 翻譯:

五點十分 六點一刻 九點二十分 十點半
 十一點四十分 十二點三刻 差一刻一點

差十分两点

II. 写出以下数目:

15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28。

第一, 第二, 第三, 第四。

III. 翻譯:

例: 五月一日 May first 或 the first of May.

八月四日 August fourth 或 the fourth of August.

1. 二月三日

2. 四月二日

3. 十月一日

4. 七月四日

5. 十一月八日

LESSON TWENTY-NINE

THE FOOD

What do we need every day?

We need food every day. A man cannot live without eating food. But all foods do not have the same purpose in the body. Some are for building the body. Some are for giving us strength for activity. Others are for keeping the body warm.

How many meals do we have in a day?

We have three meals in a day. We have breakfast in the morning. We have lunch at noon and supper in the evening. Three meals are enough to give us strength for activity and to keep the body warm.

An athlete needs proper food in his training. He can't train well without proper food. We must use all food without

any waste. In our country everyone knows the importance of food.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. food [fu:d] <i>n.</i> 食物 | 7. meal [mi:l] <i>n.</i> 餐 |
| 2. need [ni:d] <i>v.</i> 需要 | 8. enough [i'naʃ] <i>adj.</i> 足够的 |
| 3. eat [i:t] <i>v.</i> 吃 | 9. noon [nu:n] <i>n.</i> 中午 |
| 4. same [seim] <i>adj.</i> 相同的 | 10. proper ['prɒpə] <i>adj.</i> 适当的 |
| 5. build [bild] <i>v.</i> 建設 | 11. without ['wiðaut] <i>prep.</i> 沒有 |
| 6. keep [ki:p] <i>v.</i> 保持 | 12. waste [weɪs] <i>n.</i> 浪費 |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. Do you need food everyday?
2. What is the use of food in our body?
3. How many meals do you take in a day?
4. Can an athlete do his training without proper food?
5. Does everyone know the importance of food in our country?

II. 翻譯:

1. 在学习英語方面，我們有同樣的目的。
2. 吃糧食能給我們活动的力量。
3. 一天三頓飯足以使身体保持温暖。
4. 糧食对增强身体有好处。
5. 你能告訴我糧食的重要性嗎？

III. 參考例句的結構翻譯下列句子:

You can not live without eating food.

你不吃糧食不能活。

1. 你不努力訓練就不能跑得更快。

2. 你不做准备活动不要打球。
3. 你不休息一下不能再訓練。

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第十二章)

I. 將下列句子改為疑問句:

1. You study at the Peking Institute of Physical Culture.
2. We are first-year students.
3. Every one knows the importance of food.
4. I always prepare my lessons at night.
5. You do morning exercises every day.
6. He can teach swimming.

II. 翻譯:

1. 這是什麼?
2. 他是誰?
3. 你的兄弟在哪兒?
4. 你喜歡什麼?
5. 你上哪兒去?
6. 你有幾個兄弟?

LESSON THIRTY

REVISION EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 翻譯:

1. After putting on my clothes, I go to do morning exercises.
2. After training for two hours, I go to have a short rest.
3. After preparing my lessons, I go to bed.
4. After jumping out of bed, he goes to wash his face and brush his teeth.

5. After taking their breakfast, the students all go to the classroom.
6. We can not learn the useful experiences from the English people without studying English.
7. A player can not run fast without training hard.
8. We can not play a game without a referee
9. The students can not read and explain the text correctly without their teacher's help.
10. Basketball players can not do their training without a ball.

II. 填充:

1. I like sports _____ basketball, football, swimming and skating.
2. Morning exercises are _____ everyone.
3. Students all _____ at ten every night.
4. This is a good lesson _____ all of us.
5. He jumps _____ the bus.
6. Comrade Li speaks English very _____.
7. We often take our lunch at _____.
8. The teacher gives us time _____ preparing our lessons.
9. After playing the game, we put _____ our clothes and go off the court.
10. Some food are _____ giving us strength _____ activity.

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第五章)

I. 写出下列基数詞:

- 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19,
20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30,
40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90,

100, 1,000, 1,000,000

II. 写出下列序数词:

第一, 第二, 第三, 第四, 第五, 第六, 第七, 第八,
第九, 第十, 第十一, 第十二。

III. 写出下列年份的名称:

例: 1918 = nineteen eighteen

1949 1960 1961 1962 1813

IV. 写出以下分数的名称:

例: $\frac{1}{2}$ = one second $\frac{7}{9}$ = seven ninths

$\frac{1}{4}$ $\frac{2}{3}$ $\frac{8}{9}$ $\frac{1}{6}$

V. 写出以下带小数的数字名称:

例: 0.4 = zero point four

5.26 = five point two six (或 twenty-six)

15.4 2.20 781.64 14.30

LESSON THIRTY-ONE

REVISION EXERCISES

一般疑問句練習 (参考簡明語法第十二章的一般疑問句部分)

I. 改下列句子为問句, 然后用否定式回答:

例: He is a student.

Is he a student?

No, he is not a student.

1. Their classroom is warm and bright.
2. There are a lot of books in his room.
3. Comrade Wang is older than I.
4. The students read after the teacher.
5. They go to do morning exercises.
6. You must go home now.

7. My teacher has a red pen.
8. They need more food.
9. He does morning exercises every day.
10. My brother studies at the Peking Institute of Physical culture.
11. The story is very interesting.
12. They can swim very well.

II. 回答下列問題，先用“完全回答”，后用“簡略回答”：

Are you a student?

Yes, I am a student.

Yes, I am.

Do you go to school every day?

Yes, I go to school every day.

Yes, I do.

1. Do you study at the Peking Institute of Physical Culture?
2. Are you a first-year student?
3. Do you play football every day?
4. Do you skate in summer?
5. Does your sister work at a hospital?

特殊疑問句練習（參考簡明語法第十二章中的特殊疑問句部分）

I. 翻譯：

1. What is on the wall?
2. Who is your basketball coach?
3. Whose exercise book is this?
4. Who likes to sing a song for us?
5. Which is better?
6. What is the time?
7. Where is the referee?
8. Who wants to know the story?

II. 按上題的句子結構形式翻譯下列句子:

1. 誰教你英語?
2. 這是什麼?
3. 你的桌子上有什麼?
4. 誰在你房間里?
5. 這是誰的手錶?
6. 你的書在什麼地方?
7. 哪一本書是最好的?
8. 誰來看你?

III. 翻譯:

1. What does the teacher read in class?
2. What do you say?
3. When do you get up in the morning?
4. When do you take your supper?
5. Why do you study English?
6. Why does he not prepare his lessons in the evening?
7. Where does your family live?
8. Where does she go?
9. How many meals do you need in a day?
10. How many students are there in the classroom?
11. Whom do you want to meet?
12. To whom do you give the book?

IV. 按上題的句子結構形式對下列句子中黑體字的地方提問:

例: She goes to school.

Where does she go?

1. My brother likes going to the pictures on Sunday.
2. I always do my homework at night.
3. I have two brothers and a sister.
4. We often meet our coach in Comrade Li's bedroom.
5. She gives every one a picture.

6. She gives every one a picture.
7. The students usually take a walk after supper.
8. They come from Shanghai.

LESSON THIRTY-TWO

CHINA

This is a map of the world. On the map there are names of countries. Among them is the People's Republic of China, our great motherland.

China is in the east of Asia. It is the largest country in Asia and one of the largest countries in the world. Our country is advancing at full speed on the way towards Socialism and Communism.

The Chinese are peace-loving people. We are well on guard and oppose war. Our friends spread in every corner of the world. And the friendship among the peoples is ever increasing.

Every year we send out a great number of best athletes to visit other countries. We also receive visitors from abroad.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. map [mæp] <i>n.</i> 地图 | 9. full [fʊl] <i>adj.</i> 充足的, 十分的 |
| 2. world [wɜ:ld] <i>n.</i> 世界 | 10. speed [spi:d] <i>n.</i> 速度 |
| 3. among [ə'mʌŋ] <i>prep.</i> 在...之中 | 11. way [wei] <i>n.</i> 道路 |
| 4. motherland ['mʌðə'lænd] <i>n.</i> 祖国 | 12. towards [tə'wɔ:dz] <i>prep.</i> 朝着 |
| 5. east [i:st] <i>n.</i> 东方, 东部 | 13. communism ['kɒmjʊ:nɪzəm] <i>n.</i> 共产主义 |
| 6. Asia ['eɪʒə] <i>n.</i> 亚洲 | 14. peace [pi:s] <i>n.</i> 和平 |
| 7. large [la:dʒ] <i>adj.</i> 大的 | 15. guard [gɑ:d] <i>n.</i> 保卫 to be on |
| 8. advance [əd'vɑ:ns] <i>v.</i> 前进 | |

- | | |
|---|--|
| guard , 警惕 | 22. number ['nʌmbə] <i>n.</i> 数目 |
| 16. oppose [ə'pəʊz] <i>v.</i> 反对 | a number of , 很多 |
| 17. war [wɔ:] <i>n.</i> 战争 | 23. send [send] <i>v.</i> 送, 派 |
| 18. spread [sprɛd] <i>v.</i> 分佈, 散布 | 24. visit ['vɪzɪt] <i>v.</i> 訪問 |
| 19. friendship ['frendʃɪp] <i>n.</i> 友誼 | 25. receive [rɪ'si:v] <i>v.</i> 接受, 接待 |
| 20. ever [evə] <i>adv.</i> 曾經, 不斷地 | 26. visitor ['vɪzɪtə] <i>n.</i> 來訪者 |
| 21. increase [ɪn'kri:s] <i>v.</i> 增加 | 27. abroad [ə'brɔ:d] <i>adv.</i> 國外 |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. Is this a map of the world?
2. Where is China?
3. Is China a large country?
4. How is our country advancing on the way towards socialism and communism?
5. Are we well on guard against war?
6. Is the friendship among the peoples increasing?
7. Whom do we send out to visit other countries every year?
8. Whom do we receive from abroad?
9. Who love peace and who like war?
10. Can we have peace without any fighting (战斗)?

II. 翻譯:

1. 他用全速跑向終點 (finish line)。
2. 他是我班里最好的籃球運動員。
3. 學生的數目不斷增加。
4. 在所有的運動中我最喜歡游泳。
5. 我不反對他的意見 (opinion)。
6. 他們之中有一個是我院的学生。

III. 用課文中适当的單詞或詞組填空:

1. Students from our institute _____ in every part of the country.
2. _____ of visitors came to visit our institute during last month.
3. I often _____ letters from abroad.
4. Shanghai is the _____ city in our country.
5. Because our players were _____, the other team could not shoot at the basket.
6. Sending out athletes and receiving visitors from abroad will _____ the friendship among the peoples.
7. We love peace and _____ war.
8. The cars are running _____ along the road.
9. I saw him running _____ us.
10. I shall _____ a letter to my brother telling him about my life at the institute.

翻法練習

- I. 將下列句子的主語改為單數第三人稱，并作其他必要的改變
(參考簡明語法第七章 § 3 中的一般現在時):

例: We get up early in the morning.
He gets up early in the morning.

1. I often receive letters from comrade Wang.
2. Do you know my name?
3. The three sons break the single stick easily.
4. Do they break the bundle of sticks easily too?
5. We have to study harder.
6. They always warm themselves up before training.
7. The balls are in the corner of the room.
8. I am a student of the Peking Institute of Physical Culture.

9. We do not have many English books.
10. They do not come to see me very often.

II. 将下列句子改为否定句:

1. I break it.
2. The students go to see the basketball game.
3. He receives a letter from his brother.
4. You sent him a book.
5. They visit our institute.
6. It is a large sports ground.

III. 将上题的句子改为疑问句:

LESSON THIRTY-THREE

THE COCK CROWED AT MIDNIGHT

When Kao Yu-pao was a child, he worked for a landlord. The landlord was greedy. He made the farmhands work hard and long, and gave them little to eat. Of course, they hated that landlord very much.

There was a cock in the house. It did not begin to crow at dawn, but at midnight. How strange it was! Every time the cock began to crow, the landlord would cry out: "Are you still sleeping, you lazy bones? Get up and go to work." So they hated that cock too.

One night, Kao Yu-pao saw the landlord steal into the court-yard. The landlord began to crow like a cock. Now Kao Yu-pao saw his trick.

When the other farmhands knew this, they were very angry and decided to punish the landlord.

The next night, as soon as the landlord stole into the courtyard. Kao Yu-pao cried out: "Thief. Thief!"

All the farmhands ran out, knocked the "thief" down and beat him hard. He cried: "Stop, please! I am your landlord, no thief!"

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. cock [kɒk] <i>n.</i> 公雞 | 14. still [stil] <i>adv.</i> 仍然 |
| 2. crow [krou] <i>v.</i> 鷄鳴 | 15. lazy ['leizi] <i>adj.</i> 懶惰的 |
| 3. midnight ['midnait] <i>n.</i> 半夜 | 16. bone [boun] <i>n.</i> 骨头 |
| 4. landlord ['lændlə:d] <i>n.</i> 地主 | 17. steal [sti:l] <i>v.</i> 偷竊 |
| 5. greedy ['gri:di] <i>adj.</i> 貪心的 | 18. court-yard ['ko:t'jɑ:d] <i>n.</i> 院子 |
| 6. farmhand ['fɑ:m'hænd] <i>n.</i> 長工 | 19. trick [trik] <i>n.</i> 詭計 |
| 7. little ['litl] <i>adj.</i> 小的 | 20. angry ['æŋgri] <i>adv.</i> 生氣 |
| 8. of course [ɒv'kɔ:s] 當然的 | 21. decide [di'said] <i>v.</i> 決定 |
| 9. hate [heit] <i>v.</i> 恨 | 22. punish ['pʌniʃ] <i>v.</i> 懲罰 |
| 10. dawn [dɔ:n] <i>n.</i> 黎明 | 23. next [nekst] <i>adj.</i> 下一個 |
| 11. strange [streindʒ] <i>adj.</i> 奇怪的 | 24. knock [nɒk] <i>v.</i> 打倒, 敲 |
| 12. would [wud] <i>v.</i> will 的過去式 | 25. thief [θi:f] <i>n.</i> 賊 |
| 13. cry [krai] <i>v.</i> 喊叫 | 26. beat [bi:t] <i>v.</i> 鞭打, 打擊 |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題.

1. For whom did Kao Yu-pao work when he was a boy?
2. How did the landlord treat (对待) the farmhands?
3. Did the farmhands hate the greedy landlord?
4. When did the landlord's cock crow?
5. Why did the cock begin to crow at midnight?
6. What would the landlord do when the cock began to crow at midnight?

7. What did the landlord do when he stole into the courtyard?
8. Who saw the landlord's trick?
9. What did the farmhands decide to do?
10. How did the farmhands punish the landlord when Kao Yu-pao cried out?

II. 翻譯

1. 我們一到操場就開始訓練。
2. 課一開始，學生們就停止談話。
3. 他象一支箭（an arrow）似地向前跑。
4. 鈴聲使他从床上跳起來。
5. 我決定學體育。

III. 用課文中適當單詞或詞組填空：

1. While we were _____ working at our exercises, the teacher wanted us to have a little rest.
2. The peace-loving people see the imperialists'（帝國主義分子的）_____, they are well on guard.
3. If the U.S. (美國) imperialists make war on us, we _____ them and _____ them down.
4. We are going to spend our holiday in the mountains, we _____ to start _____ _____ next morning.
5. We decided to help them _____ _____ we heard the news.
6. Be careful you don't _____ down the ink bottle (墨水瓶) on the desk.
7. If they train harder, they can _____ any basketball team.
8. The purpose of the greedy landlord was to make the farmhands work _____ and _____.
9. The landlord stole into the courtyard _____ a thief.

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第七章§3中的一般过去时)

I. 写出下列規則動詞和不規則動詞的过去式:

- | | | |
|----------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. to need | 11. to warm | 21. to study |
| 2. to decide | 12. to stop | 22. to play |
| 3. to build | 13. to read | 23. to come |
| 4. to punish | 14. to send | 24. to use |
| 5. to increase | 15. to receive | 25. to give |
| 6. to struggle | 16. to knock | 26. to live |
| 7. to tell | 17. to beat | 27. to shoot |
| 8. to keep | 18. to make | 28. to move |
| 9. to break | 19. to have | 29. to begin |
| 10. to go | 20. to listen | 30. to want |

II. 将下列句子的謂語動詞改為一般过去时:

1. They begin to play.
2. We need traing hard.
3. He does his work well.
4. I do not receive any letter from my friend.
5. They decide to start at once.
6. She tells us a story.
7. He does not write to me very often.
8. We do not go out every day.
9. He makes a good shot.
10. We warm ourselves up before training.
11. They build many new houses.
12. She comes very early.
13. I keep myself healthy and strong.
14. Wang is a good footbal player.
15. They punish the landlord.

III. 将下列句子改為否定句

1. He listened to the bell.

2. I used your pen.
 3. They often swam in winter.
 4. The referee punished one of the players.
 5. He moved the desk to the corner of the room.
- IV. 将上面句子改为一般疑问句。

LESSON THIRTY-FOUR

GOING TO THE STADIUM

Sport is very popular in People's China. There is almost no sport or game that our people are not interested in. Football, basketball and table tennis are the most popular games in our country.

It was a fine Sunday afternoon. While I was walking about the city, I found myself on the newly built avenue leading to the Peking Workers' Stadium. I was surprised to see streams of cars and buses running along the road. Every bus was full. Men and women were rushing about in a hurry, all looking cheerful and excited.

"What is going on? What are all the people rushing for?" I caught a young student who was walking by my side and asked.

"They are going to the Stadium. A football match is going to take place there to-day."

Being not far from the Stadium, I decided to look for a chance to attend the match. Happily, I met a man who has a ticket to let. The match was between the "August First" and the Peking Team.

Although there was still an hour to go before the match

took place, the Stadium had already been crowded with sports fans. It was such an exciting scene you could never see before liberation.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. stadium ['steidiəm] <i>n.</i> 體育場 | 20. side [said] <i>n.</i> 旁邊 |
| 2. popular ['pɒpjələ] <i>adj.</i> 普遍的 | 21. place [pleis] <i>n.</i> 地方, take place
舉行 |
| 3. almost ['ɔ:lmu:st] <i>adv.</i> 几乎 | 22. match [mætʃ] <i>n.</i> 比賽 |
| 4. interested ['intərəstid] <i>adj.</i>
感兴趣的 | 23. far [fɑ:] <i>adj.</i> 远的 |
| 5. table tennis ['teibl'tenis] 乒乓球 | 24. chance [tʃɑ:ns] <i>n.</i> 机会 |
| 6. while [wʰaɪl] <i>adv.</i> 当 | 25. attend [ə'tend] <i>v.</i> 參加 |
| 7. find [faɪnd] <i>v.</i> 发现 | 26. happily ['hæpɪli] <i>adv.</i> 幸运地 |
| 8. avenue ['ævinju:] <i>n.</i> 大道 | 27. meet [mi:t] <i>v.</i> 遇見 |
| 9. lead [li:d] <i>v.</i> 引导通向 | 28. ticket ['tikit] <i>n.</i> 入場券 |
| 10. surprise [sə'praɪz] <i>v.</i> 惊奇 | 29. let [let] <i>v.</i> 讓 |
| 11. stream [stri:m] <i>n.</i> 小溪流 | 30. between [bi'twi:n] <i>prep.</i> 两者之間 |
| 12. along [ə'lɔ:ŋ] <i>prep.</i> 沿着 | 31. although [ə:l'ðəʊ] <i>conj.</i> 虽然 |
| 13. road [rəʊd] <i>n.</i> 道路 | 32. crowd [kraʊd] <i>v.</i> 拥挤, 挤滿 |
| 14. rush [rʌʃ] <i>v.</i> 匆忙跑动 | 33. fan [fæn] <i>n.</i> 热心家, 运动迷 |
| 15. hurry ['hʌri] <i>n.</i> 匆忙 | 34. such [sʌtʃ] <i>adj.</i> 如此的 |
| 16. look [lʊk] <i>v.</i> 看 look for 找 | 35. scene [si:n] <i>n.</i> 場面, 景象 |
| 17. cheerful ['tʃi:əfʊl] <i>adj.</i> 高兴的 | 36. never ['nevə] <i>adv.</i> 从不 |
| 18. excited [eksaitid] <i>adj.</i> 兴奋的 | 37. liberation [libə'reiʃən] <i>n.</i> 解放 |
| 19. catch [kætʃ] <i>v.</i> 抓住 | |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. Are our people interested in many sports?
2. What are the most popular games in our country?
3. What did you see on the newly built avenue leading to the Workers' Stadium?

4. What was going on at the Stadium?
5. What were the people rushing for?
6. Are you a sports fan?
7. If there is any match, will you go looking for chance to attend it?
8. What kind of ballgame do you like most?

II. 翻譯:

1. 我正在寻找我的課本。
2. 看，王正找机会投篮。
3. 他匆匆忙忙地向我跑来。
4. 球赛将在球类館举行。
5. 他显得很惊奇。
6. 他向前冲去，抓到了球。
7. 乒乓球很普遍，几乎人人都喜欢玩。
8. 离这儿不远，你可以步行去。

III. 用課文中适当的單詞或詞組填空:

1. The place is very——from here, you can't get there in two hours.
2. —— his speed increased, he did not finish first.
3. Do you often go to —— football matches?
4. I —— that the classroom was full.
5. While I was walking —— the road I —— an old friend.
6. I don't know the way. Can you —— me there?
7. He could not go to attend the match, he did not get any ——.

IV. 完成下列句子:

1. They hated the landlord who . . .
2. I know the man who . . .
3. They were the people who . . .

4. She was the girl who. . .

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第七章§3中的現在進行時)

I. 用括號內動詞的現在進行時填空:

1. The students _____ to the teacher. (to listen)
2. He _____ his hands. (to wash)
3. The little girl _____ .(to cry)
4. Wang _____ the sentence on the blackboard. (to write)
5. The Communist Party and Chairman Mao _____ us in building socialism and communism. (to lead)
6. He _____ at the picture on the wall. (to look)
7. We _____ great leap forward in our socialist construction. (to take)
8. The teacher _____ the students questions now. (to ask)
9. It rained a lot this morning. The water _____ into the stream. (to rush)
10. Please listen to the teacher carefully when he _____ the text. (to explain)

II. 將下列句子改為 (a) 否定句, (b) 疑問句:

1. They are playing table tennis.
2. He is reading the text now.
3. It is raining now.
4. The car is moving.
5. People is leaving the stadium.

III. 完成下列句子注意 is going to. . . 的用法

1. I am going to. . .
2. My friend is going to. . .
3. Our basketball team is going to. . .
4. They are going to. . .

5. We are going to . . .

LESSON THIRTY-FIVE

EXERCISE

Exercise trains the muscles and makes them stronger. You can walk, and skate, and throw a ball because you have trained your muscles to do these things. Feel the soft part of your arm. You are feeling muscles. When you bend your arm you can feel the big muscle move and become firmer. Exercise not only keeps the muscles of the limbs and body in good condition, but also strengthens the muscles of the heart and the organs of breathing.

Exercise helps to make the heart strong. Have you ever felt your heart beat? It beats faster when you are running than when you are sitting still. The heart pumps blood more freely when we do exercise, and serves all parts of the body better. Exercise helps the lungs to do better work too. Take a deep breath. You breathe the air more deeply than usual. Full and rapid breathing develops the muscles of the chest.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. muscle [ˈmʌsəl] <i>n.</i> 肌肉 | 8. big [bɪg] <i>adj.</i> 大的 |
| 2. strong [strɒŋ] <i>adj.</i> 强壮的 | 9. become [bɪˈkʌm] <i>v.</i> 成为 |
| 3. throw [θrou] <i>v.</i> 投掷 | 10. firm [fɜ:m] <i>adj.</i> 坚固的 |
| 4. feel [fi:l] <i>v.</i> 感觉, 摸 | 11. limb [lɪm] <i>n.</i> 肢, 手足 |
| 5. soft [sɔft] <i>adj.</i> 柔软的 | 12. condition [kənˈdɪʃən] <i>n.</i>
情况, 条件 |
| 6. part [pɑ:t] <i>n.</i> 部份 | 13. strengthen [ˈstreŋθən] <i>v.</i> 加强 |
| 7. bend [bend] <i>v.</i> 弯曲 | |

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 14. organ ['ɔ:gən] <i>n.</i> 器官 | 21. deep(ly) [di:p] <i>adj.</i> (<i>adv.</i>) 深 |
| 15. breathe [bri:θ] <i>v.</i> 呼吸 | 22. usual ['ju:ʒəl] <i>adj.</i>
平常的, 一向的 |
| 16. help [help] <i>v.</i> 幫助 | 23. rapid ['ræpɪd] <i>adj.</i> 迅速的 |
| 17. pump [pʌmp] <i>v.</i> 挤压 | 24. develop [di'veləp] <i>v.</i> 发展 |
| 18. blood [blʌd] <i>n.</i> 血液 | 25. chest [tʃest] <i>n.</i> 胸 |
| 19. freely ['fri:lɪ] <i>adv.</i> 自由地 | |
| 20. lung [lʌŋ] <i>n.</i> 肺 | |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. Do exercises train the muscles and make them stronger?
2. Why can we walk, skate, or throw a ball?
3. What is the soft part of your arm? Can you feel it?
4. What can you feel when you bend your arm?
5. When does the heart beat faster?
6. How does the heart pump blood when doing exercise?
7. What helps the lungs to do better work?
8. What happens when you take a deep breath?
9. What develops the muscle of the chest?

II. 翻譯:

1. 你的身体好嗎?
2. 我的心正跳動得很厉害。
3. 我們要加强我們两国間的友誼。
4. 英語不但是增加知識的工具, 也是一种社会交际的工具。
5. 你能把这棍子弄弯嗎?
6. 在我上床之前, 我总要作一次深呼吸。
7. 我們之間的團結更加巩固了。

III. 用課文內适当的單詞或詞組填空:

1. The peasants _____ the water into the fields.

2. The water of the stream was not _____, we could walk across it.
3. Everybody _____ excited and happy when they were received by the Party Leaders.
4. When you are running, your heart beats faster _____.
5. Please stand _____, don't move.
6. Physical culture and sports in our country _____ very fast.
7. Don't always keep yourself in the house, come out and _____ the fresh air.

IV. 将下列形容词改为副词并写出其意义:

如: deep—deeply

- | | | |
|----------|------------|--------------|
| 1. firm | 6. soft | 11. popular |
| 2. free | 7. careful | 12. cheerful |
| 3. rapid | 8. correct | 13. angry |
| 4. full | 9. strong | 14. strange |
| 5. warm | 10. new | 15. usual |

語法練習

I. 写出下列規則動詞的四種形式 (參考簡明語法第七章 §2)

如 to walk 的四種形式为:

- | walk | walked | walked | walking |
|---------------|------------------|----------------|---------|
| 1. to work | 5. to strengthen | 9. to stop | |
| 2. to help | 6. to attend | 10. to breathe | |
| 3. to develop | 7. to wash | | |
| 4. to look | 8. to study | | |

II. 写出下列不規則動詞的四種形式:

- | | | |
|------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. to make | 5. to keep | 9. to write |
| 2. to feel | 6. to break | 10. to beat |
| 3. to see | 7. to catch | |
| 4. to know | 8. to put | |

III. 將下列句子的謂語改為現在完成時 (參考簡明語法第七章 § 3 中的現在完成時):

例: 1) They stopped playing.

They have stopped playing.

2) He catches the ball.

He has caught the ball.

1. Hé goes.
2. I know it.
3. I put it on the desk.
4. The cock crowed.
5. We did not have our breakfast this morning.
6. They struggle hard against their oppressors.
7. They did not see it.
8. I saw it twice.
9. You take it away.
10. Do you decide to go there?

LESSON THIRTY-SIX

REVISION EXERCISES

課文復習

I. 正確朗讀下列單詞, 說出其意義和詞性:

- | | | |
|------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. among | 8. guard | 15. like |
| 2. great | 9. oppose | 16. trick |
| 3. largest | 10. increase | 17. decide |
| 4. advance | 11. receive | 18. punish |
| 5. full | 12. long | 19. knock |
| 6. towards | 13. still | 20. beat |
| 7. speed | 14. bone | 21. popular |

| | | |
|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 22. interested | 32. attend | 42. fast |
| 23. surprised | 33. let | 43. deeply |
| 24. along | 34. between | 44. firm |
| 25. rush | 35. although | 45. ever |
| 26. hurry | 36. bend | 46. develop |
| 27. catch | 37. fell | 47. usual |
| 28. by | 38. soft | 48. strengthen |
| 29. place | 39. move | 49. break |
| 30. far | 40. condition | 50. stadium |
| 31. chance | 41. keep | |

II. 写出下列短語的意义:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| *1. to be far from . . . | 8. 100 m. to go |
| *2. one of . . . | 9. in a hurry |
| *3. a great number of . . . | 10. to keep . . . in good condition |
| 4. to work for . . . | |
| *5. to be interested in . . . | *11. not only . . . but also |
| 6. to take place | 12. more . . . than usual |
| 7. to look for . . . | |

III. 將上題有 * 記号的短語造句。

IV. 翻譯:

1. There was no one among us that was not surprised to see him become so healthy and strong after hard training.
2. I felt my heart beating at a great speed. It was pumping the blood to every part of my body. My breath was also getting faster than usual.
3. When you run a sprint, keep your body straight and a little forward, and pump your arms freely. That will make you run faster.
4. Before Liberation he had almost no work to do. He

often walked about the city looking for a chance to work.

6. Read the questions carefully before doing your homework. Don't do it in a hurry.
6. During the last five minutes, the scores of our team increased greatly.
7. He can not only throw javelin very far, but also run faster than any others in our class.
8. I can't break the iron (鉄) stick but can bend it.

語法复习

I. 写出下列不规则动词的四种形式:

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. to bend | 8. to see | 15. to catch |
| 2. to make | 9. to steal | 16. to go |
| 3. to eat | 10. to know | 17. to let |
| 4. to keep | 11. to run | 18. to take |
| 5. to begin | 12. to beat | 19. to lead |
| 6. to sleep | 13. to find | 20. to read |
| 7. to get | 14. to build | |

II. 用下列四个时态讀出 (或写出) 下面句子:

1. 一般现在时
2. 现在进行时
3. 现在完成时
4. 一般过去时

1. He (not, come).
2. I (write) a letter.
3. We (receive) a great number of visitors.
4. He (visit) our institute.
5. We (go) out early.
6. They (get) up early.
7. You (not, work) hard enough.
8. The cock (crow).
9. You (swim) in the sea?

10. The girl (read) the book?

III. 将括号内动词的正确时态填入空白:

1. I (not, see) _____ you for a week.
2. He always (get) _____ up early in the morning.
3. They (read) _____ the text now.
4. I always (meet) _____ you at the sports ground.
5. He usually (read) _____ English in the morning, but
(not, read) _____ yesterday.
6. He (ask) _____ the same question last week.
7. I (not, see) _____ him, because he was not at home.
8. Exercise (train) _____ the muscles and (make) _____
them strong.
9. We can't go out, it (rain) _____ hard.
10. I (not, receive) _____ from him since last month.

LESSON THIRTY-SEVEN

ALEXANDER MATROSOV

In 1942, on Soviet Army Day, Alexander Matrosov's regiment was attacking a German fascist stronghold near a Russian village. The fascists were defending it with all their strength, and all their machine-guns were firing. As bullets were flying all around them, the Soviet men could hardly move forward. They were firing and throwing hand-grenades at the enemy machine-guns.

Soon only one machine-gun continued to fire, Alexander Matrosov moved forward, and threw a handgrenade at it. There was a loud explosion, and then a sudden silence.

The Soviet men saw that the machine-gun had stopped

firing. They ran forward, but fell to the ground once more as the enemy machine-gun came to life again.

Suddenly Alexander Matrosov got up and ran towards the enemy stronghold. The whole regiment could see him as he turned, fell on his left side, and with all his strength threw his whole body upon the machine-gun.

The machine-gun stopped.

In a second the Soviet soldiers were on their feet again. "For our Motherland!" they shouted. "For Sasha Matrosov!" The fascists could do nothing to keep them back. A minute later, the enemy stronghold was in the hands of Matrosov's regiment.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Soviet Army ['soviet a:mi] <i>n.</i>
苏军 | 14. around [ə'raund] <i>prep.</i> 圍繞着 |
| 2. regiment ['redʒimənt] <i>n.</i> 团 | 15. hardly ['hɑ:dli] <i>adv.</i> 几乎沒有 |
| 3. attack [ə'tæk] <i>v.</i> 攻击 | 16. hand-grenade ['hændgri'neid] <i>n.</i>
手榴彈 |
| 4. German ['dʒɜ:mən] <i>n. adj.</i>
德国人 | 17. enemy ['emini] <i>n.</i> 敌人 |
| 5. fascist ['fæsist] <i>n.</i> 法西斯 | 18. continue [kən'tinju] <i>v.</i> 繼續 |
| 6. stronghold ['strɒŋhəʊld] <i>n.</i> 堡壘 | 19. loud [laud] <i>adj.</i> 大声的 |
| 7. near [niə] <i>prep.</i> 靠近 | 20. explosion [eks'plouʒən] <i>n.</i> 爆炸 |
| 8. village ['vɪlɪdʒ] <i>n.</i> 乡村 | 21. silence ['saɪləns] <i>n.</i> 寂靜 |
| 9. defend [dɪ'fend] <i>v.</i> 保卫, 防守 | 22. fall [fɔ:l] <i>v.</i> 跌下 |
| 10. machine-gun [mə'ʃɪŋgʌn] <i>n.</i>
机关枪 | 23. whole [həʊl] <i>adj.</i> 全部的 |
| 11. fire [faɪə] <i>v.</i> 开火 | 24. turn [tɜ:n] <i>v.</i> 翻轉 |
| 12. bullet ['bulɪt] <i>n.</i> 子弹 | 25. soldier ['souldʒə] <i>n.</i> 士兵 |
| 13. fly [flaɪ] <i>v.</i> 飞 | 26. shout [ʃaʊt] <i>v.</i> 喊叫 |
| | 27. later ['leɪtə] <i>adv.</i> 后来 |

EXERCISES

譯文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. Where and what was Matrosov's regiment attacking?
2. Why could the Soviet men hardly move forward?
3. What were the Soviet men doing to the enemy machine-gun?
4. What did Matrosov do that made the enemy machine-gun silent?
5. Did the enemy machine gun stop firing? Did it come to life again?
6. Why did the Soviet men fall to the ground once more?
7. What did Matrosov do as the enemy machine gun came to life again?
8. Did the enemy machine gun stop again as Matrosov threw his whole body upon it? What did the Soviet men do then?
9. Could the fascists do anything to keep them back?
10. What was about the enemy stronghold?

II. 翻譯:

1. 他們正在全力進攻敵人的堡壘。
2. 人們早已擠滿了籃球場的周圍。
3. 長工們幾乎沒有足夠東西吃。
4. 我們已經把桌子搬到房間的另一個角落去了。
5. 他幾乎跌倒在地上。
6. 他向左轉，然後突然停住。
7. 我幾乎不能繼續往前跑。

III. 完成下列句子:

1. He could hardly . . .

2. I hardly had . . .

3. They could hardly do anything to . . .

4. They could do nothing to . . .

IV. 用課文內適當單詞或詞組填空:

1. I had read the _____ book and remembered every-
thing about it.

2. He _____ to the ground but _____ got up again.

3. As the wind was blowing hard, we could _____
_____ forward.

4. We heard a _____ voice, it came from the _____
_____ side.

5. Don't be in a hurry, I'll come _____

6. Somebody had _____ yesterday's newspaper away.

7. Although I have seen the pictures for three times, I
hope to see it _____.

語法練習

I. 將括号內動詞的過去進行時填入空白 (參考簡明語法第七章
§ 3中的過去進行時):

1. The teacher came in when we (do) _____ our home-
work.

2. They (defend) _____ their basket with all their
strength.

3. The other team (move) _____ forward when the
whistle blew.

4. The rain (fall) _____ hard, we could not start in time.

5. The bus started while I (get) _____ on.

6. I spoke to him many times, but he (read) _____ and
did not hear me.

7. He (study) _____ English at nine yesterday evening

II. 用括号內動詞的過去完成時填空 (參考簡明語法第七章 § 3)

的过去完成时)：

1. Before he came to the institute, he (be) ~~was~~
a worker in a factory.
2. As soon as you (go) ~~go~~ I wanted to see you again.
3. After I (prepare) ~~prepare~~ my lessons, I went to bed.
4. He said that he (ask) ~~asked~~ you the same question.
5. I (not, go) ~~go~~ very far when he called me back.
6. The class (begin, already) ~~begin~~ when he came in.
7. I (write) ~~wrote~~ three letters to him but received nothing from him.

III. 将下列句子改为 (a) 否定句, (b) 一般疑问句:

1. He was having his lunch.
2. I had attended the meeting.
3. You were reading at that time.
4. He had forgotten it long before.
5. They had known it long before.
6. The little girl was crying.

LESSON THIRTY-EIGHT

A LETTER

The Peking Institute of Physical culture May 15

Dear Liu-Sun:

How time flies! It has been nearly three months since I left our hometown. You must be thinking that I have forgotten all about my promise to write to you. Yes, I ought to have written to you earlier, but the fact is that I have been so busy lately and I seem to have hardly a moment to spare. But I have been always thinking about you and our home-town.

A few days ago, we celebrated the great international workers' day — May First. On that day, we went to the Summer Palace. We sang and danced with men of PLA, and rowed in the Kunming Lake. After May Day, we had spring holidays. Most of us spent our holidays in visiting museums and going to the theatres.

Very soon we shall have an athletic meet. Almost all of the students are to take part in it. Everyone has been training hard recently. It goes without saying that hot contests will be going on at that time.

June is coming soon and the time for examination is drawing nearer and nearer. I am afraid I shall not be able to write to you then, because I shall be busy in reviewing my lessons. By the end of July I shall have finished all my examinations and I shall write to you again.

Please write to me as often as you can. I am much anxious to learn how things are going on in our home-town and how you are getting on with your work.

Hoping to receive your letter soon.

Yours sincerely Li-ming.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. letter ['letə] <i>n.</i> 信 | 11. lately ['leɪli] <i>adv.</i> 近来 |
| 2. dear [diə] <i>adj.</i> 亲爱的 | 12. moment ['mɒmənt] <i>n.</i> 瞬间 |
| 3. since [sɪns] <i>conj.</i> 自从 | 13. spare [speə] <i>v.</i> 节余 |
| 4. leave [li:v] <i>v.</i> 离开 | 14. few [fju:] <i>adj.</i> 少的 |
| 5. hometown ['həʊmtaʊn] <i>n.</i> 家乡 | 15. international [ˌɪntə'næʃnəl] <i>adj.</i>
国际的 |
| 6. forget [fə'get] <i>v.</i> 忘记 | 16. Summer Place ['sʌmə peɪs]
颐和园 |
| 7. promise ['prɒmɪs] <i>v.</i> 允诺 | 17. PLA = People's Liberation
Army [pi:pləz lɪbeɪʃən
Army] |
| 8. ought [ɔ:t] <i>v.</i> 应该(和 to 连用) | |
| 9. fact [fækt] <i>n.</i> 事实 | |
| 10. busy ['bɪzi] <i>adj.</i> 忙的 | |

- 'ɑ:mi] 人民解放軍
18. row [rou] *v.* 划船
19. Kuming Lake ['kumiŋ lei:k]
昆明湖
20. spend [spend] *v.* 度过
21. holiday ['hɒlɪdɪ] *n.* 假日
22. museum [mju:'ziəm] *n.* 博物館
23. theatre ['θiətə] *n.* 劇院
24. athletic [æθ'letɪk] *adj.* 田徑的
25. recently ['ri:sntli] *adv.* 最近
26. contest ['kɒntest] *n.* 競賽
27. examination [ɪg,zæmi'neɪʃən] *n.*
考試
28. draw [drɔ:] *v.* 拉, 靠近
29. able ['eɪbl] *adj.* 能够
30. review [ri'vju:] *v.* 复习
31. finish ['fɪniʃ] *v.* 完成
32. end [end] *n.* 結束
33. anxious [æŋkʃəs] *adj.* 渴望的
34. hope [həup] *v.* 希望
35. sincerely [sin'siəli] *adv.* 真誠地

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. Do you often write letters to your friend?
2. Why do you not write to your friend so often?
3. What is May Day? What do you do on that day?
4. Where did you spend your spring holidays?
5. Are you going to have an athletic meet? Will you take part in it?
6. Do you think that a hot contest will be going on at that time?
7. Is June the time for final examination? if not, when?
8. What will you do in June?
9. When will you write to your friend again?
10. Do you often receive letters from your friends?

II. 翻譯:

1. 他在英語方面花了很多時間。
2. 他將不能夠參加這次賽跑。
3. 我一結束我的工作就來看你。

4. 从我知道这个消息以来，一个星期已经过去了。
5. 如果你不在这方面花足够时间，你将不能够在本月底完成这项工作。
6. 你应当再一次复习你的功课。
7. 明天下午三点鐘我将在复习功课。

III. 用课文中的单詞或詞組填空:

1. You are not studying hard _____, you _____ spend more time on it.
2. There will be an athletic meet soon. I am going to _____ in it.
3. It is twelve o'clock now, it is _____ for lunch.
4. You must not _____ if you are not be able to do it.
5. I have no time to _____ because I am very busy.
6. He did not come, the fact was that he had _____ all his promise.
7. I'll finish it in a moment, there are only a _____ words left.

IV. 完成下列句子:

1. I am afraid I shall not be able to . . .
2. By that time you will be able to . . .
3. I am able to . . .
4. He is able to . . .

語法練習 (参考簡明語法第七章 §2 中的一般将来时、将来进行时、将来完成时)

- I. 将下列句子改为一般将来时: a) 肯定句, b) 否定句, c) 一般疑問句

例: We go there together.

- a) We shall go there together.
- b) We shall not go there together.
- c) Shall we go there together?

1. We ask the question.
2. You never answer the question without the help of the book.
3. He does not understand it.
4. We do a lot of exercises in the class.
5. He forgets it soon.
6. They learn Russian.

II. 将下列句子改为“to be going to”的句型，表示“即将”的意思。

例： They will learn Russian next week.

They are going to learn Russian.

1. He will leave here tomorrow morning.
2. We shall have three days' holiday.
3. Where will you send it to?
4. We shall ask him the question.
5. Will he give us a report this after-noon?

III. 将下列句子改为将来进行时，应用括号内的时间状语。

例： He is sleeping. (at five o'clock)

He will be sleeping at five o'clock.

1. She is doing her homework. (after supper)
2. They are studying English. (for two more years)
3. We are swimming in the Kuming lake. (this time next month)
4. He is using it. (this afternoon)
5. It is raining. (when you come)

IV. 用括号内动词的将来完成时填空：

1. Before you go to see him, he (leave) _____ the place.
2. He (finish) _____ the work before you leave.
3. By the end of this summer, he (teach) _____ in our institute for five years

4. I hope they (stop) _____ playing at five o'clock.
5. I hope when you have finished this exercise, you (not, make) _____ many mistakes in it.

LESSON THIRTY-NINE

ROUND THE INSTITUTE

If you walk round the institute, you will find that the sports field is a vast place for various training purposes. It contains football fields, basketball and volleyball courts and track and field grounds. Groups of students can be seen here and there. Some are training on athletic events, some are playing football, basketball and other games. They are not for fun, they are having their training classes under the instruction of the coaches.

Of all the buildings for indoor training, the Athletics Hall is the biggest one. Here you can also see teachers helping the students making correct start in a sprint.

You must be surprised if you take a look in the Swimming Hall. It is the warmest place in our institute. Even in the cold winter days, you would take it as in summer time. Students in the Swimming Hall are all in swimming suits. They look so strong and healthy.

Ballgames Hall is the place where many indoor games are played. Of course you must not think it big enough for a football game to take place in it.

Near the Ballgames Hall, there are halls for gymnastics and other minor sports.

There are plenty of sports facilities and equipments in

our institute to meet the needs of teaching and coaching.

While one is feeling happy studying in this beautiful campus, he should not forget his duty — studying hard and training vigorously.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. round [raʊnd] <i>prep.</i> 环绕 | 16. start [stɑ:t] <i>n.</i> 出发, 起跑, 开始 |
| 2. vast [vɑ:st] <i>adj.</i> 广大的 | 17. sprint [sprɪnt] <i>n.</i> 短跑 |
| 3. various [ˈvɛəriəs] <i>adj.</i> 各种不同的 | 18. even [i:vən] <i>adv.</i> 甚至 |
| 4. contain [ken'teɪn] <i>v.</i> 包含 | 19. cold [kəʊld] <i>adj.</i> 冷 |
| 5. court [kɔ:t] <i>n.</i> 场地 | 20. suit [sju:t] <i>n.</i> 服装 |
| 6. track and field [træk ənd fɪld] 田径 | 21. ballgame [ˈbɔ:l'geɪm] <i>n.</i> 球类运动 |
| 7. group [gru:p] <i>n.</i> 群, 队 | 22. gymnastics [dʒɪm'næstɪks] <i>n.</i> 体操 |
| 8. event [i'vent] <i>n.</i> 项目 | 23. minor [ˈmaɪnə] <i>adj.</i> 次要的 |
| 9. fun [fʌn] <i>n.</i> 游戏 | 24. plenty of [ˈplenti əv] 许多 |
| 10. instruction [ɪnstrʌkʃən] <i>n.</i> 教 | 25. facility [fə'sɪlɪti] <i>n.</i> 设备 |
| 11. coach [kəʊtʃ] <i>v.</i> 教练 <i>n.</i> 教练员 | 26. equipment [i'kwɪpmənt] <i>n.</i> 装备, 器材 |
| 12. building [ˈbɪldɪŋ] <i>n.</i> 建筑物 | 27. campus [ˈkæmpəs] <i>n.</i> 校园 |
| 13. indoor [ˈɪndə:] <i>adj.</i> 室内的 | 28. vigorously [ˈvɪgərəsli] <i>adv.</i> 用力地 |
| 14. athletics hall [æθ'letɪks hɔ:l] 田径馆 | |
| 15. correct [kə'rekt] <i>adj.</i> 正确的 | |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. Is the sports field a vast place? What does it contain?
2. What can you see at the sports field?
3. Are the students playing for fun or for some other purpose?

4. Can we swim in the Swimming hall in winter? Why?
5. What is a ballgames hall?
6. Can a football game take place in a ballgames hall? Why?
7. What other buildings can you name in our institute?
8. Do you think that the sports facilities and equipments plenty enough to meet the needs of coaching and teaching?
9. Do you feel happy studying in our institute?
10. What is the duty of a student?

II. 翻譯:

1. 籃球場，足球場，田徑館，體育場都是（用作）運動的地方。
2. 你想看一看田徑館嗎？
3. 請你幫我在字典里找這個單詞。
4. 會議將在什麼時候舉行？
5. 我把他當作你們的教練。
6. 學生們在老師的指導下學習。
7. 聽到這消息我很驚奇。
8. 這是我們上英語課的地方。

III. 用課文內的單詞或詞組填空:

1. Please remember these words, don't _____ them,
2. You must not _____ it too easy.
3. To study hard and train vigorously are our _____,
4. Correct _____ is very important in a sprint.
5. We _____ anxious as he has not come back.
6. Don't _____ the word "good" as "well".
7. The track and field athletics _____ running, jumping and throwing events.
8. Peking is a _____ place and Canton is a _____ place.

9. _____ events were going on in the athletic meet, they were all very exciting.

10. Table tennis is an _____ game and football is an _____ game.

IV. 完成下列句子:

1. Basketball court is a place where . . .

2. Football field is a place where . . .

3. The classroom is a place where . . .

4. This is the place for . . .

5. The athletics hall is the place for . . .

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第七章 § 8 中的情态動詞)

I. 翻譯下列句子, 注意情态動詞的含義:

1. You can find a number of new books in the library.

2. You may not look at the book when you are having a test.

3. I can run as fast as you can.

4. I could not come yesterday as it was raining all the day.

5. You need not write down the questions.

6. He ought to finish it yesterday.

7. I know it must be you.

8. I went out early that I might get the ticket for the match.

9. We have to get it ready before they come.

10. I had no other way, I had to do it myself.

11. You should finish your homework before next class.

12. They may do what they like to.

13. I must go in a moment, they are waiting for me.

14. It must be very warm in the Swimming Hall.

15. You should do it yourself.

II. 用 Can, may, must, should, could, ought to, would 填空:

1. People _____ live without water.
2. You _____ finish your work before going out.
3. They _____ have come here the day before yesterday.
4. If it should rain, the game _____ be played indoors.
5. You _____ prepare your lessons before you come to the class.
6. _____ I come in?
7. All of us _____ study the Party's educational policy.

LESSON FORTY

REVISION EXERCISES

課文复习

I. 写出下列形容词的副词:

- | | | |
|-----------|------------|--------------|
| 1. loud, | 5. correct | 9. deep |
| 2. free, | 6. happy | 10. vigorous |
| 3. late | 7. sudden | 11. hard |
| 4. recent | 8. quick | 12. enough |

II. 写出下列动词的名词:

- | | | |
|-------------|------------------|-------------|
| 1. to study | 5. to move | 9. to live |
| 2. to start | 6. to explode | 10. to fire |
| 3. to equip | 7. to strengthen | 11. to need |
| 4. to work | 8. to breathe | |

III. 写出下列名词形容词:

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. silence | 3. health | 5. strength |
| 2. athletic | 4. happiness | 6. vigor |

IV. 写下列詞組或短語的意义:

1. to attack with all their strength
- *2. can (could) hardly
- *3. once more
4. to fall on his left (right) side,
5. to come to life again,
- *6. in a second (moment),
7. to be on their feet again,
8. could do nothing to . . .
- *9. to take a look in (at) . . .
10. to take it as . . .
11. plenty of . . .
12. to meet the need of . . .
13. to think it big enough for . . .
- *14. am (is, are, was, were) to . . .
15. how things are getting on . . .
16. under the instruction of . . .
17. to be able to . . .

V. 用上題中有 * 記号的短語造句:

VI. 譯翻:

1. I am in a hurry. It was four o'clock now, I am to take part in the game in ten minutes. I can hardly have a moment to spare. I am going to go to the sports ground in a second.
2. Comrade Wang was pumping the baske ball. Someone said by his side: "Don't fill too much air into it, it will be too hard."
3. The little girl was crying all this morning, I could do nothing to keep her silent.
4. I was pleased to learn that you were getting Stronger

and stronger after you had been ill for such a long time.

5. Football is an exciting game in which twenty-two players are to be separated into two teams to play against each other.
6. Under the instruction of the coach the athletes who are going to take part in the competition next week have to make all necessary preparations and have a good rest.
7. You ought to do your homework more carefully and to write more clearly.
8. You must not think it easy for you to learn a good start, a good and correct start in a sprint needs plenty of hard training.

語法复习

I. 依照下表写出动词 to train, to find 的九个时态:

例: 动词 to work 的九个时态表:

| | 一般时 | 进行时 | 完成时 |
|----|--------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 現在 | work
(works) | am
is working
are | have worked
has worked |
| 过去 | worked | was
were working | had worked |
| 将来 | shall
will work | shall
will be working | shall
will have worked |

II. 将下列括号内动词的适当时态填入空白:

1. I (leave) _____ Peking by the end of this week.
2. I (think) _____ about the plan when comrade Li

- came in.
3. He went doing morning exercise as soon as he (get) _____ out of bed.
 4. I am sorry, I (not, be) _____ able to come this afternoon.
 5. Last week I (take) _____ a look in the library, there (be) _____ a lot of new English books.
 6. He (not, attend) _____ the match this evening, because he (promise) _____ to help me doing my home work.
 7. I (review) _____ all my lessons by the beginning of the final examination.
 8. If you bend your arm, you (feel) your muscles become firmer.
 9. He (leave, already) _____ here before you came.

LESSON FORTY-ONE

THE ASS AND HIS BURDEN

Once upon a time, there was an ass. He returned home with a heavy load of salt. He carried it on his back. He was very tired. While he was crossing a small river, he stumbled and fell into the water. When he got up he noticed that his burden became much lighter. He was struck with astonishment, because he did not know that salt dissolved in water. He reached home very pleased with his unexpected good luck.

Some time after, he crossed the same river, but this time he was loaded with sponges. He believed that if he

lay down in the water his burden would become lighter. But the sponges became filled with water. As they were very heavy, he was seized with fear because he could not get up again, and he was soon carried away by the stream and drowned.

This is a good story. It tells us that not all the past experiences are always useful to us.

In our training we must not stick to the old method. Every one of us, teachers or students, ought to find out new ways of teaching or learning now and then.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. ass [æs] <i>n.</i> 驢子 | 16. dissolve [dɪ'zɒlv] <i>v.</i> 溶解 |
| 2. burden ['bɜ:dn] <i>n.</i> 負擔 | 17. reach [ri:tʃ] <i>v.</i> 到達 |
| 3. heavy ['hevi] <i>adj.</i> 沉重的 | 18. pleased [pli:zd] <i>adj.</i> 高興的 |
| 4. load [ləʊd] <i>n.</i> 裝載物 | 19. unexpected [ʌniks'pektɪd] <i>adj.</i>
出乎意料之外 |
| 5. salt [sɔ:lt] <i>n.</i> 鹽 | 20. luck [lʌk] <i>n.</i> 運氣 |
| 6. carry ['kæri] <i>v.</i> 攜帶 | 21. sponge [spʌndʒ] <i>n.</i> 海棉 |
| 7. tired [taɪəd] <i>adj.</i> 勞累的 | 22. believe [bi'li:v] <i>v.</i> 相信 |
| 8. cross [kros] <i>v.</i> 渡過 | 23. fill [fɪl] <i>v.</i> 充滿 |
| 9. small [smɔ:l] <i>adj.</i> 小的 | 24. seize [si:z] <i>v.</i> 抓住 |
| 10. river ['rɪvə] <i>n.</i> 河流 | 25. fear [fiə] <i>n.</i> 恐懼 |
| 11. stumble ['stʌmbəl] <i>v.</i> 絆倒 | 26. drown [draʊn] <i>v.</i> 溺死 |
| 12. notice ['nəʊtɪs] <i>v.</i> 注意到 | 27. past [pɑ:st] <i>adj.</i> 過去的 |
| 13. light [laɪt] <i>adj.</i> 輕的 | 28. stick [stɪk] <i>v.</i>
依照, 堅持(和 to 連用) |
| 14. struck [strʌk] <i>v.</i> 打擊, 敲(動
詞 strike 的過去式過去分詞) | 29. method ['meθəd] <i>n.</i> 方法 |
| 15. astonishment [ə'stɒnɪʃmənt] <i>n.</i>
驚訝 | 30. way [weɪ] <i>n.</i> 方法 |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. What did the ass carry on his back when he returned home?
2. How did the ass feel with a heavy load of salt on his back?
3. What happened to the ass when he was crossing a small river?
4. What did he notice when he got up?
5. Why did his burden become lighter?
6. What was he loaded with when he crossed the same river some time after?
7. Did the ass use his last experience? Why did he use it?
8. What happened to the ass when he fell in the water the second time?
9. Why did the ass not get up again?
10. Tell how we should use the past experiences?

II. 翻譯:

1. 我注意到我們學院有很多體育設備。
2. 他將在明天到達北京。
3. 他做出了出乎意料之外的好成績。
4. 當我回到家里，我看到大家很健康，非常高興。
5. 當他正在跑的時候，他拌了一下，跌在地上。
6. 這一回，那驢子很高興，因為他的負載很輕。
7. 我相信這個經驗很有用處。
8. 這隻驢子終於被水流帶走了。

III. 用課文內的單詞或詞組填空:

1. I am _____, I have ~~walked~~ a long distance.
2. If you want to go to Canton, you have to _____
many rivers.
3. 40 kgs. is lighter than 50 kgs. but _____ than 30
kgs.
4. Although the enemy machine gun was firing at him,
Matrosov rushed forward without _____.
5. ~~That is an old method~~, you must not _____ to it.
6. He has gone to Moscow since last week and will _____
next month.
7. A _____ river is called a stream.

IV. 完成下列句子

1. He noticed that . . .
2. I told him that . . .
3. You know that . . .
4. They believe that . . .
5. He said that . . .

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第七章§4)

I. 依照各句的原来时态把它们改为被动语态的句子:

例: a) He carries it on his back. (一般现在时)

It is carried (by him) on his back.

b) They loaded the ass with sponges. (一般过去时)

The ass was loaded with sponges.

c) They will find out new ways of training. (一般将来时)

New ways of training will be found out.

1. We must not stick to the old method.
2. We shall make out the plan by the end of this week.
3. Exercise strengthens the muscles of the heart.
4. Every year we send out a great number of athletes

to visit other countries.

5. I received a letter from my brother.
6. The farmhands knocked the landlord down and beat him hard.
7. Good students make few mistakes in their homework.
8. He will finish the work in two days.
9. All students answered the questions correctly.
10. He did not do his homework in time.
11. We heard a loud explosion.
12. Everybody knows it.
13. The stream carried the ass away.
14. We train the students to be teachers and coaches.

LESSON FORTY-TWO

EDUCATION TODAY

The aim of education in China today, as Chairman Mao Tse-tung has said, is to train cultured working people with a socialist political outlook. He also tells us that there are two kinds of knowledge—knowledge of production and knowledge of class struggle. The Party's educational policy is that education must serve the interests of class struggle, must be combined with productive labour.

In line with this policy, several weeks in a year are devoted to productive labour and through which do most of the students learn to combine theory with practice, learn to respect labour and labouring people, whose feelings, thoughts and needs they adopted as their own.

Being "red and expert" has become a common saying in our daily life. But the idea of "red and expert" is not to be misunderstood. One who is said to be "red" must at the same time be "expert" in the field of his own study and work. And it is only through being "red" can one serve the cause of socialism well.

The party's educational policy is the only correct policy of Marxism and Leninism on education. It was accepted by the people with hearty welcome, and it is being carried out on a nation-wide scale.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. education [ˈedjuːˈkeɪʃən] <i>n.</i> 教育 | 20. theory [ˈθiəri] <i>n.</i> 理論 |
| 2. aim [eɪm] <i>n.</i> 目的 | 21. practice [ˈpræktɪs] <i>n.</i> 实际, 实践 |
| 3. cultured [ˈkʌltʃəd] <i>adj.</i> 有文化的 | 22. feeling [ˈfi:lɪŋ] <i>n.</i> 感情 |
| 4. political [pəˈlɪtɪkəl] <i>adj.</i> 政治 | 23. thought [θɔ:t] <i>n.</i> 思想 |
| 5. outlook [ˈaʊtlʊk] <i>n.</i> 观点 | 24. adopt [əˈdɒpt] <i>v.</i> 采用 |
| 6. kind [kaɪnd] <i>n.</i> 种类 | 25. own [aʊn] <i>adj.</i> 自己的 |
| 7. knowledge [ˈnɒlɪdʒ] <i>n.</i> 知識 | 26. red [red] <i>adj.</i> 紅的 |
| 8. production [prəˈdʌkʃən] <i>n.</i> 生产 | 27. expert [ˈekspe:t] <i>n.</i> 专家 |
| 9. class [klɑ:s] <i>n.</i> 階級 | [eksˈpɜ:t] <i>adj.</i> 熟練的, 专的 |
| 10. educational [ˈedjuːˈkeɪʃənəl] <i>adj.</i> | 28. common [ˈkɒməm] <i>adj.</i> |
| 教育的 | 普通的, 共同的 |
| 11. policy [ˈpɒlɪsi] <i>n.</i> 方針, 政策 | 29. saying [ˈseɪɪŋ] <i>n.</i> 格言 |
| 12. interests [ˈɪntərəst] <i>n.</i> 利益 | 30. idea [aɪˈdɪə] <i>n.</i> 主意, 思想 |
| 13. combine [kəmˈbaɪn] <i>v.</i> 結合 | 31. misunderstand [ˈmɪsʌndəˈstænd] |
| 14. productive [prəˈdʌktɪv] <i>adj.</i> 生产 | <i>v.</i> 誤解 |
| 15. labour [ˈleɪbə] <i>n.</i> 劳动 | 32. accept [əkˈsept] <i>v.</i> 接受 |
| 16. line [laɪn] <i>n.</i> 綫 in line with | 33. nation-wide [ˈneɪʃənˈwaɪd] <i>adj.</i> |
| 依据 | 全国范围的 |
| 17. several [ˈsevərəl] <i>adj.</i> 几个 | 34. scale [skeɪl] <i>n.</i> 規模 |
| 18. devote [dɪˈvəʊt] <i>v.</i> 用于 | 35. hearty [ˈhɑ:ti] <i>adj.</i> 由衷的 |
| 19. through [θru:] <i>prep.</i> 通过 | 36. welcome [ˈwelkəm] <i>n.</i> 欢迎 |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

- 1*. What is the aim of education today?
2. How many kinds of knowledge are there?
3. What is the Party's educational policy?
4. What do most of the students learn through productive labour?
5. Why is the idea of "red and expert" not to be misunderstood?
6. Through what can the "red and expert" be manifested?
7. How do you think about the Party's educational policy?
8. Is the policy being accepted whole-heartedly?

II. 翻譯:

1. 这个訓練計劃正在被正确執行着。
2. 一週內六個鐘頭用于英語課。
3. 我們應該互相尊重。
4. 这个單詞不應該被誤解。
5. 理論必須和实践相結合。
6. 我們采用了他的經驗。
7. 在科学的領域內，沒有容易走的道路。

III. 用課文內适当的單詞或詞組填空:

1. More time is _____ to practice.
2. Most of the students have _____ the instruction of the teacher.
3. There are three _____ of starts in sprinting.
4. Five students were _____ as League members (團員) last week.

5. Being students of New China, we must _____ the thoughts and feelings of the working people as our own.
6. The instructions of the coach were well _____ by the athletes.
7. _____ their training plan, they adopted your new methods in their training.

IV. 完成下列句子:

1. He is said to be
2. It was said that
3. The match was said to be
4. Our purpose in learning English is to
5. The aim of physical training is to

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第七章 §4)

I. 依照各句原来的时态把它們改为被动語态句子:

例: a) We are carrying out the Party's educational policy. (現在进行时)

The party's educational policy is being carried out.

b) The athletes were carrying out the instructions through the whole training session. (訓練期間)

The instructions were being carried out through the whole training session.

1. They were building a great number of houses around the city.
2. We are training the students to be coaches and teachers.
3. They are using the new method in their training.
4. The students were making good progress during last month.
5. He was doing nothing in the morning.

6. We are making preparations for the athletic meet these days.
7. We are preparing all necessary things for the exhibition (展覽).

II. 根据要求把括号内动词的被动语态填入空白:

1. The ball (leave) _____ in the room. (一般过去时)
2. Not a man (see) _____. (一般过去时)
3. The quarrel (forget) _____ in a few days' time.
(一般将来时)
4. Your homework must (write) _____ in ink. (一般现在时)
5. Table tennis (play) _____ all over our country.
(一般现在时)
6. English (use) _____ as a means of our study.
(一般现在时)
7. The landlord (punish) _____ by the farmhands.
(一般过去时)
8. The questions (not, answer) _____ until you (ask) _____ to. (一般将来时, 一般现在时)
9. He (know) _____ as one of the best runner some years ago. (一般过去时)
10. It (say) _____ that the new stadium (build) _____ near our institute. (一般现在时, 一般将来时)

LESSON FORTY-THREE

WHAT MUSCLES NEED

The students were having an anatomy lesson. The subject was about the muscles. After the teacher had gene-

rally explained the structure and the functions of the muscles, a student stood up and asked:

"What do muscles need when they work?"

"Muscles need oxygen, food and proper exercise," said the teacher. "Oxygen is a colourless gas. There is plenty of oxygen in the air."

"But how does the oxygen in the air get to the muscle?" asked the student.

"By a pathway through the nose, down the throat and through a tube called the windpipe, which is the pathway of the air into the lungs. From the lungs the oxygen passes to the blood. It is carried by the blood to all the muscles of the body." the teacher answered.

"But why do the muscles need food?" asked another student.

"Muscles need food as well as oxygen," said the teacher. "Nourishing food like vegetables, milk, meat and fruit help to build strong muscles and to give you power to work and play."

"Proper exercise is needed too," continued the teacher. "The right kind of exercise trains the muscles and makes them stronger."

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. anatomy [ə'nætəmi] <i>n.</i> 解剖学 | 7. gas [gæs] <i>n.</i> 气体 |
| 2. generally [dʒənərəli] <i>adv.</i> 一般地 | 8. air [eə] <i>n.</i> 空气 |
| 3. structure [ˈstrʌktʃə] <i>n.</i> 结构 | 9. pathway [ˈpɑ:θweɪ] <i>n.</i> 通道 |
| 4. function [ˈfʌŋkʃən] <i>n.</i> 功能 | 10. tube [tju:b] <i>n.</i> 管道 |
| 5. oxygen [ˈɒksɪdʒən] <i>n.</i> 氧 | 11. call [kɔ:l] <i>v.</i> 称, 叫做 |
| 6. colourless [ˈkʌlələs] <i>adj.</i> 无色的 | 12. windpipe [ˈwɪndˈpaɪp] <i>n.</i> 气管 |

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 13. pass [pɑ:s] <i>v.</i> 通过 | 17. milk [milk] <i>n.</i> 牛奶 |
| 14. nourishing [ˈnɑ:ʃɪŋ] <i>adj.</i>
有营养的 | 18. meat [mi:t] <i>n.</i> 肉 |
| 15. like [laɪk] <i>prep.</i> 如 | 19. power [ˈpaʊə] <i>n.</i> 力量, 动力 |
| 16. vegetable [ˈvedʒɪtəbəl] <i>n.</i> 蔬菜 | 20. right [raɪt] <i>adj.</i> 正确的 |

EXERCISES

課文練習:

I. 回答問題:

1. What Subject did the student have at the anatomy lesson?
2. Did the students ask questions at the beginning of the class? When did they ask?
3. What do muscles need when they work?
4. What colour does oxygen have?
5. What is the windpipe?
6. From where does the oxygen pass to the blood?
7. By what is the oxygen carried to all the muscles of the body?
8. Give some of the names of nourishing food.
9. What can the right kind of exercise do to the muscles?

II. 翻譯:

1. 学习体育的重要性已經被說明得很清楚了。
2. 正确的訓練方法是很必要的。
3. 你是怎样到那里的?
4. 我們既需要理論也需要实践。
5. 請把那本書給我。
6. 球类运动, 象籃球, 足球和乒乓球, 在我国都很普遍。
7. 我喜歡籃球也喜歡田徑。
8. 氧气是由血液帶到肌肉里去的。

五. 用英文內的適當單詞或詞組填空。

1. A man cannot live even for a few minutes without _____.
2. Marxism-Leninism and Chairman Mao's thoughts help us to _____ communist world out-look.
3. A man needs rest _____ work.
4. As soon as he got the ball he _____ it to his team-mate.
5. Exercises _____ running, swimming or ball games are good to our health.
6. We breathe air with our _____ and _____.
7. When we _____ to the stadium, the game had already begun.
8. The ass was _____ away by the stream as he fell down in the water.
9. You can only develop your strength _____ hard training.
10. We _____ call the tube windpipe.
11. The teacher _____ how the oxygen gets to the muscle.
12. The words "strength" and _____ have the same meaning.
13. We have enough _____ to punish the U.S. imperialists if they make war on us.
14. Can you explain the reason why the muscles _____ food and proper exercise.

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第七章 § 4)

I. 把以下句子改為被動句:

- 例: a) Someone has moved the desk to the other corner of the room.

The desk has been moved to the other corner of the room.

b) Someone had moved the desk to the other corner of the room.

The desk had been moved to the other corner of the room.

c) They will have moved it away before you come.

It will have been moved away before you come.

1. Someone has found the ball on the ground.
2. They must have given you the ball.
3. Somebody had told me the news.
4. They have asked us to be there at eight.
5. People will have forgotten it by that time.
6. They have sent many students to study physical culture in our country.
7. I had taken it away before you came back.
8. We shall have finished the work by the end of next week.
9. I have read this three times.
10. They have devoted most of their time to the preparation for the athletic meet.
11. He told me that he had broken that window.
12. They will have worked out the plan before you come.
13. The teacher has explained the text twice.
14. They said they had not seen him for a long time.

LOSSON FORTY-FOUR

A DIALOGUE

(Ma and Wu are watching a basketball game. The game is nearing the end.)

W: Look, the other side's changing to man-to-man defence for the last two minutes.

M: I doubt if that'll stop our fast break. Look, a long pass by Liu. Wang's got it; he's cutting in and Wei's screening him. (Whistle) A beautiful shot! Two points. Hurrah!

W: Our teamwork's excellent. (Whistle) There goes the referee's whistle. It's a foul against Wei by their guard.

M: Let's see how Wei does. (Whistle)

W: A perfect goal! That puts us five points ahead.

M: The other side's making a desperate effort. Their coordination is good too. Look, their centre's pivoting. A hook shot. (Whistle) In it goes! (Gong)

W: And there goes the gong. Hurray! We win! The final score's sixty to fifty-seven.

M: Wasn't that an exciting game?

W: Yes, it was well-played. The sides were evenly matched.

M: Our team's improved a lot during the last few months.

W: But so have other teams. In fact, the standard of play all over the country has improved a lot.

M: Well, now you can see why we're among the best in the world.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. dialogue ['daɪələg] <i>n.</i> 对话</p> <p>2. watch [wɒtʃ] <i>v.</i> 注视</p> <p>3. change [tʃeɪndʒ] <i>v.</i> 改变</p> <p>4. defence [dɪ'fens] <i>n.</i> 防守</p> <p>5. last [lɑːst] <i>adj.</i> 最后</p> <p>6. doubt [daʊt] <i>n.</i> 怀疑</p> <p>7. cut [kʌt] <i>v.</i> 切入(原意: 切削)</p> <p>8. screen [skri:n] <i>v.</i> 掩护</p> <p>9. shoot [ʃu:t] <i>n.</i> 投篮</p> <p>10. point [pɔɪnt] <i>n.</i> 分(原意: 点)</p> <p>11. hurrah [hʌ'reɪ] <i>interr.</i> 欢呼声</p> <p>12. teamwork ['ti:m'wɜ:k] <i>n.</i>
队的配合</p> <p>13. excellent ['eksələnt] <i>adj.</i> 最好的</p> <p>14. foul [faʊl] <i>n.</i> 犯规</p> <p>15. perfect ['pɜːfɪkt] <i>adj.</i>
· 完善的, 熟练的</p> <p>16. goal [gəʊl] <i>n.</i> 进球</p> | <p>17. ahead [ə'hed] <i>adv.</i>
领先(原意: 在前地)</p> <p>18. desperate ['despəɪt] <i>adj.</i> 拼命的</p> <p>19. effort ['efət] <i>n.</i> 努力</p> <p>20. coordination [kəʊ'ɔːdɪ'neɪʃən]
<i>n.</i> 配合</p> <p>21. pivot ['pɪvət] <i>v.</i> 转身</p> <p>22. hook [hʊk] <i>n.</i> 钩手</p> <p>23. goal [gəʊl] <i>n.</i> 进球</p> <p>24. win [wɪn] <i>n.</i> 赢得</p> <p>25. hurrah [hʌ'reɪ] <i>interr.</i> 欢呼声</p> <p>26. final ['faɪnəl] <i>adj.</i> 最后的</p> <p>27. evenly [iː'venlɪ] <i>adv.</i> 平均, 相等</p> <p>28. improve [ɪm'pru:v] <i>v.</i> 改进, 提高</p> <p>29. during ['djʊərɪŋ] <i>prep.</i>
在……期间</p> <p>30. standard ['stændəd] <i>n.</i>
水平, 标准</p> |
|---|--|

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. What game were Ma and Wu watching?
2. The game was nearing the end. How many minutes were there left?
3. Who got the ball passed by Liu? And what did he do then?
4. Did Liu make a beautiful shot?
5. What about our teamwork?
6. Why did the referee blow his whistle?

7. Was the other team making any effort?
8. What was the final score? Which team won the match?
9. Why did you think the match well-played?
10. What did Wu say about the standard of play all over our country?

II. 翻譯:

1. 我從頭到尾看了這一場比賽。
2. 讓我們看看他是怎樣做出這樣好的成績。
3. 這場球打得很好。
4. 我們的英語有很大提高。
5. 我懷疑我們是否能獲勝。
6. 他的朗讀很出色。
7. 事實上，他們已經盡了一切努力阻止我們的進攻。
8. 鈴响了，咱們進教室吧。

III. 用課文內合適單詞或詞組填空:

1. A basketball team can't win without good_____.
2. They have made great_____in defense of their basket.
3. During the last few minutes of the game, they got ten_____more.
4. What was the_____? Who won the match?
5. If you want to improve your play, you have to make more_____.
6. Everything has_____greatly since Liberation.
7. I saw it myself, I don't_____ it.
8. His writing is perfect, but he has to make more effort to_____his reading.

IV. 完成下列句子:

1. I doubt if . . .
2. We doubted if . . .

3. His homework is well . . .
4. The questions were well . . .
5. There goes . . .

語法練習(參考簡明語法第十二章)

I. 說明下列句子所屬的種類并翻譯:

1. Come to my house tomorrow if you have time.
2. Union is strength.
3. "Get up and go to work, you lazy bones," said the greedy landlord.
4. Have you ever felt your muscles?
5. The enemy could do nothing to keep them back.
6. There are plenty of sports facilities and equipments in our institute to meet the needs of coaching and teaching.
7. No one can run faster than he.
8. Please write to me as often as you can.
9. How are you getting on recently?
10. How strong he is!
11. What a fast runner he is!
12. Don't forget to bring your exercise books next time.
13. What did he write in his letter?
14. Study your lessons, Liu.
15. Liu studies his lessons.
16. Listen to the teacher, please.
17. How cold!
18. Who is the student on duty to-day?
19. Is our institute far from the Stadium?
20. You have not written to me for a long time.

LESSON FORTY-FIVE

REVISION EXERCISES

課文复习

I. 写出下列动词或形容词的名词:

- | | | |
|------------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. to change | 6. to know | 11. to think |
| 2. to coordinate | 7. socialist | 12. to defend |
| 3. to improve | 8. productive | 13. to shoot |
| 4. educational | 9. useful | 14. to combine |
| 5. hearty | 10. daily | 15. to labour |

II. 写出下列单词的同义词:

- | | | |
|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. excellent. | 5. score | 8. to reach |
| 2. power | 6. to accept | 9. effort |
| 3. a lot of | 7. aim | 10. frightened |
| 4. to carry | | |

III. 写出下列单词的反义词:

- | | | |
|-----------------|-----------|---------------|
| 1. to return | 5. first | 8. to believe |
| 2. to fall down | 6. heavy | 9. to work |
| 3. few | 7. theory | 10. to give |
| 4. ahead | | |

IV. 写出下列短语或词组的意义:

1. to be pleased with . . .
2. to be struck with . . .
3. in line with . . .
4. to be loaded with . . .
5. to become filled with . . .
6. to be seized with . . .

7. to return home with . . .
8. the cultured people with socialist political out-look.
19. to be combined with . . .
10. to be acquainted with . . .
11. to be devoted to . . .
12. It is only through . . . can . . .
13. to carry out
14. at the same time
15. the right kind of . . .
16. to make effort
17. there goes (comes) . . .
18. to doubt if . . .
19. in fact
20. as well as
21. under the guidance of . . .

V. 翻譯:

1. It is only through the combination of theory and practice can the perfect knowledge be learned by us.
2. It is only under the guidance of correct theory can we find out correct method in our study and work.
3. Great effort has been made to carry out the Party's educational policy all over the country.
4. Proper exercise and food are evenly important in keeping the muscles in good condition and making them strong.
5. During the past few months the students have improved a lot in their reading as well as in writing.
6. In fact, nobody had doubted that we might win the match during the first half, we had fifteen points. But as soon as the next half began, the other team

adopted a man-to-man defence and the players of our team could do nothing to stop their fast break. The scores drew nearer and nearer. Both teams were making desperate effort to win the match, a hot contest was going on between the two teams. But as our team seemed to stick to the old method and was rather tired, we at last lost the game with the score of 63 to 68.

語法复习

I. 写出下列不规则动词四种形式:

- | | | |
|--------------|------------------|-------------|
| 1. to stick | 4. to tell | 7. to win |
| 2. to fall | 5. to find | 8. to teach |
| 3. to become | 6. to understand | 9. to lie. |

II. 写出动词 to find 的九个时态(主动):

| | 一般时 | 进行时 | 完成时 |
|----|-----|-----|-----|
| 现在 | | | |
| 过去 | | | |
| 将来 | | | |

III. 写出动词 to find 的八个时态(被动):

| | 一般时 | 进行时 | 完成时 |
|----|-----|-----|-----|
| 现在 | | | |
| 过去 | | | |
| 将来 | | | |

IV. 根据下列各句的原来时态把它们改为被动语态句子:

1. They have accepted the idea.
2. The teacher will explain it in the next class.
3. When I returned home, mother had already prepared my supper.
4. They make it in China.
5. We shall have learned hundreds of new words by the end of the year.
6. The students devoted most of their time to the preparation of the final examination.
7. They were making desperate effort to stop our fast break.
8. We must adopt this useful experience.
9. Have you found your pen?
10. He said he had done his homework the day before yesterday.

LESSON FORTY-SIX

LEAPING FORWARD TO SOCIALISM AND COMMUNISM

"To go all out, to aim high and to get greater, quicker, better and more economical results to build socialism" is the Party's General Line. Under the guidance of it, the Chinese people are taking a great leap forward. Open the pages of People's Daily any day and you will find reports of new victories on all fronts of production.

As Chairman Mao says, the Chinese people are brave, industrious and peace-loving. Everyone of us takes an active

part in the great socialist construction. Days and nights, millions of workers and peasants are working at their posts. They have one and the same purpose to bring about a better life.

A bright future shines before our eyes. Great changes are taking place in our lives. We are building our country into a great socialist country with modern industry, modern agriculture, modern science and culture.

The Communist Party and Chairman Mao are leading us in building socialism and communism. Let's forever follow the Party and Chairman Mao to serve the people wholeheartedly!

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. economical [i'kɒnəmɪkəl] <i>adj.</i>
节约的, 省的 | 12. construction [kən'strʌkʃən] <i>n.</i>
建设 |
| 2. result [ri'zʌlt] <i>n.</i> 结果, 效果 | 13. million ['mɪljən] <i>n.</i> 百万 |
| 3. General Line [dʒenərə'lain]
总路线 | 14. post [pəʊst] <i>n.</i> 岗位 |
| 4. guidance ['gaɪdəns] <i>n.</i> 引导 | 15. future ['fju:tʃə] <i>n.</i> 未来 |
| 5. People's Daily ['pi:plz'deɪli]
人民日报 | 16. shine [ʃaɪn] <i>v.</i> 照耀 |
| 6. report [ri'pɔ:t] <i>n.</i> 报告, 报导 | 17. change [tʃeɪndʒ] <i>n.</i> 变化, 改变 |
| 7. victory ['vɪktəri] <i>n.</i> 胜利 | 18. modern ['mɒdən] <i>adj.</i> 现代的 |
| 8. front [frʌnt] <i>n.</i> 战线, 前线 | 19. industry ['ɪndəstri] <i>n.</i> 工业 |
| 9. brave [breɪv] <i>adj.</i> 勇敢的 | 20. agriculture [ægrɪkʌltʃə] <i>n.</i> 农业 |
| 10. industrious [ɪn'dʌstriəs] <i>adj.</i>
勤劳的 | 21. science [saɪns] <i>n.</i> 科学 |
| 11. active [æktɪv] <i>adj.</i> 积极的 | 22. forever [fə'revə] <i>adv.</i> 永远 |
| | 23. follow ['fɒləʊ] <i>v.</i> 跟随 |
| | 24. wholeheartedly ['həʊl'hɑ:tɪdli]
<i>adv.</i> 全心全意地 |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. What is the Party's General Line?
2. What do the Chinese people do under the guidance of the general line?
3. What can you find in the People's Daily every day?
4. How is everyone in the great socialist construction?
5. For what purpose are millions of workers and peasants working at their posts days and nights?
6. What kind of country are we going to build?
7. Who is leading us in building socialism and communism?

II. 翻譯:

1. 建設社会主义是我們共同的目的。
2. 他們都積極參加了這項工作。
3. 他在那場比賽中非常活躍。
4. 全心全意為人民服務是每個人的職責。
5. 在黨的教育方針的指導下，我們在教育戰線上取得了偉大勝利。
6. 每個運動員都應該努力鍛煉，創造更好的身體條件。
7. 很好地為人民服務不是一件容易的事。
8. 他在班里很活躍。
9. 你應該做出更好的成績來。
10. 他做了一次關於大躍進的報告。

III. 用課文內適當的單詞或詞組填空:

1. The sun——brightly in summer days.
2. Everyone is working hard to—— ——new victories in our socialist construction.

3. Have there been any——since I left our home-town?
4. Kao Yu-pao——the landlord crowing like a cock in the courtyard.
5. Everybody is taking an——part in the task.
6. This room faces south, it is——here.
7. Most of the students of our institute will become teachers in the——.
8. The——of our institute is to train teachers and coaches.
9. We have built a large number of new factories, and the——has been greatly increased.
10. Our Party and Chairman Mao are leading us from one——to another——in our socialist construction.

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第七章§5)

I. 下列句子中的不定式及其短語都具有名詞性質，找出它們，并說明其作用：

1. To serve the people is the greatest happiness of a man.
2. To do things well means to live well.
3. We must learn to use English in our study and work.
4. He hoped to come again.
5. One important thing for all of us is to forever follow the Party and Chairman Mao.
6. It is not so easy to win the game.
7. Our common purpose is to bring about a better life.
8. The teacher did not ask him to answer the question.
9. I mean to leave here at once.
10. Try to run as fast as you can.
11. The athletic meet is to take place at the end of this week.

12. I like to talk with him.

II. 將下列句子改為帶有先行詞“it”結構的句子:

例: To make a better result was possible for him.

It was possible for him to make a better result.

1. To study well is our duty.

2. To help with each other is a good idea.

3. To jump over 2 metres is quite possible for him.

4. To go there on foot will make you very tired.

5. To read the text aloud is very important in learning English.

6. To do the correct start in a sprint needs a lot of practice.

7. To improve your English needs hard studying.

LESSON FORTY-SEVEN

A GAME OF FOOTBALL

One Saturday afternoon Liu-yuan was playing football for his school against another. Liu-yuan was the youngest player on his side, but he could shoot hard and straight and played centre-forward. The centre-half on the other side kept near him all the time and never gave him a chance to shoot. There were one or two corner kicks, but each time, although the ball came in front of the goal, somebody headed it away before Liu-yuan could get near it.

At half-time the score was two goals to nothing against the home side.

“Your men ought to keep the ball low,” the coach said to Liu-yuan.

"We shall do better next half," Liu-yuan answered.

The referee blew the whistle, and the game began again. Before long Liu-yuan got the ball passed from the outside-right, he carried it behind the full-backs, and kicked it into the corner of the net. Not long after this, one of the visiting side touched the ball with his hand near his own goal, and the inside-left of the home-side, taking the penalty-kick, shot a second goal. Two all.

From this time until the end of the match neither side could score, though the goal-keepers had plenty of work to do.

The game ended in a draw.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. side [said] <i>n.</i> 边 | 13. full-back ['ful'bæk] <i>n.</i> 后卫 |
| 2. straight [streit] <i>adv.</i> 直 | 14. net [net] <i>n.</i> 網 |
| 3. centre-forward ['sentə 'fɔ:wəd]
<i>n.</i> 中锋 | 15. visiting side ['viziŋ'said] <i>n.</i>
客队 |
| 4. centre-half ['sentə'hɑ:lf] <i>n.</i> 中卫 | 16. touch [tʌtʃ] <i>v.</i> 接触 |
| 5. kick [kik] <i>n.</i> 踢 | 17. inside-left ['insaid'left] <i>n.</i>
左内鋒 |
| 6. head [hed] <i>v.</i> 用头顶球 | 18. until [ˈʌntɪl] <i>conj.</i> 直到 |
| 7. although [ə:l'dəʊ] <i>conj.</i> 虽然 | 19. penalty ['penlti] <i>n.</i> 罰 |
| 8. nothing ['nʌθɪŋ] <i>n.</i> 沒有东西 | 20. neither ['neɪðə] <i>pron.</i> 双方都不 |
| 9. low [lou] <i>adj.</i> 低的 | 21. though [ðəʊ] <i>conj.</i> 虽然 |
| 10. home side ['həʊm'said] <i>n.</i> 主队 | 22. goal-keeper ['gəʊl'ki:pə] <i>n.</i>
守門員 |
| 11. outside-right ['aʊtsaid'reɪt] <i>n.</i>
右边鋒 | 23. draw [drə:] <i>n.</i> 拉, 平局 |
| 12. behind [bi'haind] <i>prep.</i>
在...后面 | |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. Who was Liu-yuan?
2. Which side was Liu-yuan playing football for, the home side or the visiting side?
3. Who kept near Liu all the time? Did he give Liu any chance to shoot?
4. What position did Liu play?
5. Why could Liu not get near the ball when there were corner kicks?
6. What was the score at half time?
7. What did the coach say during half-time rest?
8. Who shot the first goal in the second half? How did he shoot?
9. Who shot the second goal for the home side? How did he get that chance to shoot?
10. Did they score any more goals? How did the game end?

II. 翻譯:

1. 客队以65对78的比分被打敗了。
2. 他們將代表我院同客队比賽。
3. 我得到一个訪問古巴(Cuba)的機會。
4. 每一次,他都在課前准备好他的功課。
5. 雖然他們敗了,但他們已尽了最大的努力。
6. 在最后的几秒鐘,他踢进了另一个球,比賽以3比2結束。
7. 当你在踢足球时,不要用手触球,你可以用头顶它。

III. 用課文內适当單詞或詞組填空:

1. The street is long and——, you can get there without any turning.
2. When taking the corner kick, Liu made it straightly into the——with the help of the wind.
3. Liu was running at full speed to receive the ball——from the outside-right.
4. Before long, the referee——the whistle as one of the home-side touched the ball with his hand.
5. They could hardly——a goal, because the visiting team had a very strong defence line.
6. You——to keep near him and never let him shoot.
7. The game——in two to nothing——the visiting team.
8. Although he shot——and——, the goal-keeper caught the ball all the same.

IV. 完成下列句子:

1. I had a chance to . . .
2. This is a good chance to . . .
3. He has plenty of time to . . .
4. I have no time to . . .
5. He helped to . . .
6. He wanted me to . . .

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第七章 § 5)

下列句子中的不定式都具有形容詞或副詞的性質，找出它們并說明其作用:

1. I had no time to read the book last week.
2. I am glad to see you here.
3. He always uses his spare time to read new words.
4. The students are trained to be athletes, coaches and teachers.

5. He did it with the purpose to improve his reading.
6. Have you any more questions to ask?
7. We want the students to do their homework themselves.
8. We expect him to come early next morning.
9. The landlord forced his farmhands to work hard and long.
10. The ass lay down in the water to get his burden lighter, but he could never get up again.
11. To break up the other team's defence, they attacked from the left side.
12. He has been training hard to get such excellent result.

LESSON FORTY-EIGHT

AN ATHLETIC MEET

It was a warm, sunny day, and everybody was in good spirits. The sports field looked very beautiful. Coloured silk flags were waving in the breeze. There was a big crowd. At ten the athletic meet began.

First the athletes paraded round the track. People clapped and cheered. After the parade the President made a speech. He encouraged us to study hard and train vigorously. Then the events began.

Athletic events principally include running, jumping and throwing events. First came the short distance races. They were very exciting. A student from the sports department

broke the school record for the 100-metre race. He ran it in 10.8 seconds.

The most exciting event in the whole meet was the 8,000-metre race. One of the runners was my room-mate. I watched him very closely right from the beginning. At first he fell behind and I was very worried. "Hurry up! Hurry up!" I shouted. But just when there were only about one hundred and fifty metres to go, he suddenly began picking up speed. And gradually, one by one he passed the others. He finished first! I cheered so much that I almost lost my voice.

Different events followed one another quickly. I noticed that almost half the athletes were girls. They took part in all sorts of things, such as broad jump, discus throw, shot put, javelin throw and so on.

At the end of the meet, the winners were asked to go up to the platform to receive their prizes.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. sunny ['sʌni] <i>adj.</i> 有阳光的 | 12. clap [klæp] <i>v.</i> 鼓掌 |
| 2. spirit ['sprɪt] <i>n.</i> 精神 | 13. include [ɪn'klu:d] <i>v.</i> 包括 |
| 3. coloured ['kɒləd] <i>adj.</i> 彩色的 | 14. throw [θrou] <i>v.</i> &n. 投擲 |
| 4. silk [sɪlk] <i>adj.</i> 綢的 | 15. distance ['dɪstəns] <i>n.</i> 距离 |
| 5. flag [flæg] <i>n.</i> 旗 | 16. race [reɪs] <i>n.</i> 賽跑 |
| 6. wave [weɪv] <i>v.</i> 飄 | 17. department [dɪ'pɑ:tmənt] <i>n.</i>
部, 部門, 系 |
| 7. breeze [brɪ:z] <i>n.</i> 微風 | 18. record ['rekɔ:d] <i>n.</i> 紀錄 |
| 8. president ['prezɪdnt] <i>n.</i> 主席 | 19. metre ['mi:tə] <i>n.</i> 米 |
| 9. speech [spi:tʃ] <i>n.</i> 演講 | 20. room-mate ['ru:m'meɪt] <i>n.</i>
住同一房間的人 |
| 10. encourage [ɪn'kærɪdʒ] <i>v.</i> 鼓勵 | 21. closely [kloʊzli] <i>adv.</i> 密切地 |
| 11. principally ['prɪnsəpəli] <i>adv.</i>
主要地 | |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 22. worry [ˈwʌri] <i>v.</i> 忧心 | 29. broad jump [ˈbrɔ:d ˈdʒʌmp] 跳远 |
| 23. pick [pɪk] <i>v.</i> 拾起
pick up speed 加快速度 | 30. discus throw [ˈdɪskəs ˈθroʊ] 掷铁饼 |
| 24. gradually [ˈgrædʒʊəli] <i>adv.</i> 逐渐地 | 31. shot put [ˈʃɒt ˈpʊt] 推铅球 |
| 25. lose [luːz] <i>v.</i> 失掉 | 32. javelin throw [ˈdʒævəlɪn θroʊ] 掷标枪 |
| 26. different [dɪˈfrənt] <i>adj.</i> 不同的 | 33. platform [ˈplætfɔ:m] <i>n.</i> 台, 讲台 |
| 27. athlete [ˈæθli:t] <i>n.</i> 运动员 | 34. prize [praɪz] <i>n.</i> 奖品 |
| 28. sort [sɔ:t] <i>n.</i> 种类 | |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. When did the athletic meet take place?
2. How did the sports ground look? How was everybody?
3. What did the president say to the athletes at the beginning of the meet?
4. What do the athletic events include?
5. What event came first? Who won it?
6. What was the most exciting event in the meet?
7. Who finished first? How did he run?
9. What event did the girls take part in the meet?
8. What did you notice in the meet?
10. Did the winners receive their prizes at the end of the meet?

II. 翻譯:

1. 一开始他就用全速往前跑。
2. 他打破了400米跑的学校纪录。
3. 他們在用力作准备活动。
4. 他落后了, 但他突然加快速度, 终于跑了第一。
5. 其他运动员紧紧地跟着他。

6. 正当球来到球门前时，守门员跳了起来把它抓住了。
7. 别忙，还有一个钟头。
8. 我喜欢参加各项运动。

III. 用课文内适当单词或词组填空:

1. We are going to have a football match against Class B. Will you go and _____ the game?
2. Exciting scene followed _____ during the meet.
3. At first, we were ten points behind, but _____ one point after another, we caught them up.
4. Running events _____ 100 m. 200 m. 400 m. and _____
5. The athletic events _____ running, jumping and throwing are very important to other sports.
6. Near the end of the race, he became very tired and gradually was _____ by other runners.
7. They had lost the game, we _____ them doing better next time
8. I have _____ my pen. Can you help me find it out?

IV. 完成下列句子:

1. We began . . .
2. They started . . .
3. He stopped . . .
4. We cheered and shouted just when . . .
5. I went out just when . . .

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第七章 § 6)

I. 依例将下列括号中的动词改为动名词, 说明其作用:

例: I like (swim).

. I like swimming.

1. Don't start (write) until I tell you.

2. I began (learn) English when I was in the middle school.
3. The referee blew the whistle and the players stopped (play).
4. (Read) books is a pleasure.
5. A student's duty is (study).
6. I remember his (tell) me the story.
7. The teacher don't like the students (be) late.
8. (Be) "red and expert" has been a common (say) in our daily life.
9. (Do) exercise every day makes the muscles strong.
10. He never forgets (prepare) his lessons before the class.

II. 依例将下列句子改写为带先行词 "it" 的句子:

例: Going there is no use.

It is no use going there.

1. Reading the text aloud is helpful for the students.
2. Making warming-up exercises is necessary for athletes.
3. Helping with each other is a good idea.
4. Passing with good judgement and accuracy is absolutely essential in basketball.

LESSON FORTY-NINE

PASSING IN BASKETBALL

All players should learn to catch and pass the ball with either or both hands in any direction at any time. Passing the ball with good accuracy and good judgement is absolutely

essential to have an effective offense. Shots at the basket only come after good passing. In passing, the passer must have a mental picture of teammates and opponents and passes are normally made at chest height. Accuracy in passing is the first essential which can be followed up by development in speed and cleverness.

IMPROVING YOUR GAMES

If you would like to improve your skill or endurance in one of your favorite games or sports, try practicing some of the difficult movements of the game for ten to twenty minutes each day. You may want to improve your serve in volleyball, your shooting in basketball, your wind in running, or your stroke in swimming. Be sure that you know the points of good form in the movements you are going to practise every day. Do you notice improvement at the end of a week? After two or three weeks? Because you form habits of muscular movement, it becomes easier for you to make the correct movement again every time that you do it in the right way.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. either ['aiðə] <i>pron.</i> 两者之一 | 8. effective [i'fektiv] <i>adj.</i> 有效的 |
| 2. both [bəʊθ] <i>pron.</i> 两者 | 9. offense [ə'fens] <i>n.</i> 进攻 |
| 3. direction [di'rekʃən] <i>n.</i> 方向 | 10. mental ['mentl] <i>adj.</i> 心理上的 |
| 4. accuracy [ækjʊrəsi] <i>n.</i> 准确 | 11. team-mate ['ti:m'meit] <i>n.</i>
同队队员 |
| 5. judgement ['dʒʌdʒmənt] <i>n.</i> 判断 | 12. normally ['nɔ:məli] <i>adv.</i> 正常地,
普通地 |
| 6. absolutely ['æbsəlu:tli] <i>adv.</i>
绝对地 | |
| 7. essential [i'senʃəl] <i>adj.</i> 不可少的 | |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 13. opponent [ə'pəʊnənt] <i>n.</i> 对手 | 15. height [haɪt] <i>n.</i> 高度, 顶点 |
| 14. development [dɪ'veləpmənt] <i>n.</i> 发展 | 16. cleverness ['klevənɪs] <i>n.</i> 敏捷 |
| * | * |
| 17. improve [ɪm'pru:v] <i>v.</i> 改进
improvement <i>n.</i> 改进 | 24. serve [sɜ:v] <i>n.</i> 发球 |
| 18. skill [skɪl] <i>n.</i> 技巧 | 25. wind [wɪnd] <i>n.</i> 气息 |
| 19. endurance [ɪn'dʒʊərəns] <i>n.</i> 耐力 | 26. stroke [strəʊk] <i>n.</i> 划水 |
| 20. favorite ['feɪvərɪt] <i>adj.</i> 所喜爱的 | 27. sure [ʃʊə] <i>adj.</i> 确信的, 一定的 |
| 21. practice ['præktɪs] <i>n.</i> 练习 | 28. form [fɔ:m] <i>n.</i> 姿势 <i>v.</i> 形成 |
| 22. difficult ['dɪfɪkəlt] <i>adj.</i> 困难的 | 29. habit ['hæbɪt] <i>n.</i> 习惯 |
| 23. movement [mu:vmənt] <i>n.</i> 动作 | 30. muscular ['mʌskjələ] <i>adj.</i> 肌肉的 |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. What should the basketball players learn?
2. What is absolutely essential to have an effective offense?
3. Can you shoot at the basket if you don't have good passing? why?
4. What must the passer have in passing?
5. At what height are the passes normally made?
6. What are you going to try if you want to improve your skill or endurance in one of your favourite games or sports?
7. What should you know in the movements you are going to practise every day?
8. Do you notice improvement after several weeks' practice? why?

9. Can you make the correct movement if you do it in the right way?

II. 翻譯:

1. 好的速度对于跑的项目是很重要的。
2. 他們沒有有效的防守来阻止我們的快速突破。
3. 他們的投籃技术很出色。
4. 你可以用鋼筆或鉛筆写。
5. 鉛球是我最喜爱的运动。
6. 好的技巧只能从努力的学习中得到。(好的技巧只能来自努力的学习)。
7. 良好的判断力和准确性来自努力的訓練。
8. 試試看每天練習朗讀, 几个星期之后, 你就会注意到你的英語的进步。
9. 耐力在所有田径項目中都是絕對需要的。
10. 我記得这个报告的要点。

III. 用課文內适当的單詞或詞組填空:

1. He has been studying hard, He has made great—— in his English.
2. —— shooting every day so you can make shots with good accuracy.
3. If you should like to have good form in your movements, you should practise them in the —— way.
4. The noun of the verb "to develop" is ——.
5. Good endurance can be —— by hard training.
6. Carry it with your —— hands, it is so heavy.
7. We train three hours a day ——
8. Table tennis is my —— game.
9. You can write it —— with a pen or a pencil.

IV. 完成下列句子:

1. Be sure that . . .

2. Be sure to
3. either . . . or
4. Both

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第七章 § 6)

I. 找出下列句子中帶前置詞的動名詞短語, 說明其作用:

1. Sufficient practice is the best way in learning English.
2. You can't make good results without training hard and vigorously.
3. We have the same purpose of bringing a better life.
4. Before doing your homework you should make the questions clear.
5. They wasted a lot of time in talking.
6. Everything has been ready for our starting early.
7. They reached the place after crossing the rushing stream.
8. After doing their homework carefully, the students understood the text much better.
9. Each student should make a plan for carrying out the task.
10. I don't have much experience in playing basketball.
11. On arriving at the Stadium, I was surprised to see that it was full of people though there was still an hour to go.
12. He liked to stick to the old experience in doing things.

LESSON FIFTY

REVISION EXERCISES

課文復習:

I. 寫出下列形容詞或動詞的名詞:

- | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. clever | 5. difficult | 9. to aim |
| 2. to judge | 6. to develop | 10. to end |
| 3. accurate | 7. to encourage | 11. to improve |
| 4. to shoot | 8. to speak | 12. muscular |

II. 写出下列短語或詞組的意义, 利用有 * 記号者造句:

1. under the guidance of
2. to take an active part in
- *3. to bring about
4. to take place,
5. to build . . . into
- *6. to play for . . . against
7. all the time,
- *8. in front of
9. before long,
10. taking the penalty kick,
11. in good spirits,
12. to make a speech
13. to break the record for
- *14. right from the beginning,
15. to fall behind,
16. picking up speed,
17. one by one,
18. to follow one another,
19. all sorts of things,
20. such as and so on,
- *21. either . . . or

III. 翻譯:

1. The visiting team kept making offence from their outside-right, but their shootings were not hard and low enough. Every time the ball came in front of

the goal, it was caught by our goal-keeper before it went into the net.

2. The other team tried to break up our defence line by using long passes.
3. Speed, endurance, strength and cleverness are absolutely essential in modern athletics as well as in other sports and games.
4. Sprint events are normally run on the track.
5. It is only through hard and long practising can you form habits of muscular movements.
6. It is not easy for you to have a good form in your movements if you do not do it in the right way.
7. Football is my favourite game. I often go to watch football matches on Sunday. Sometimes I even like playing it for my class against another.
8. Correct movements can be followed up only by practising in the right way and vigorous trainings.
9. Be sure that you don't touch the ball with your hand when you play football. It is against the rule.
10. In running races, good form is just as essential as the correct start.
11. Do you notice the improvements you have made during the last few weeks in your English?
12. In playing football, you can either kick the ball with your foot or head it with your head, but be sure that you don't touch it with your hand.
13. Before doing your homework, you should know the points of the questions.
14. I could remember all points of the report.
15. Both methods will be effective for improving your

skill and endurance if you know their points and use them in the right way and at proper time.

語法复习:

I. 找出下列句子中的不定式或动名词及其短语, 說明其作用:

1. You may want to improve your serve in volleyball and your shooting in basketball.
2. It is easier for you to remember English words that you read them every day.
3. I like watching basketball games than football games.
4. They shouted to lose their voice.
5. The only task for you is to keep near the opposing centre-forward all through the match.
6. To make the correct movements, you should know their points first.
7. Always remember to form good habits in your daily life.
8. We encouraged him to pick up speed.
9. It is a good idea for us starting early in the morning.
10. Most of my time has been devoted to improving the skill in passing.
11. It is against the rules making fouls against your opponents.
12. It is essential to have good passes both in football and in basketball.

II. 根据要求翻譯下列句子:

1. 教練員教我游泳。(动名詞)
2. 在練習一种动作之前, 你必須知道它的要点。(动名詞)
3. 我們給他一个嘗試的机会。(不定式)
4. 我幫他做練習。(不定式)
5. 他昨天来看我。(不定式)

6. 做这件事是不对的。(动名词)

LESSON FIFTY-ONE

RELAY RACE

A relay race is an event in which two or more men run a specified distance, one relieving the other at some designated point within a fixed zone.

The large number of relay carnivals held each year is an indication of the general favor that this event has met with all over the world. This popularity is deserved since a relay race offers spirited team competition and provides places for a large number of athletes. The grouping of distances run also provides competition for almost every type of athlete from the sprinter to the distance runner.

Under former rules, before a relief runner could begin his sector of a relay, he was required to touch the hand of the oncoming contestant in a zone of transfer. However, this method presented the difficulty of judging whether there was an actual hand-to-hand contact. In order to overcome this objection, the baton was introduced, and now the oncoming man must hand the baton to the relief runner. Baton transfer furnishes a hazard to the relay race, thus making it an exciting and spectacular event. In order to reduce baton passing hazards to a minimum, rather definite techniques of transfer have been worked out.

The relay races which appear in Olympic Games are as follows:

400 meters (4 × 100)

1600 meters (4 × 400)

3200 meters (4 × 800)

Medley, 1000 meters (100, 200, 300, and 400)

WORDS TO THE TEXT

1. relay [ri'lei] *n.* 接力
2. specify ['spesifai] *v.* 列举, 指明
specified *adj.* 指定的
3. relieve [ri'li:v] *v.* 接班, 解除
4. designate ['deizneit] *v.* 指定,
称为 designated *adj.* 指定的
5. within [wið'in] *prep.* 在...内
6. fix [fiks] *v.* 固定 fixed *adj.*
固定的
7. zone [zoun] *n.* 区域
8. carnival [kɑ:nivəl] *n.*
狂欢节, 运动竞赛
9. indication [indi'keifən] *n.*
说明, 表示
10. favor ['feivə] *n.* 爱好, 偏爱
11. popularity [pɒpjʊ'lærɪti] *n.*
普及, 流行
12. deserve [di'sə:v] *v.* 应得
13. offer ['ɒfə] *v.* 提出, 呈现, 给
14. provide [prə'vaɪd] *v.* 提供, 准备
15. type [taɪp] *n.* 类型, 式样
16. sprinter ['sprɪntə] *n.* 短跑运动员
17. former ['fɔ:mə] *adj.* 以前的
18. rule [ru:l] *n.* 规则
19. relief [ri'li:f] *n.* 接班, 减轻
20. sector ['sektə] *n.* 扇形区, 接力
跑的运动员应跑的一段距离
21. require [ri'kwaɪə] *v.* 需要
22. oncoming ['ɒŋkʌmɪŋ] *adj.*
接近的
23. contestant [kən'testənt] *n.*
竞赛者
24. transfer ['trænsfə:] *n.* 交接
25. however [haʊ'evə] *adv.* 然而
26. method ['meθəd] *n.* 方法
27. present [pri'zent] *v.* 提出
28. difficulty ['dɪfɪkəlti] *n.* 困难
29. judge [dʒʌdʒ] *v.* 判断
30. whether ['hweðə] *conj.* 是否
31. actual ['æktʃʊəl] *adj.* 实际的
32. contact ['kɒntækt] *n.* 接触
33. order ['ɔ:də] *n.* 次序, 命令
in order to... 为了.....
34. overcome [ouvə'kʌm] *v.* 克服
35. objection [ɒb'dʒɛkʃən] *n.* 妨碍
36. baton ['bætn] *n.* 接力棒
37. introduce [ɪntrə'dju:s] *v.* 采用
38. furnish ['fə:nɪʃ] *v.* 供给
39. hazard ['hæzəd] *n.* 危险, 阻碍
40. spectacular [spek'tækjələ] *adj.*
壮观的
41. reduce [ri'dju:s] *v.* 减少
42. minimum ['mɪnɪmən] *n.*
最低限度

43. rather ['rɑ:ðə] *adv.* 相当地
44. definite ['defɪnɪt] *adj.*
肯定的, 明确的
45. technique [tek'nɪk] *n.* 技术
46. appear [ə'piə] *v.* 出現
47. Olympic [ə'lɪmpɪk] *adj.*
奥林匹克
Olympic games 奥林匹克运动会
48. medley ['medlɪ] *n.* 混合

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. What is a relay race?
2. What is the indication of the general favor for relay race?
3. Why is the popularity of relay race deserved?
4. What was a relief runner required to do before he could begin his sector of a relay under former rules?
5. What is the difficulty in this old method?
6. What was introduced in order to overcome this objection?
7. How do you use the baton in a relay race?
8. What is the advantage of the baton transfer?
9. Why must we work out definite techniques of baton transfer?
10. How many relay races are there which appear in the Olympic Games? Name them, please.

II. 翻譯:

1. 接力跑是队的比賽, 它要求很好的配合。
2. 自从接力棒被采用以来, 接力跑就成为一項非常紧张和好看的項目。
3. 短跑運動員和长跑運動員都可以参加接力跑比賽。
4. 每一个参加接力跑的運動員都要跑一段固定的距离。

5. 为了克服这些困难的动作, 新的訓練方法被采用了。

6. 在接力跑中, 換棒技术很重要。

7. 党和政府为我提供很好的学习环境。

III. 用课文内适当的单詞或詞組填空:

1. The —— runner takes the baton from the oncoming runner and begins his —— of a relay.

2. A referee —— judges the game to see whether anyone make fouls.

3. In basketball the players should make as little —— with their opponents as possible.

4. The popularity of sports and games is the —— of the development of physical culture and sports in our country.

5. Socialist society —— chance for everybody to work and study.

6. Comrade Wang did not —— this morning. No one knew where he was.

7. The Party and the people —— us to be students of "red and expert."

8. —— —— ——, volleyball is played by eighteen players, nine on each side.

IV. 完成下列句子:

1. I have not decided whether . . .

2. Can you tell me whether . . .

3. Our institute is a place in which . . .

4. Baton transfer is a technique in which . . .

語法練習 (参考簡明語法第七章§7)

I. 下列括号内动詞改为现在分詞后在句子里当定語用, 找出它所修飾的名詞, 并翻譯:

1. The man (stand) there is a famous (著名的) sprin-

ter.

2. This dictionary (help) me very much was given by my brother.
3. The Workers' Stadium (have) 15,000 seats (座位) is the largest one in our country.
4. A student (make) good use of his time often studies well.
5. The party (lead) us in building socialism is the Great Chinese Communist Party.
6. This is a story (tell) us how to use the past experience.
7. That is a good reason (make) the people agree with us.
8. The (increase) interest of our people for sports is an indication of the development of physical culture and sports in our country.
9. The (oncome) man must hand the baton to the relief runner.
10. He ran with a (rush) speed.

II. 下列括号内的动词改为过去分词后在句子里当定语用，找出它所修饰的名词，并翻译：

1. This is the dictionary (give) by my brother.
2. This is the story (tell) by the old man.
3. Please let me see your homework (correct) by the teacher.
4. Let us stick to the plan (agree) to by us all in the last meeting.
5. The teacher likes the homework (write) carefully and clearly.
6. He did not take part in the athletic meet (hold) last week.
7. Liu Yuan got the ball (pass) from the outside-right.

8. He has done the (require) movements correctly.
9. We have adopted the (improve) methods in our training.
10. He is an (experience) coach.

LESSON FIFTY-TWO

TING-PO CATCHES A GHOST

Once upon a time, there lived in Nanyang a young man whose name was Ting-po. On his way to a fair one night, he came across a ghost.

"What are you?" he asked. "A ghost," it replied. "And you?" "A ghost, too," Ting-po tried to take it in. "Where are you off to?" inquired the other. "To the fair in Nanyang." "Good, I'm going there myself." So they walked on together.

Having covered some distance, the ghost suggested, "Let's take turns to carry each other on the back." "Good idea," agreed Ting-po, and, no sooner said than done, he leapt onto the back of the ghost.

Walking on for a while, the ghost groaned, "You aren't a spirit, being so heavy, are you?" "Oh, no wonder," said Ting-po. "I died but recently. That's why."

When Ting-po took his turn, he found his burden as light as a feather. After a while, he asked the ghost, "Being a new ghost, I'm quite ignorant about what we're most afraid of. Will you give me some advice?" "To be spat at by man, I'm sure," answered the other with authority.

Then they came to a stream. The ghost simply skimmed

over without making any noise at all, but Ting-po splashed all his way through the water. "Do you mean to say you're a spirit, splashing all the way like this?" Evidently, it grew somewhat suspicious. "You surely don't expect me, a new and inexperienced ghost, to cross the stream the way you do, do you?" The old hand agreed with self-satisfaction.

As they were drawing near the fair, all of a sudden Ting-po tightened his hold on the ghost he carried on his back. When they arrived at the fair, he threw it down on the ground heavily. It immediately transformed itself into a lamb. Ting-po spat at it, lest it should change its form again. Then he sold it for 1,500 coppers.

This is a story of not being afraid of ghost.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. ghost [goust] <i>n.</i> 鬼 | 13. while [hwait] <i>n.</i> 一会儿 |
| 2. once [wans] <i>adv.</i> 一次
once upon a time 从前 | 14. groan [groun] <i>v.</i> 呻吟, 哼叫 |
| 3. across [ə'krɔs] <i>prep.</i> 横过
come across 碰见 | 15. wonder ['wʌndə] <i>n.</i> 惊奇 |
| 4. fair [feə] <i>n.</i> 集市 | 16. die [dai] <i>v.</i> 死 |
| 5. inquire [in'kwaɪə] <i>v.</i> 询问 | 17. feather ['feðə] <i>n.</i> 羽毛 |
| 6. reply [ri'plai] <i>v.</i> 回答 | 18. quite [kwait] <i>adv.</i> 十分, 非常 |
| 7. take [teik] <i>v.</i> 拿 take in 騙 | 19. ignorant ['ignərənt] <i>adj.</i> 无知的 |
| 8. suggest [sə'dʒest] <i>v.</i> 提議 | 20. afraid [ə'freɪd] <i>adj.</i> 害怕 |
| 8. turn [tɜ:n] <i>n.</i> 輪流, 轉 | 21. advice [əd'vaɪs] <i>n.</i> 忠告, 意見 |
| 9. cover ['kʌvə] <i>v.</i>
掩盖, 走过(或跑过) | 22. authority [ə:'θɔ:riti] <i>n.</i> 权威 |
| 10. agree [ə'gri:] <i>v.</i> 同意 | 23. simply ['sɪmpli] <i>adv.</i> 单纯地 |
| 11. onto ['ɒntu:] <i>prep.</i> = on to 向 | 24. spit [spit] <i>v.</i> 吐, 唾 |
| 12. soon [su:n] <i>adv.</i> 即刻
no sooner...than...就..... | 25. skim [skim] <i>v.</i> 轻快地跃过 |
| | 26. noise ['noɪz] <i>n.</i> 吵闹声 |
| | 27. splash [splæʃ] <i>v.</i> 溅水 |
| | 28. mean [mi:n] <i>v.</i> 意思是 |
| | 29. evidently ['eɪdɪntli] <i>adv.</i> 显然地 |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 30. grow [grəʊ] v. 增长, 生长 | 37. tighten ['taɪtən] v. 拉紧 |
| 31. somewhat ['sʌmwɒt] adv. 有些 | 38. arrive [ə'raɪv] v. 到达 |
| 32. suspicious [sə'sɪpɪəs] adj. 怀疑的 | 39. hold [həʊld] n. 握 |
| 33. inexperienced [ɪnɪk'spiəriənst] adj. 无经验的 | 40. transform [træns'fɔ:m] v. 变化, 变形 |
| 34. surely ['suəli] adv. 确实地, 必定地 | 41. immediately [ɪ'mi:diətli] adv. 即刻地 |
| 35. expect [ɪks'pekt] v. 指望, 期待 | 42. lest [lest] conj. 免得 |
| 36. self-satisfaction ['selfsætɪs'fækʃən] n. 自满 | 43. lamb [læm] n. 小羊 |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. What happened to Ting-po as he was on his way to a fair one night?
2. Was Ting-po afraid of it?
3. What did the ghost suggest after they had covered some distance?
4. Did Ting-po agree to its idea? What did he do then?
5. Why did the ghost groan with Ting-po on his back? How did Ting-po explain it?
6. Had the ghost any weight? How did the ghost cross the stream?
7. Why did the ghost grow suspicious of Ting-po when they were crossing the stream?
8. What did Ting-po say about it?
9. What did Ting-po do when they arrived at the fair?
10. Are there any ghost in the world? What is the meaning of the text?

II. 翻譯:

1. 我正在街上走着的时候，遇見了一个老朋友。
2. 你騙不了我，我已經知道这件事。
3. 他毫不减低速度地跑完了全程。
4. 作为新中国的大学生，我們不害怕任何困难。
5. 那个鬼判断不出定伯是否也是个鬼。
6. 在复习功課时我們常常輪流提問題。
7. 我建議稍为加快一些速度。
8. 很明显，他們开始有些疲倦了。

III. 用課文內适当單詞或詞組填空：

1. The teacher always gives us _____ to read English every morning for a while.
2. I am _____ if you practise the difficult movements for ten or twenty minutes each day, they will _____ easier to you in one or two weeks.
3. Being a _____ runner, he spent almost all his strength at the beginning of the race and _____ tired in the end.
4. The students take _____ to do their duty cleaning the floor, blackboard, desks and so on.
5. Every athlete is to _____ a specified distance in the relay race.
6. After a while, they _____ at a place where they can cross the river.
7. Did you _____ the points of the movements and the form of a correct start?

IV. 完成下列句子：

1. Do you mean to say
2. Do you mean to
3. I am quite ignorat about what
4. I am quite sure about what

5. There live
6. There came
7. There appeared
8. You should review your lessons after the class, lest you
9. I must go immediately, lest I
10. I followed him closely, lest

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第七章 § 7)

I. 依例將下列句子中**黑体字**部分改為現在分詞短語，並翻譯：

例：While I was going along the street, I met an old friend.

Going along the street, I met an old friend.

我沿着街上走的時候，遇見一個老朋友。

1. As he is ill, he can't take part in the match this time.
2. All the farmhands ran out, knocked the landlord down and beat him hard.
3. We believe we may win the match, we are all in good spirits.
4. He smiled and said yes.
5. When he saw us, he shouted for joy.
6. After they had overcome all difficulties, they reached the top of the mountain.
7. Since he was an inexperienced athlete, he was rather excited in his first competition.
8. He often goes to the teacher and asked for advice.
9. He fell behind other runners and grew tired.
10. After they had covered some distance, the ghost suggested taking turns to carry each other on the back.

II. 依例將下列句子中**黑体字**部分改為過去分詞短語，並翻譯：

例：Though they were beaten, they were not in low spirits.

Though beaten, they were not in low spirits.

他們雖然被打敗，但意志並不消沉。

1. The plan has been made out, we must stick to it.
2. After the work had been finished, we went rowing in the Kuming Lake.
3. Don't answer the question until you are asked to.
4. When they were received by Chairman Mao, they could not help cheering and shouting.
5. As soon as they were told the news, they jumped up cheering.
6. They returned home, they were beaten.
7. Since baton transfer was introduced, the relay race has become more exciting and spectacular.
8. As soon as the ghost was thrown down on the ground, it transformed itself into a lamb.

LESSON FIFTY-THREE

CROSSING A RIVER

On the spring holidays, some of our classmates suggested going on an excursion to the mountains. Early in the morning we started out. On our way there we had to cross a mountain river.

When we reached the river, we found it difficult to get across, because the bridge had been destroyed during a storm.

As we could not get to the opposite bank over the bridge, we thought of a plan.

"I suggest swimming across," said Liu, "the river is not deep at all."

"The water must be very cold, for it is a mountain river," came from Wang.

It was decided that Liu, our best swimmer, should be the first to cross the river. So he stepped into the water. The river was not deep at all. He took another step forward, still another, but the stream did not grow any deeper than near the bank. Suddenly he disappeared under the water. All of us gave a loud shout.

A moment later, we could see his head above the water, then he disappeared again.

"He is drowning, we must save him, Chang cried out. Now we could hear Liu shouting for help. Although we were frightened, we knew what to do.

As we were going to the mountains, we had all kinds of ropes along with us. We took a rope and quickly threw him one end of it. But the rope did not reach him because it was too short. We took another one, and this time Liu caught it. Gathering all our strength we began to pull at the rope. Luckily Liu was out of danger at last.

Half an hour later we found a place where we could cross the river.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. excursion [iks'kɜ:ʃən] <i>n.</i>
远足, 游覽 | 8. bank [bæŋk] <i>n.</i> 岸 |
| 2. mountain ['maʊntɪn] <i>n.</i> 山 | 9. plan [plæn] <i>n.</i> 計劃 |
| 3. reach [ri:tʃ] <i>v.</i> 到达 | 10. step [step] <i>v.</i> 行步 |
| 4. bridge [brɪdʒ] <i>n.</i> 桥 | 11. disappear [dɪs'piə] <i>v.</i>
消失, 看不见 |
| 5. destroy [dis'trɔɪ] <i>v.</i> 破坏 | 12. drown [draʊn] <i>v.</i> 淹死 |
| 6. storm [stɔ:m] <i>n.</i> 暴风雨 | 13. save [seɪv] <i>v.</i> 救 |
| 7. opposite [ə'pɒzɪt] <i>adj.</i> 相对的 | 14. frighten ['fraɪtən] <i>v.</i> 恐吓 |

- frightened *adj.* 受惊, 害怕 18. pull [pʊl] *v.* 拉
 15. rope [rəʊp] *n.* 繩 19. luckily [ˈlʌkɪli] *adv.* 幸亏
 16. along [əˈlɒŋ] *adv.* 一齐, 一道 20. danger [ˈdeɪndʒə] *n.* 危险
 17. gather [ˈɡæðə] *v.* 聚集

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題

1. What did some of the classmate suggest for the spring holidays?
2. Why did they find it difficult to cross the river?
3. What plan did they think of?
4. Who was decided to be the first to cross the river? why?
5. Was the water deep and cold?
6. What happened when Liu went farther?
7. What did they do when they hear Liu shouting for help?
8. Why did the first rope not reach Liu? what did they do then?
9. Was Liu out of danger at last?
10. When did they found another place where they could cross the river?

II. 翻譯:

1. 我建議同B班比賽足球。
2. 他們發現做这个动作有困难。
3. 他們害怕起来, 因为李明在水里不見了。
4. 同學們到老师那里去求助。
5. 教練員会告訴我們應該做些什么。
6. 今天, 他第一个来到教室, 还带了很多書。

7. 他向前走了三步，又突然站住。

8. 过了十分鐘，同學們都聚集在操場上。

III. 用課文內適當單詞或詞組填空：

1. The water is very _____ here, you will be drowned if you can't swim.

2. It was easy, it was not difficult _____

3. He must be very _____, he was almost drowned.

4. The stick is not long enough to _____ the opposite side.

5. The little boy has been _____ by a PLA man (解放軍士兵) He is out of _____ now.

IV. 完成下列句子：

1. We came to a place where. . .

2. The stadium is a place where (in which). . .

3. This is the room where (in which). . .

4. I don't know what to. . .

5. Will you tell me what (how) to. . .

6. We could not decide where (when) to. . .

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第七章§7)

I. 依例將下列句子中黑體字部分改為現在分詞短語作為賓語補語，並翻譯：

例：I found him **when he was reading newspaper.**

I found him **reading newspaper.**

我發現他在讀報。

1. I saw him **as he was coming towards me.**

2. I felt my heart, it was **beating hard.**

3. Do you notice **that he has made big progress in his English recently?**

4. The worker started the machine **and it was going.**

5. The teacher encouraged us **that we should do better**

next time.

6. I watched him when he was doing his homework.
7. I remember that you have told me the way to the stadium.
8. We listened to her when she was singing.
9. I can hear that he is calling us.
10. I shall never forget that you have helped me so much.

五. 依例将下列句子中黑体字部分改为过去分詞短語作为宾語补語, 并翻譯:

The teacher wants that the exercise books are written clearly and carefully.

The teacher wants the exercise books written clearly and carefully.

教員要求把練習本写得清楚和仔細。

1. I hope that this method will be known to everybody.
2. I believe that the match will be won by our team.
3. He found that his books were left in the room.
4. The text should be read aloud. The teacher wants that.
5. Do you notice that he is being left behind by other runners?
6. He ought to be punished. We all wish that.
7. I don't like myself to be kept indoors all day long.
8. I hate my things to be taken away without telling me.

LESSON FIFTY-FOUR

REVISION EXERCISES

課文復習

1. 将下列意义相近的單詞或詞組归类:

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. to get to . . . | 21. to offer | 40. specified |
| 2. to follow | 22. to hold | 41. danger |
| 3. to cry out | 23. to change | 42. skill |
| 4. after a while | 24. to come across | 43. contest |
| 5. out of. . . | 25. to walk | 44. to hold |
| 6. a little | 26. to take place | 45. definite |
| 7. to reach | 27. quite | 46. designated |
| 8. to shout | 28. to ask | 47. immediately |
| 9. somewhat | 29. to present | 48. hazard |
| 10. all sorts of. . . | 30. to touch | 49. competition |
| 11. to come after | 31. to be off to. . . | 50. technique |
| 12. to reply | 32. to step into. . . | 51. match |
| 13. to meet | 33. to pull | 52. frightened |
| 14. all kinds of. . . | 34. to inquire | 53. to walk into |
| 15. to arrive at. . . | 35. to furnish | 54. to provide |
| 16. from | 36. at once | 55. all of a sudden |
| 17. a moment later | 37. to draw | 56. afraid |
| 18. to answer | 38. to transform | 57. suddenly |
| 19. rather | 39. to go to. . . | 58. unexpectedly |
| 20. to cover | | |

II. 写出下列詞組或短語的意義，有 * 記号者造句：

1. to meet with . . .
- *2. to come across . . .
3. under the rules of . . .
- *4. in order to . . .
5. no sooner said than done
6. for a while
7. to be quite ignorant about . . .
- *8. to take (his) turn
- *9. to give advice

10. all the way
11. to arrive at . . .
12. to find it difficult to . . .
13. to get to . . .
14. at all
15. to have . . . along with . . .
16. at last
- *17. to provide . . . for . . .

III. 翻譯:

1. Being an experienced runner, he never lost his form in any hot contests.
2. In order to save Comrade Liu, they threw him a long rope to pull him out of the water.
3. It was difficult to judge whether there is an actual hand-to-hand contact between a relief runner and an oncoming runner under former rule.
4. He was quite interested in what had been told me.
5. Having crossed the stream, they came up to a high place where they could see the city in the far distance.
6. Suddenly attacked by the PLA men, the enemies were very frightened and did not know what to do. They were forced to throw away their weapons and to give up their stronghold.
7. Some people have been afraid of ghost all the same, though there is not any ghost at all in the world.
8. They began to think of a plan to cross the river. Comrade Liu suggested swimming across it, but not until it was agreed to by the others he leapt into the water no sooner said than done.
9. They gave us advice to devote more time to the read-

ing of the text.

10. Evidently, too much and hard training with too little rest will not only reduce your wind and endurance but also make you too tired.

語法复习

I. 找出下列句子中的分詞及其短語，說明它們在句中的作用：

1. I like to use things made in China.
2. We have forced the U.S. imperialists getting out of our country.
3. I heard him calling me in the next room.
4. Being an inexperienced athlete, he soon grew tired after having covered the first 200 m. and fell behind other runners.
5. Are you going to watch the football match taking place in the Workers' Stadium?
6. All lessons being prepared, I went outdoors taking a walk.
7. Told by the teacher about the time of the final examination, the students started reviewing their lesson immediately.
8. At half time the people gathered around their coach, hearing his advice and new instruction for the next half.
9. Yesterday I saw some PLA men saving ~~a~~ drowning boy out of the water.
10. The destroyed city has been immediately built up again after the war.

II. 翻譯：

1. 作为一个新中国的学生，我要努力学习。
2. 每一个运动员都要跑一段指定的距离。

3. 我們必須克服出現在我們面前的困難。
4. 咱們休息一會兒，聽听刘同志唱歌。
5. 我們一定要記住毛主席說的話。

LESSON FIFTY-FIVE

A FEW THINGS ABOUT KARL MARX

Karl Marx is a great man both in science and in public life. He combined these two fields very closely. We shall never understand him unless we see him both as a man of science and as a fighter for socialism.

But at my first visit, he appeared before me as a man of learning.

There were more than a thousand books in Marx's library, but that was not enough for his need, and for many years he was known to be a regular reader at the British Museum Reading Room. Marx arranged his books not according to size but according to contents. He said that books were his slaves and had to serve his will.

Marx could read all the leading European languages and could write in three—German, French and English. He said that a foreign language is a weapon in the struggle of life.

He was already fifty years old when he began studying Russian and in six months he was able to read the works of the Russian writers. That he would usually stay in his study and work till two or three the next morning was his habit. As a young man he was known to spend whole night at work.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. public ['pʌblɪk] <i>adj.</i> 公共的 | according to 依据 |
| 2. unless [ən'les] <i>conj.</i> 除非 | 10. content ['kɒntənt] <i>n.</i> 内容 |
| 3. fighter ['faɪtə] <i>n.</i> 战士 | 11. size [saɪz] <i>n.</i> 体积, 大小 |
| 4. library ['laɪbrəri] <i>n.</i> 图书馆 | 12. slave [sleɪv] <i>n.</i> 奴隶 |
| 5. regular ['regjʊlə] <i>adj.</i>
有规则的, 定期的 | 13. leading ['li:dɪŋ] <i>adj.</i> 主要的 |
| 6. British ['brɪtɪʃ] <i>adj.</i>
大不列颠的, 英国的 | 14. European [ˌjuərə'pi:ən] <i>adj.</i>
欧洲的 |
| 7. museum [mju:'ziəm] <i>n.</i> 博物馆 | 15. French [frentʃ] <i>n.</i> 法语 |
| 8. arrange [ə'reɪndʒ] <i>v.</i> 安排 | 16. foreign ['fɔ:riŋ] <i>adj.</i> 外国的 |
| 9. according [ə'kɔ:diŋ] <i>adv.</i> 依据 | 17. work [wɜ:k] <i>n.</i> 著作 |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. Did Karl Marx combine science and public life closely?
2. How do you understand him?
3. Did Marx love books.
4. Did Marx have a lot of books?
5. What did he say about books?
6. What did he say about language?
7. Could Marx read and write in English?
8. How old was Marx when he began studying Russian?
9. Was he able to read the works of Russian writers?
10. What was his habit when he was working?
11. Can you tell us something more about Karl Marx?

II. 翻譯:

1. 除非你再試一試, 否則你永遠不會成功。
2. 除非你加快速度, 否則你不會臨陣一。

3. 除非他讀很多書，否則他不會成為有學問的人。
4. 他以一個裁判員的身份出現在運動場上。
5. 作為一個運動員，你應該勤學苦練。
6. 作為新中國的大學生，我們必須學好外語。
7. 我用了整整一個星期天的上午來做家庭作業。
8. 我們發現要了解他有困難。
9. 我們發現同時學習三種外語有困難。

III. 填充:

1. My brother is _____ a coach _____ an athlete.
2. The students were _____ to cross it without the help of others.
3. _____ our own plan, we are going to take part in the athletic meet.
4. We arrange our work and study _____ our time.

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第十三章§3中的名詞從句)

I. 找出下列句中的名詞從句，說明其用法，並翻譯全句:

That he would stay in his study and work till two or three the next morning was his habit.

名詞從句用作主語

經常在書房里工作到第二天兩三點鐘是他的習慣。

1. That he was both a man of science and a fighter for socialism was known to everyone.
2. That he can read and write in English is the result of his hard study.
3. That the oncoming runner must hand over the baton to the relief runner is the rule of relay race.
4. Marx said that books were his slaves and had to serve his will.
5. The plan is that our team will visit the Soviet Union.

- and play against some strong teams.
6. Who will be our team leader is not yet decided.
 7. Who will play the centre-forward in the match is known to every player.
 8. Who wins the first place in the race will receive a prize from the president.
 9. The question is who will break the national record.
 10. We know who is the best player in their team.
 11. What our teacher told us was to study hard and train vigorously.
 12. What our Party teaches us is to serve the people whole-heartedly.
 13. What he said is true.
 14. I know what they need.
 15. This is what he gave me.

LESSON FIFTY-SIX

IN TRAINING

IN TRAINING—NO SMOKING AND NO DRINKING

Bill noticed that his brother had stooped smoking. He asked him why.

'I've stopped smoking because I'm on a baseball team,' he said, 'the coach said 'no smoking''

"And why did he say 'no smoking'?" asked Bill.

"I think they are good reasons. First, smoking reduces the wind. You know what that means — you can't run so far or so fast without getting out of breath. You need to have good

wind to make a home run. Smoking makes a person puff easily when he runs. Second, smoking sometimes makes people restless and nervous. Third, smoking may hurt the heart.

"The coach also said: 'no drinking'. Drinks with alcohol in them, make less steady. Tests have shown this. Take a pencil and try to put it into a little hole as many times a minute as possible. The steadier your hand is, the faster you can fit the pencil into the hole. You will make a high score. If you have taken even a small amount of an alcoholic drink, your hand will be less steady. You will make a lower score. The coach wants steady players on his baseball team. So he says: 'no drinking'."

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. smoke [smʊk] v. 吸烟 | 10. less [les] adv. 更少地 |
| 2. drink [drɪŋk] v. 喝, 喝酒; n. 飲料 | 11. steady ['stedɪ] adj. 穩的 |
| 3. baseball ['beɪsbɔ:l] n. 棒球 | 12. hole [həʊl] n. 洞 |
| 4. reason ['ri:zən] n. 理由 | 13. show [ʃəʊ] v. 表現 |
| 5. run [rʌn] n. 跑, home run
跑完一圈(棒球) | 14. test [test] n. 測驗 |
| 6. restless ['restlɪs] adj. 不休息的 | 15. possible ['pɒsəbl] adj. 可能的 |
| 7. nervous ['nɜ:vəs] adj.
神經緊張的 | 16. fit [fɪt] v. 使適合 |
| 8. hurt [hɜ:t] v. 傷害 | 17. even ['i:vən] adv. 即使 |
| 9. alcohol ['ælkəhɒl] n. 酒精 | 18. amount [ə'maʊnt] n. 总量 |
| | 19. alcoholic [ælkə'hɒlɪk] adj.
含有酒精的 |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題。

1. Why did Bill's brother stop smoking?
2. Why did the coach say "no smoking"?

3. Did the coach also say "no drinking"? Why?

4. Do you smoke or drink?

II. 先将例句譯成漢語，然后模仿例句結構翻譯漢語句子：

1. 例：You can not run so far or so fast without getting out of breath.

a) 沒有同志們的幫助，你不可能成功 (succeed)。

b) 沒有教練的幫助，他不可能提高技術。

c) 沒有兩三週的努力訓練，我們在这次比賽中就不能獲勝。

2. 例：The steadier your hand is, the faster you can fit the pencil into the hole.

a) 你讀得越多，就知道得越多。

b) 你走得越快，就到得越早。

c) 你學習得越努力，就能得到越好的分數 (Mark)。

3. 例：You need to have good wind to make a home run.

a) 你需要有足夠的力量來擊敗 (defeat) 對手。

b) 你需要有足夠的時間來完成這一工作。

c) 他需要有一個好機會射門。

4. He puts the pencil into a little hole as many times a minute as possible.

a) 他讀得尽可能多。

b) 他跳得尽可能高。

c) 他睡得尽可能好。

5. If he stops smoking, his health will be improved.

a) 如果他停止訓練，他的成績 (result) 就不会提高。

b) 如果他停止喝酒，他就会成为一个好的運動員。

c) 如果他停止加快速度，他就不会第一个跑完。

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第十三章 §3 中的名詞從句)

I. 找出下列名詞從句，說明用法并翻譯全句：

1. It was his habit that he always worked till two or

three next morning.

2. It was decided that he **should be** the first to cross the river.
3. It is of little importance how long I shall stay here.
4. It is still not known to us where he lives now.
5. It is possible that he will become a good footballer.
6. I think he is quite right.
7. Marx said books were his slaves.
8. We all know Comrade Wang is a good coach.
9. Bill noticed his brother had stopped smoking and drinking.
10. We found crossing the river was difficult.

II. 找出下列名詞从句，說明用法，并翻譯全句：

1. The students ask if they will have another homework.
2. What our teacher means in doing this is very clear.
3. The coach also said everyone had to train hard.
4. Whether our team will be able to win is a question.
5. It is very clear that smoking may hurt the heart.
6. Tests have shown that drinks with alcohol in them make a person less steady.
7. My wish is that you will score as many goals as possible in the game.
8. It is an exciting news that one of our students has broke a world record.

LESSON FIFTY-SEVEN

SPEED WALKING

If you are at the sports ground, you may see someone

walking quickly along the track in a peculiar way. It is not an ordinary walk but a speed walking.

In speed walking, the movement of the arms and the position of the body have a lot to do with speed. The walker's arms which bend at the elbows move vigorously while he is walking. His body is swung slightly from one side to the other and his hips are partially rotated, producing a rolling motion. His two feet must not leave the surface of the ground at the same time. For example, his left foot must not leave the ground until the heel of the right foot is coming in contact with the surface of the ground to complete the stride. And the leg should be straightened with the knee locked.

Although this method of walking may look somewhat ridiculous, it has more advantage than ordinary walking. The walker's stride is wider and his speed is greater.

A person who has not been trained for speed walking finds himself difficult in walking by this method, even if it is a short distance.

Properly done, speed walking brings into play nearly every muscle of the body. Speed walking strengthens the heart, lungs and other vital organs. A period of daily walk will put one into first class shape for more intensive training, whether for track and field athletics, rowing, football or basketball.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. speed walking [spi:d wɔ:kiŋ] | 4. ordinary [ˈɔ:dinəri] <i>adj.</i> 平常的 |
| <i>n.</i> 竞走 | 5. position [pə'ziʃən] <i>n.</i> 姿势, 位置 |
| 2. track [træk] <i>n.</i> 跑道 | 6. movement ['mu:vmənt] <i>n.</i> |
| 3. peculiar [pɪ'kju:liə] <i>adj.</i> 奇怪的 | 运动, 动作 |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 7. elbow ['elbou] <i>n.</i> 肘 | 24. knee [ni:] <i>n.</i> 膝盖 |
| 8. swing [swɪŋ] <i>v.</i> 摆动 | 25. lock [lɒk] <i>v.</i> 锁住 |
| 9. slightly ['slaitli] <i>adv.</i> 轻微地 | 26. ridiculous [ri'dɪkjʊləs] <i>adj.</i>
可笑的 |
| 10. hip [hɪp] <i>n.</i> 臀部 | 27. advantage [əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ] <i>n.</i>
利益, 优势 |
| 11. partially ['pɑ:ʃəli] <i>adv.</i> 部分地 | 28. somewhat ['sʌmhwa:t] <i>adv.</i> 有点 |
| 12. rotate [rou'teɪt] <i>v.</i> 旋转 | 29. wide [waɪd] <i>adj.</i> 宽的 |
| 13. produce [prə'dju:s] <i>v.</i> 产生 | 30. person ['pɜ:sn] <i>n.</i> 人 |
| 14. roll [ro:l] <i>v.</i> 滚动 | 31. properly ['prɒpəli] <i>adv.</i> 适当地 |
| 15. motion [məʊʃən] <i>n.</i> 活动, 动作 | 32. bring [brɪŋ] <i>v.</i> 带
to bring into play 使活动 |
| 16. leave [li:v] <i>v.</i> 离开 | 33. vital ['vaɪtəl] <i>adj.</i>
重大的, 主要的 |
| 17. surface ['sɜ:fɪs] <i>n.</i> 表面 | 34. organ ['ɔ:ɡən] <i>n.</i> 器官 |
| 18. example [ɪɡ'zɑ:mpəl] <i>n.</i> 例子 | 35. period ['piəriəd] <i>n.</i> 时期 |
| 19. contact ['kɒntækt] <i>n.</i> 接触
to come in contact with...
和...接触 | 36. shape [ʃeɪp] <i>n.</i> 形状, 身体状况 |
| 20. heel [hi:l] <i>n.</i> 脚后跟 | 37. intensive [ɪn'tensɪv] <i>adj.</i> 强烈的 |
| 21. complete [kəm'pli:t] <i>v.</i> 完成 | 38. rowing ['rouɪŋ] <i>n.</i> 划船 |
| 22. stride [straɪd] <i>n.</i> 跨步 | |
| 23. straighten ['streɪtn] <i>v.</i> 伸直 | |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

- Does the movement of the arms have a lot to do with speed in speed walking?
- How does the walker move his arms in walking?
- Why does the walker's body produce a rolling motion?
- May the walker's two feet leave the surface of the ground at the same time?
- Does a speed walker walk faster than we? Why?
- Have you learned to do speed walking?
- Will speed walking do us good if it is properly done?

II. 先將例句譯成漢語, 然後模仿例句結構, 翻譯例句下面的漢

語句子:

1. 例: You may see someone walking quickly along the track.

- a) 你可以看到許多學生在池里游泳。
- b) 我發現有人在練習這種技術。

2. 例: The movement of the arms and the position of the body have a lot to do with speed.

- a) 糧食和我們生活有很大關係。
- b) 每天訓練和我們的健康有很大關係。

3. 例: He found himself difficult in walking by this method.

- a) 他發現他自己在傳球方面有困難。
- b) 我們發現我們自己在練習這個動作方面有困難。

4. 例: His left foot must not leave the ground until the heel of the right foot is coming in contact with the surface.

- a). 在下課以前, 你不應該離開教室。
- b). 在完成作業以前, 學生們不回家。

5. 例: Although this method of walking may look somewhat ridiculous, it has more advantage than ordinary walking.

- a) 雖然他已經五十歲了, 他還學習外語。
- b) 雖然他有許多有用的經驗, 他還經常向別人學習。

III. 用“who”或“which”填充下列句子, 并翻譯全句:

1. A person _____ does not study English can not read and write in English.
2. The walker's hips _____ are partially rotated produce a rolling motion.
3. All players _____ want to learn basketball game should learn to catch and pass the ball with both hands.

4. A relay race _____ offers spirited team competition provides places for a large number of athletes.
5. I passed the ball to the player _____ was under the basket.

IV. 翻譯，注意“should”的用法：

1. The leg should be straightened with the knee locked.
2. You should waste no time.
3. They should stop smoking and drinking.
4. He should do speed walking every morning.
5. We should learn English and use it to serve the cause of socialism.

語法練習（參考簡明語法第十三章§§中的副詞从句）

I. 找出下列句中的副詞从句，并翻譯全句：

例：The walker's arms move vigorously while he is walking.

当竞走运动员正在走的时候，他的两臂使劲地移动。

1. He came to my room while I was writing a letter.
2. When class is over, we shall have a short rest.
3. As the clock struck, the game ended.
4. The game had already begun before we reached the stadium.
5. We shall go where the people want us to go.
6. They may go where they like.
7. If you do speed walking everyday, your heart, lungs and other vital organs will be strengthened.
8. He has stopped smoking and drinking because he wants to be a good athlete.
9. Since you are on a team, you have to help your team leader.
10. As I am busy, I can not go.

11. Although it is time for taking a rest, the students continue doing their homework:
12. From this time until the end of the match neither side could score, though the goal-keepers had plenty of work to do.
13. Football game is so exciting that we all like to play it.

LESSON FIFTY-EIGHT

REVISION EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 完成句子:

- Smoking sometimes makes a person. . .
 - Doing speed walking everyday makes you. . .
 - Baton transfer makes relay race. . .
- My friend Liu is known to be. . .
 - Ting-po was known to be. . .
 - The basketball player is known to be. . .
- Doing speed walking everyday will put a person into first class shape for more intensive training whether . . . or. . .
 - He can not decide whether. . . or. . .
 - I want to become whether. . . or. . .
- Karl Marx was both. . . and. . .
 - Bill's brother had stopped both. . . and. . .
 - Both his sisters. . .
- We take food everyday according to. . .
 - We build our country according to. . .

c) They will visit Shanghai and play against some strong teams according to . . .

II. 利用下列動詞造句，每個動詞造兩句：

to appear, to look, to serve, to spend, to make

III. 翻譯：

1. Our athletes often come into contact with visitors from abroad.
2. The right-wing did not score a goal, even if there was a good chance for him to shoot.
3. Getting out of the car, the players of the visiting team were met by us.
4. Setting up a new record has a lot to do with one's hard training.
5. His success has something to do with the help of others.

IV. 翻譯：

1. 除非你早一點來，否則你不可得能到一個座位 (seat)。
2. 我們發現我們的軍隊在渡河方面有困難。
3. 你訓練得越好，你就能創造越多的紀錄。
4. 我看見有人在閱覽室里看報。
5. 沒有試驗，我們不可能知道吸煙會傷害心臟。

語法練習

I. 找出下列句中的名詞從句，說明用法，並翻譯全句：

1. I don't know who will be our new coach.
2. What our students have to do is to study hard and train vigorously.
3. Tell me which team is stronger.
4. He does not remember to whom he gave the ball yesterday.
5. It is very clear that we shall all pass the test.

6. Who will take part in the match will soon be decided.
7. He has done what an athlete should do.
8. He asks me which is the nearest way to Tien An Man.
9. The question is who will teach us speed walking.
10. What our athletes need is the courage to win.
11. I don't know whether he wants to stop smoking or not.
12. It is very necessary that we should learn to shoot accurately.
13. The fact is that the baseball coach wants steady players on his team.
14. I think everyone will do the exercises carefully.
15. It is not decided which team will go to the Soviet Union.

II. 利用副詞从句翻譯下列句子:

1. 在比賽結束以後，我們回家。
2. 在他們完成一切工作以前，他們將留在这里。
3. 比賽一開始，我們隊就攻進了一個球。
4. 即使他被對手看住，他還攻進了兩個球。
5. 所有運動員應該學會兩隻手都能传球，因為传球在籃球中是很重要的。
6. 雖然他已經五十歲了，他還每天學習外語。
7. 如果你在教室，你就會看到學生們在讀課文。

LESSON FIFTY-NINE

CAN A MAN LIFT AN OX?

When you first go in for weight training, the coach will tell you that strength can only be developed by persistent

training.

There is a poem singing about human strength and skill. The heroine of the poem was a slave, whose name was Fitna. In order to prove that strength could be developed by persistent training, she lifted a little calf every day.

“A little calf Fitna lifted on her shoulder,
By its four legs she carried it up to the tower.
Though a delicate maiden was she,
Lifting it every day she never missed.
Six long years had already passed,
The calf had become an ox at last.
The rosy maiden was still as delicate as ever,
But as usual she lifted the ox up to the tower.
Stronger and heavier though the ox grew,
The maiden's strength developed too.”

There may not be a person who can lift an ox nowadays, but there are really some persons who become strongmen by persistent training. In the home-town of the writer of this poem, there did live many strongmen. One of them was Ailykh, a peasant strongman. It is said that in order to develop his strength, he often carried a little camel on his back. Some of the instruments used by Ailykh to develop his strength are still exhibited in a museum. Among them is a hammer which weighs 46 kgs.

In a word, one cannot develop his strength without persistent training no matter how strong he is born.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. lift [lift] <i>v.</i> 举起 | 3. weight [weit] <i>n.</i> 重量 |
| 2. ox [ɒks] <i>n.</i> 公牛 | 4. poem [poum] <i>n.</i> 诗 |

5. persistent [pə:'sɪstənt] *adj.*
坚持的
6. human ['hju:mən] *n.* 人类
7. skill [skil] *n.* 技巧
8. heroine ['herouɪn] *n.*
女主人公, 女英雄
9. whose [hu:z] *pron.* 某人的, 誰的
10. prove [pru:v] *v.* 証明
11. calf [kɑ:f] *n.* 牛犊
12. shoulder ['ʃouldə] *n.* 肩
13. tower [tauə] *n.* 塔
14. delicate ['delɪkət] *adj.*
娇弱的, 优雅的
15. maiden ['meɪdn] *n.* 少女
16. miss [mɪs] *v.* 失去, 错过
17. last [lɑ:st] *n.* 最后 at last 到底
18. usual ['ju:ʒuəl] *adj.*
一向的, 常常的
19. rosy ['rouzi] *adj.* 玫瑰色的
20. ever ['evə] *adv.* 以往, 曾經
as ever 象以往那样
21. grow [grou] *v.* 成长
22. nowadays ['naʊədeɪz] *adv.*
[now-on-days 之略] 現今
23. strongman ['strɒŋmən] *n.* 大力士
24. become [bɪ'kʌm] *v.* 成为
25. really ['ri:əli] *adv.* 确实
26. camel ['kæml] *n.* 骆驼
27. instrument ['ɪnstrəmənt] *n.* 工具
28. exhibit [ɪg'zɪbɪt] *v.* 展覽
29. hammer ['hæmə] *n.* 鎚子
30. weigh [wei] *v.* 重
31. kg=kilo-gramme ['kɪləgræm]
n. 公斤
32. matter ['mætə] *n.* 事情
no matter how... 不管怎样的...

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題.

1. In what way can one's strength be developed?
2. Why did Fitna lift a little calf every day?
3. How did she carried it up to the tower?
4. How many years did she carry it every day?
5. Did Fitna's strength develop at last?
6. Are there any person who can really lift an ox nowadays?
7. Tell us something about Ailykh, the peasant strongman.
8. Are some of the instruments used by Ailykh still

exhibited in a museum?

9. Do you develop your strength by persistent training?
10. How much weight can you lift up?

II. 翻譯:

1. 無論你生來多么強壯，你應該努力訓練。
2. 無論他多忙，他每天學習外語。
3. 無論這位姑娘多么嬌弱，她照常每天舉牛上塔。
4. 我喜歡從事許多種運動，例如：舉重、划船、足球……等。
5. 總而言之，一個好的賽跑運動員應該有一顆健全的心脏。
6. 為了提高你所喜愛的運動項目的技術，你每天應該用二十分鐘來練習這種運動的某些困難動作。
7. 據說每天用一段時間竟走會使一個人處於最好的身體狀態。
8. 據說北京隊已經到上海去參加比賽了。

III. 用一個過去分詞短語填充下列句子:

例: Some of the instrument used by Ailykh to develop his strength are still exhibited in a museum.

1. The ox _____ grew stronger and heavier.
2. The ghost _____ transformed itself into a lamb.
3. The ball _____ was kicked into the corner of the net.
4. The letter _____ was received yesterday.
5. The dictionary _____ is very good.

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第十三章 § 3 中的形容詞從句)

I. 找出下列句中的形容詞從句，並翻譯全句:

1. He is a person who develops his strength by persistent training.
2. The man who does speed walking every day is my classmate.

3. The students who won the race were asked to receive their prizes.
4. All players who want to be a good basketball player should learn catching and passing the ball.
5. Once upon a time, there was a young man who was not afraid of ghost.

II. 用“who”当形容词从句的连接词翻译下列句子，将黑体字部分当从句译：

1. 我不認得正在游泳的那个人。
2. 他們帮助那些从外國来的学生。
3. 正在練習傳球的学生是一年級的同学。
4. 昨晚住在我房間的人是我的兄弟。

III. 找出下列句中的形容词从句并翻譯全句：

1. In the museum there is a hammer which weighs 46 kgs.
2. The instruments which were used by Ailykh to develop his strength are still exhibited in a museum.
3. The baton which is used by a relay runner is made of wood.
4. The football game which I saw yesterday was not exciting at all.
5. Comrade Wang gave me the book which I want to read.

IV. 用“which”当形容词从句的连接词翻译下列句子，将黑体字部分当从句译：

1. 我最喜爱的球类运动是籃球。
2. 來到球門前的球被守門員接住。
3. 我們找到了我們昨天丢失的球。
4. 他們將学会讀用英語写的書。

LESSON SIXTY

THE BRAVE TWENTY TWO

The victory of the Long March of the Red Army was a turning point in China's revolution. And the battle for Luting Bridge was one of the most important episodes in the Long March.

The bridge was the only one across the Tatu River, and it was guarded by two enemy regiments on the west bank. The Red Army had to take the bridge if it was to reach its new base in North Shensi. The men of the Fourth Red Regiment were eighty miles away from the bridge when they were ordered to take it within twenty-four hours.

After a forced march in which they bravely overcame the greatest difficulties, they arrived at the bridge. And what a bridge it was! The wooden flooring had been removed by the enemy. All that were left were the iron chains stretching high above the rushing waters.

Each company demanded that it be given the task of taking the bridge. Finally a shock brigade of twenty-two communists and activists was formed. Armed with tommy-guns and hand-grenades, clutching at the chains, they swung out along the bridge.

Forward they pressed under heavy enemy fire. At the west end of the bridge they had to plunge into flames for the enemy had set the bridgehead on fire. Their regiment, following close behind, shouted their encouragement. After a heroic fight against the much larger enemy force the Red Army Men won the day. Luting Bridge was theirs.

The men who first crossed Luting Bridge will be remembered forever as the brave twenty-two.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. march [mɑ:tʃ] <i>n.</i> 进军
long march 长征 | 17. demand [di'mɑ:nd] <i>v.</i> 要求 |
| 2. revolution [revə'lju:ʃən] <i>n.</i> 革命 | 18. task [tɑ:sk] <i>n.</i> 任务 |
| 3. battle ['bætl] <i>n.</i> 战斗 | 19. finally [ˈfaɪnəli] <i>adv.</i> 最后 |
| 4. important [im'pɔ:tənt] <i>adj.</i>
重要的 | 20. shock [ʃɒk] <i>n.</i> 冲击, 突击 |
| 5. episode ['epɪsɔ:d] <i>n.</i> 事件 | 21. brigade [brɪ'geɪd] <i>n.</i> 旅, 队 |
| 6. across [ə'krɒs] <i>prep.</i> 横过 | 22. activist ['æktɪvɪst] <i>n.</i> 积极分子 |
| 7. base [beɪs] <i>n.</i> 基地 | 23. arm [ɑ:m] <i>v.</i> 武装起来 |
| 8. mile [maɪl] <i>n.</i> 英里 | 24. tommy-gun ['tɒmɪgʌn] <i>n.</i>
冲锋枪 |
| 9. force [fɔ:s] <i>v.</i> 强行 <i>n.</i> 力量,
军队, forced march 急行军 | 25. clutch [klʌtʃ] <i>v.</i> 紧握 |
| 10. wooden ['wʊdn] <i>adj.</i> 木头的 | 26. press [pres] <i>v.</i> 压 |
| 11. remove [rɪ'mu:v] <i>v.</i> 移开 | 27. west [west] <i>adj.</i> 西方的 |
| 12. iron [aɪən] <i>adj.</i> 铁的 | 28. plunge [plʌndʒ] <i>v.</i> 投入 |
| 13. chain [tʃeɪn] <i>n.</i> 索链 | 29. flame [fleɪm] <i>n.</i> 火焰 |
| 14. stretch [stretʃ] <i>v.</i> 延伸 | 30. set [set] <i>v.</i> 安置 set fire on 放火 |
| 15. company ['kʌmpəni] <i>n.</i>
连(军队) | 31. encouragement [ɪn'kʌrɪdʒmənt]
<i>n.</i> 鼓励 |
| 16. rush [rʌʃ] <i>v.</i> 冲击 | 32. heroic [hɪ'roʊɪk] <i>adj.</i> 英雄的 |
| | 33. remember [rɪ'membə] <i>v.</i>
记住, 纪念 |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題

1. What was the turning point in China's revolution?
2. Was the battle for Luting Bridge one of the most important events in the Long March?
3. Why did the Red Army Men have to take the bridge?

4. Where were the men of the Fourth Red Regiment when they received the order to take the bridge?
5. Could they take the bridge within 24 hours?
6. Tell us what a bridge they saw when they reached there.
7. To whom the task of taking the bridge was given?
8. How did they take the bridge?
9. Will the men who first crossed the bridge be remembered forever by us?
10. Can you tell us something about the Long March?

II. 翻譯

1. 为了攻下这个城市，紅軍必須在两天内到达这个城市。
2. 敌人放火烧村子，所留下的一切仅仅是几間破碎的房屋。
3. 在和敌人进行英勇战斗之后，紅軍攻下了桥，渡过了河。
4. 长征的故事将永远被我們記住。

III. 把例句譯成漢語，然后模仿例句的結構形式翻譯例句下面的漢語句子：

1. 例：Armed with tommy-guns and hand-grenades, they pressed forward.
 - a) 用馬克思列宁主义武装起来：中国人民在各个战线上正在大跃进。
 - b) 接受了团的命令，我們就去攻这座桥。
2. 例：Following close behind, their regiment shouted their encouragement.
 - a) 克服了一切困难，我們学会很好利用这种武器。
 - b) 从事运动后，我的心肺都增强了。

IV. 翻譯：

1. He had to jump over 1.8 metres high if he was to take part in the meet.
2. We are to swim in the new swimming pool.

3. I am to go to Shanghai very soon.
4. They demanded that the task of taking the bridge should be given to them.
5. They demanded that the imperialist (帝国主义者) should get out from their country.

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第十三章 § 3 中的形容詞從句)

I. 找出下列句中的形容詞從句并翻譯全句:

1. The instrument that is used by him to develop his strength weighs 30 kgs.
2. The persons that first crossed the Tatu river in the Long March will be remembered forever by all of us.
3. The bridge that was taken by the Red Army was destroyed by the enemy.
4. This is the book that I have read twice.
5. She will sing us a song that we love to hear.
6. They found a place where they could cross the river.
7. The reading-room of our institute is the place where I often go.
8. They are told the time when they will attack the city.
9. The day when our team will play against them will be next Sunday.
10. Do you know the reason why they could not pass the test?

II. 找出下列句中的形容詞從句, 并翻譯全句:

1. All that you have to do is to jump over with both legs.
2. Everything that we saw was of great interest.
3. A relay race is an event in which more than one

athletes run a specified distance.

4. Peking is the place in which our great leader Chairman Mao lives and works.
5. Comrade Wang is the man to whom I gave the sports magazine.

LESSON SIXTY-ONE

SECOND WIND

Every athlete who has performed strenuous exercises such as distance running and swimming has experienced getting second wind. In the beginning of such exercises, there is a feeling of distress, accompanied by difficult breathing. After a time there is definite relief from these symptoms, and the athlete has a feeling that he could exert himself almost indefinitely. Obviously, there have been physiologic adjustments to the increased demand for oxygen and for a more effective elimination of the by-products of muscular work. The exact nature of these adjustments is not well understood. However, it appears that through exercise, circulation, respiration, and the heat-regulatory mechanism become adjusted to the demands made on them. It has been shown experimentally that by moving the foot vigorously for one minute the blood flow through the leg muscles is increased as much as 300 per cent.

The important thing an athlete must remember is that ability to achieve second wind depends chiefly on physical condition. The well-trained athlete acquires second wind more readily and with less discomfort than does the untrained.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. wind [wind] <i>n.</i> 风, 气息
second wind 第二种呼吸</p> <p>2. perform [pə'fɔ:m] <i>v.</i> 执行, 做</p> <p>3. strenuous ['strenjuəs] <i>adj.</i>
勇猛的, 使劲的</p> <p>4. experience [iks'piəriəns] <i>v.</i> 体验</p> <p>5. distress [di'stɪs] <i>n.</i> 疼痛</p> <p>6. accompany [ə'kʌmpəni] <i>v.</i> 伴随</p> <p>7. symptom ['sɪmptəm] <i>n.</i> 症状</p> <p>8. exert [ig'zɔ:t] <i>v.</i> 尽力</p> <p>9. indefinitely [in'defɪnɪtli] <i>adv.</i>
无限地</p> <p>10. obviously ['ɒvɪəslɪ] <i>adv.</i>
显然地</p> <p>11. physiologic [fɪzɪ'ɒlədʒɪk] <i>adj.</i>
生理学上的</p> <p>12. adjustment [ə'dʒʌstmənt] <i>n.</i>
调整, 调节</p> <p>13. increase [ɪn'kri:s] <i>n.</i> 增加</p> <p>14. effective [ɪ'fektɪv] <i>adj.</i> 有效的</p> <p>15. elimination [ɪlɪmɪ'neɪʃən] <i>n.</i>
排除, 消除</p> <p>16. by-product ['baɪ'prɒdʌkt] <i>n.</i>
副产品</p> <p>17. exact [ɪg'zækt] <i>adj.</i>
确切的, 正确的</p> <p>18. nature ['neɪtʃə] <i>n.</i> 性质</p> | <p>19. appear [ə'piə] <i>v.</i> 出现, 表现</p> <p>20. circulation ['sɜ:kju'leɪʃən] <i>n.</i>
循环</p> <p>21. respiration [respə'reɪʃən] <i>n.</i> 呼吸</p> <p>22. heat-regulatory ['hi:t'regjələ'tɔəri] <i>adj.</i> 热量调节的</p> <p>23. mechanism ['mekənɪzəm] <i>n.</i> 机制</p> <p>24. adjust [ə'dʒʌst] <i>v.</i> 调整</p> <p>25. experimentally [ɪks'perɪ'mentəli] <i>adj.</i> 实验上的</p> <p>26. flow [fləʊ] <i>n.</i> 流</p> <p>27. per cent [pə'sent] <i>n.</i> 百分之...</p> <p>28. ability [ə'bɪləti] <i>n.</i> 能力</p> <p>29. achieve [ə'tʃi:v] <i>v.</i>
获得, 达到(目的)</p> <p>30. depend [dɪ'pend] <i>v.</i> 依靠
depend on 取决于</p> <p>31. chiefly ['tʃi:flɪ] <i>adv.</i> 主要地</p> <p>32. condition [kən'dɪʃən] <i>n.</i>
情况, 条件</p> <p>33. acquire [ə'kwɪə] <i>v.</i> 取得</p> <p>34. readily ['redɪli] <i>adv.</i> 容易地</p> <p>35. discomfort [dɪs'kʌmfət] <i>adj.</i>
不舒服</p> <p>36. untrained [ʌn'treɪnd] <i>adj.</i>
未受过训练的</p> |
|--|--|

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. What kinds of athletes have experienced getting se-

cond. wind?

2. Tell us what does an athlete feel just before getting second wind?
3. Why does an athlete feel that he can exert himself almost indefinitely when getting second wind?
4. Can you explain second wind from physiological point of view?
5. What kind of sports do you go in for?
6. Have you ever experienced getting second wind in training or in competition?
7. Can you tell us how do you feel in achieving second wind?

II. 翻譯:

1. 通过几天的坚持不断的訓練，他已适应了每天的訓練生活。
2. 我認为他們的胜利主要取决于人民的支持 (support)。
3. 很明显，战争的胜负取决于它的性質。
4. 只有人才有工作和思考 (to think) 的能力。
5. 沒有受过訓練的人发现他自己在获得第二种呼吸方面有困难。
6. 教練員来到运动場，随同来的是一个受过訓練的運動員。

III. 完成句子 (注意参考本課的句子結構):

1. It has shown that . . .
2. It appears that . . .
3. It is said that . . .
4. It was decided that . . .
5. It is quite necessary that . . .
6. It is impossible that . . .

語法練習 (参考簡明語法第十三章 §3 中的形容詞從句)

- I. 找出下列句中的形容詞從句，注明省略什么連接詞，并翻譯

全句:

1. One important thing you must remember is to develop your strength by persistent training.
2. The first thing we saw in his room was a picture of Chairman Mao.
3. The man you met in the sports field yesterday is a high jumper.
4. Ting-op tightened his hold on the ghost he carried on his back.
5. The river they have just crossed is the longest river in our country.
6. Speed walking is an athletic event I like best.
7. This is not the greatest difficulty we have faced.
8. He has achieved a great success he has never dreamed of.

II. 找出下列兩組句子中的形容詞從句，并翻譯全句，請比較兩組在翻譯的處理上有何不同:

第一組

1. The person who has performed strenuous exercises has experienced getting second wind.
2. The comrade whom you want to see is here.
3. I don't like the book you bought yesterday.
4. Peking is the place where we study.
5. After getting second wind, the athlete has a feeling that he could exert himself almost indefinitely.

第二組

1. The heroine of the poem was a slave, whose name was Fitna.
2. Yesterday I met one of my old friends, who was very pleased to see me.

3. They have gone to Shanghai, where they will spend a few days in visiting their old friends.
4. I like to go in for weight-lifting, which was one of my favourite sports.
5. I told my brother the news, who later told it to my sister.

LESSON SIXTY-TWO

LEARNING BY HEART

Some people have very good memories, and can easily learn quite long poems by heart. But they often forget them almost as quickly as they learn them. There are other people who can only remember things when they have said them over and over, but when they do know them they don't forget them.

A good memory is a great help in learning a language. Everybody learns his own language by remembering what he hears when he is small child, and some children — like boys and girls who live abroad with their parents — seem to learn two languages almost as easily as one. In school it is not so easy to learn a second language because the pupils have so little time for it, and they are busy with other subjects as well.

The best way for most of us to remember things is to join them in our mind with something which we know already, or which we easily remember because we have a picture of it in our mind. That is why it is better to learn

words in sentences, not by themselves; or to see, or do, or feel what a word means when we first use it.

The human mind is rather like a camera, but it takes photographs not only of what we see but of what we feel, hear, smell and taste. When we take a real photograph with a camera, there is much to do before the photograph is finished and ready to show to our friends. In the same way, there is much work to be done before we can make a picture remain forever in the mind.

Over and over; again and again.

Memory is the diary that we all carry about with us.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. memory ['meməri] <i>n.</i> 记忆 | 8. camera ['kæməɹə] <i>n.</i> 照相机 |
| 2. forget [fə'get] <i>v.</i> 忘记 | 9. photograph ['fəʊtəgrɑ:f] <i>n.</i>
相片 |
| 3. hear [hiə] <i>v.</i> 听 | 10. smell [smel] <i>v.</i> 嗅, 闻 |
| 4. pupil ['pi:pl] <i>n.</i>
学生(指中, 小学生) | 11. taste [teist] <i>v.</i> 嗜 |
| 5. join [dʒɔin] <i>v.</i> 联合; 参加 | 12. real [riəl] <i>adj.</i> 真实的 |
| 6. mind [maɪnd] <i>n.</i> 心 | 13. remain [ri'mein] <i>v.</i> 留下 |
| 7. rather ['rɑ:ðə] <i>adv.</i> 相当 | 14. diary ['daɪəri] <i>n.</i> 日记, 日记本 |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. Do you often forget the words you have already learned?
2. How do we learn your own language?
3. Is it easy to learn a foreign language in school? Why?

4. What is the best way for us to remember things?
5. What is the best way for us to learn words?
6. Does our mind take photograph? What does it take?
7. What do you learn from this lesson?

II. 翻譯:

1. 他不仅記得他所看到的, 也記得他所听到的。
2. 他們不仅学习汉语, 也学习英語。
3. 这些运动员不仅从事游泳, 也从事滑冰。
4. 我們不仅唱歌, 而且跳舞。
5. 他們似乎不仅訓練跳高, 而且訓練百米短跑。
6. 他似乎很快就要完成他的家庭作业。
7. 記課文的最好方法是去重复地讀。
8. 这就是为什么記憶好比是我們隨身携带的日記本。

III. 完成句子并翻譯:

1. It is not so easy to . . .
2. It is better to . . .
3. It is impossible for him to . . .
4. It is a good plan for us to . . .
5. The students are ready to . . .
6. The players were ready to . . .
7. They can make a picture . . .
8. I can make my watch . . .
9. My brother is busy with . . .
10. The coach is busy with . . .

語法練習 (参考簡明語法第十三章 §1, §2, §4)

I. 指出下列句中的簡單句:

1. They know what they have to do.
2. We are students of physical culture and sports.
3. His body is swung from one side to the other while he is walking.

4. The ability to achieve second wind depends chiefly on physical condition.
5. Some people have very good memories, and can easily learn quite long poems by heart.
6. Memory is the diary that we all carry about with us.
7. The exact nature of these adjustment is not well understood.
8. We love peace.

II. 指出下列句中的等立复合句和主从复合句，如果是主从复合句，请指出其主句和从句：

1. The referee blew the whistle and the game began again.
2. He was the youngest player on his side, but he could shoot hard and straight and play centre-forward.
3. Our team will go to Shanghai very soon, so you can go with us.
4. Hurry up, or we shall be late.
5. If you want to improve your skill, you must be persistent in practising it.
6. He said that books were his slaves and had to serve his will.
7. One important thing an athlete must remember is that ability to achieve second wind depends on physical condition.
8. All that was left were the iron chains.

III. 分析下列等立主从复合句：

1. There are other people who can only remember things when they have said them over and over, but when they do know them they don't forget them.

2. In school it is not so easy to learn a second language because the pupils have so little time for it, and they are busy with other subjects as well.

3. There were one or two corner kicks, but each time, although the ball came in front of the goal, somebody headed it away before he could get near it.

LESSON SIXTY-THREE

REVISION EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 完成下列各組句子并翻譯:

第一組

1. No matter how . . . , he . . .
2. No matter what . . . , I . . .
3. No matter who . . . , they . . .
4. No matter when . . . , we . . .
5. No matter where . . . , you . . .

第二組

1. He came and sat by . . .
2. Comrade Wang is standing by . . .
3. The visitors came to Peking by . . .
4. We always go to the city by . . .
5. They find that it is difficult for them to walk by . . .
6. We can develop our skill by . . .
7. A small child learns his own language by . . .
8. It is nine o'clock by . . .

第三組

1. Comrade Liu is not only our coach but also . . .

2. We like not only to go in for speed walking but also
3. We not only study but also
4. The enemy not only set the bridge on fire but also.
5. His success depends not only on his hard work but also.

II. 利用以下單詞造句，每個詞造兩句：

to carry, to appear, to become, to remember, to forget.

III. 翻譯：

1. 到北京來的人往往要在天安門前照相。
2. 總之，我們必須一再地改善我們的身體條件。
3. 比賽結束後，他有一種寬慰的感覺。
4. 為了學會使用外語，他每天早晨朗讀外語。
5. 通過了堅苦戰鬥，紅軍戰士最後渡過了河。
6. 蘇聯隊來我院參觀，隨同他們來的是他們的教練。
7. 要在半小時內從這裡走到北京大學不是那麼容易的。
8. 獲得第二種呼吸的能力主要取決於一個人的訓練。
9. 在學習外國的經驗方面，外語對他是一種很大的幫助。
10. 請把這首詩背熟。

語法練習

I. 完成各組句子中的形容詞從句并翻譯全句：

第一組

1. The man who _____ is our football coach.
2. The athlete who _____ will be given a cup.
3. The man who _____ will come here soon.
4. Can you remember the person who _____.
5. Yesterday I came across the comrade who _____.

第二組

1. The letter which _____ is from my sister.
2. The bridge which _____ was taken by the Red Army Men.
3. The poem which _____ is rather long.
4. Armed with Chairman Mao's thoughts, we have overcome all difficulties which _____.
5. Can you read all the text which _____?

第三組

1. The ox that _____ grew stronger and heavier day by day.
2. The book that _____ is about the People's Army.
3. The person that _____ will leave Peking tomorrow.
4. I'll like to have a camera that _____.
5. The athlete has experienced a feeling that _____.

第四組

1. Luting Bridge was the place where _____.
2. The reason why _____ was that we had to do our homework at that time.
3. He tells me the day when _____.
4. The comrade whom _____ is a long distance runner.
5. The student whose _____ came to see me yesterday.

II. 补上下列句子中形容词从句所省略的连接词:

1. The foreign language we have learned is English.
2. The strenuous exercises he likes to do are, swimming and distance running.
3. Comrade Li is the person you have talked about.
4. The poem Chairman Mao wrote in the Long March are always read by us.

5. The first thing you ought to remember in the match is to pass the ball quickly.

III. 分析下列句子，从结构上说明句子的类型：

1. The football game began as soon as we reached the stadium.
2. It is not a good plan for them to learn two foreign languages in so short a time.
3. My brother will go there if he has time, but I shall stay here.
4. A camera can only take pictures of what we see, but our mind can take pictures of what we see, feel, hear, smell and taste.
5. Everyone has the ability to remember things.
6. It is a good way that we learn words in sentences, not by themselves.
7. A national team was formed to take part in the international match.
8. After a forced march in which they overcame the greatest difficulties, they arrived at the bridge and started to attack to bridgehead.
9. By moving the foot vigorously for one minute, the blood flow through the leg muscles is increased.
10. There is the picture you want to have.

LESSON SIXTY-FOUR

MY PRIVATE PROPERTY (I)

After W. DeMille

It was autumn. The trees which grew all over the mountain stood yellow and red. The sun was shining

brightly, the air was fresh and cold. There was no wind. The little lake at the foot of the mountain was calm, but its water was cold for bathing. It was time to leave the summer cottage and to move to town. Judson's wife Marcia was packing in the bedroom, and Judson himself was standing in the living-room and looking at a bottle of wine in his hand.

"I have finished," said Marcia from the bedroom. "Has Alec come to take the keys?"

Alec lived not far from the cottage, and looked after it in winter.

"He's down by the lake taking the boats out of the water. He said he would be back in half an hour," answered Judson.

Marcia came into the room carrying her suit-case. She stopped in surprise when she saw the bottle in her husband's hand.

"Judson!" she exclaimed. "You're not taking a drink at ten o'clock in the morning?"

"No, my dear," he answered and looked at her smiling, but somehow she did not like that smile. "You are mistaken. I am not taking anything out of this bottle; I am putting something into it."

He opened his hand and showed her some white powder. His smile had disappeared, his face was quite serious, Marcia felt that she was afraid, though she did not know yet what she was afraid of. But she had learned to know what that tone of his voice meant and she had never been mistaken about it. He always spoke like that when he was planning something in business. And it always meant trouble for other

people.

"What is it?" she asked.

"Poison," Judson answered calmly. "When we came here in the spring I found the bottle opened and only half full. I understood that somebody had been here and had drunk some of my wine. The thief! That's why I am putting poison into the bottle. The thief who stole my wine may come here again as soon as we leave, and have another drink. Let him drink now!"

The woman's face grew pale. "Don't do it, Judson!" she exclaimed. "It's terrible—it's murder!"

"The law does not call it murder if I kill a thief who enters my house by force," he answered. "And the cottage was locked. If anybody enters it by force again and drinks this wine, I don't care."

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. private ['praɪvɪt] <i>adj.</i>
私有的, 私人的 | 14. smile [smaɪl] <i>n.</i> 微笑 |
| 2. property ['prɒpəti] <i>n.</i> 财产 | 15. somehow ['sʌmhaʊ] <i>adv.</i>
不知何故 |
| 3. fresh [freʃ] <i>adj.</i> 新鲜的 | 16. mistake [mɪs'teɪk] <i>v.</i> 误解 |
| 4. calm [kɑ:m] <i>adj.</i> 平静的 | 17. powder ['paʊdə] <i>n.</i> 粉药 |
| 5. bathe [beɪð] <i>v.</i> 沐浴 | 18. serious ['sɪəriəs] <i>adj.</i> 严肃的 |
| 6. cottage ['kɒtɪdʒ] <i>n.</i> 小房子 | 19. yet [jet] <i>adv.</i> 还(没有) |
| 7. wife [waɪf] <i>n.</i> 妻 | 20. tone [təʊn] <i>n.</i> 声调 |
| 8. pack [pæk] <i>v.</i> 打包, 包装 | 21. business ['bɪznɪs] <i>n.</i> 事务 |
| 9. living-room ['lɪvɪŋrʊm] <i>n.</i> 居室 | 22. trouble ['trʌbl] <i>n.</i> 苦恼 |
| 10. boat [bəʊt] <i>n.</i> 小船 | 23. poison ['pɔɪzən] <i>n.</i> 毒药 |
| 11. suit-case ['sju:tkeɪs] <i>n.</i> 旅行皮箱 | 24. pale [peɪl] <i>adj.</i> 苍白的 |
| 12. surprise [sə'praɪz] <i>n.</i> 惊愕 | 25. terrible ['terəbl] <i>adj.</i> 可怕的 |
| 13. exclaim [ɪks'kleɪm] <i>v.</i> 大声叫 | 26. murder ['mɜ:ðə] <i>n.</i> 谋杀 |

27. law [lə:] n. 法律

29. enter ['entə] v. 进入

28. kill [kil] v. 杀死

30. care [keə] v. 照顧, 管

EXERCISES

課文練習:

I. 回答問題:

1. Who were the following persons: Judson, Marcia, Alec?
2. What was Marcia doing in the bedroom?
3. Why did Marcia stop in surprise?
4. Why did she exclaim?
5. What was Judson's answer?
6. Why did Marcia feel that she was afraid?
7. What did Judson put into the bottle?
8. What did Judson explain his putting poison into the bottle?
9. What did Marcia say about Judson's explanation?

II. 翻譯:

1. 他的妻子留在家里照顧小孩。
2. 同學們帶着書本離開了教室。
3. 他帶着手提箱上了火車。
4. 你難道現在還要去打籃球嗎?
5. 你難道今天上午還訓練嗎?
6. 我恐怕他会忘了到这里來。
7. 現在是起床和做早操的時候了。
8. 這件事 (Matter) 是十分嚴重的, 但是他不管。
9. 新鮮的空氣, 水和陽光是人們所需要的。
10. 他給我看一張他在莫斯科 (Moscow) 拍的照片。

III. 完成句子并翻譯:

1. It is time for us to . . .

2. It is time for the athletes to . . .
3. They are afraid of . . .
4. She is afraid that . . .
5. I found the window . . .
6. I found the game . . .
7. She said that she would . . .
8. I said that I should . . .

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第十四章)

I. 翻譯并說明 “it” 的用法:

1. It was autumn.
2. It is no use trying to stop him smoking.
3. It is nice to be working with you again.
4. I bought a dictionary yesterday. It is very useful.
5. It will be fine to-morrow.
6. It was rather ridiculous that he walked in a peculiar way.
7. It was very crowded in the stadium.
8. We think it possible to finish this work soon.
9. It was Judson who put the powder into the bottle.
10. Who is reading the text now? It is Comrade Li.
11. It is this picture which I want to see.
12. It is good news that he has broken the world record.
13. It is very hard for him to jump over 2 metres.
14. It was Luting Bridge that the Red Army Men had to take it in the Long March.
15. It seems that every one is in good spirits.
16. They found it difficult to cross the river.
17. Is it far to the station? No, it is quite near.
18. It was Fitna who lifted the ox to the tower.
19. It was difficult for him to remember the long poem.

20. I don't think it necessary answering the question.
21. It is getting cold.
22. It is the Party that has been leading us from victory to victory.
23. It is half an hour's walk to the theatre.
24. It is not necessary making such an experiment.
25. It is nine o'clock.

II. 用“it” 放句首代替下列句中黑体字的成分:

1. **To study hard** is our duty.
2. **That he usually go to swim in the morning** was his habit.
3. **Comrade Wang** has gone to Shanghai.
4. **Doing morning exercises every day** is my habit.
5. **To be a good trainer** is his aim.

LESSON SIXTY-FIVE

MY PRIVATE PROPERTY (II)

After W. DeMille

He put the powder into the bottle, placed the bottle and a glass on the table and smiled again: "They look inviting enough."

"Don't do it, Judson," she said again. "The law does not punish stealing by death; what right have you. . ."

"When I have to protect my property I make my own laws." There was something in the tone of his voice now which was like the growl of a big dog when another dog wants to take his piece of meat from him. She knew that

tone, too, and had always disliked it.

"But all they did was to drink a little wine," she continued. "Maybe it was some boys who were skiing nearby. They did not steal very much."

"I don't care how much," he said. "If a man stops me and takes five dollars from me or five hundred dollars, it is the same. A thief is a thief."

She tried for the last time: "We won't be here till next spring. I can't bear to think of this terrible bottle standing here all the time. Suppose something happens to us—and no one knows—Oh, it's terrible!"

Judson repeated that he did not care and told her to stop talking about it. She knew that it was useless to speak it any more. He had always been ruthless in business and in everything else.

She turned to the door and said that she would go and say good-bye to Mary, Alec's wife. She had decided to tell Mary about the wine. Mary would not misunderstand her, she would take the keys from Alec and change the wine in the bottle.

Marcia left the cottage. A few minutes later Judson went to get his hunting-boots, which he had put out to dry in the sun. He saw that Marcia was walking down the mountain to Alec's house and Alec was coming up to him from the lake. Judson shouted to Alec to come quicker. Then he took his boots and turned to go into the house. In doing so, however, he stumbled and fell down. His head struck the corner of the door and he became unconscious. In a few minutes he half opened his eyes and tried to understand what was happening. He heard Alec's voice: "You have

only fallen down, sir, nothing serious. Drink this and you will be much better." A glass of wine was being given to him. Without opening his eyes, half-conscious, he drank.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. glass [glɑ:s] <i>n.</i> 玻璃杯 | 15. happen [ˈhæpən] <i>v.</i> 发生 |
| 2. inviting [inˈvaɪtɪŋ] <i>adj.</i> 诱人的 | 16. repeat [riˈpi:t] <i>v.</i> 重复 |
| 3. death [deθ] <i>n.</i> 死 | 17. useless [ˈju:sɪs] <i>adj.</i> 无用的 |
| 4. right [raɪt] <i>n.</i> 权利 | 18. ruthless [ˈru:θlɪs] <i>adj.</i> 残忍的, 无情的 |
| 5. protect [prəˈtekt] <i>v.</i> 保护 | 19. else [els] <i>adj.</i> 别的 |
| 6. growl [graʊl] <i>n.</i> 狗发怒的叫声 | 20. key [ki:] <i>n.</i> 钥匙 |
| 7. dog [dɒg] <i>n.</i> 狗 | 21. hunting-boots [ˈhʌntɪŋˈbu:ts] <i>n.</i> 打猎穿的长统靴 |
| 8. dislike [dɪsˈlaɪk] <i>v.</i> 不喜欢 | 22. dry [draɪ] <i>v.</i> 晾干 |
| 9. maybe [ˈmeɪbi] <i>adv.</i> 或许 | 23. unconscious [ʌnˈkɒnʃəs] <i>adj.</i> 不省人事的 |
| 10. ski [ski:] <i>v.</i> 滑雪 | 24. half-conscious [ˈhɑ:lfˈkɒnʃəs] <i>adj.</i> 半昏迷的 |
| 11. nearby [ˈniəbaɪ] <i>adv.</i> 附近 | |
| 12. dollar [ˈdɒlə] <i>n.</i> 元(货币单位) | |
| 13. bear [beə] <i>v.</i> 忍受 | |
| 14. suppose [səˈpəʊz] <i>v.</i> 假定 | |

EXERCISES

課文練習:

I. 回答問題:

1. What did the tone of Judson's voice like when he said that he made his own law?
2. What did Judson say when Marcia told him that perhaps some boys skiing nearby had drunk the wine?
3. Why did Marcia feel that it was useless to speak about it any more?
4. What did she decided to do at last?

5. What happened to Judson as he turned to go into the house?
6. How did the story end?

II. 翻譯:

1. 他們不忍看到他們的人民被帝国主义分子杀害。
2. 他們不忍听到这种不好的消息。
3. 人們处死这个帝国主义分子。
4. 人們不能把一个偷窃一瓶酒的人处死。
5. 他們所做的一切仅仅是看了一場籃球比賽。
6. 學生們昨晚所做的一切是讀課文和做家庭作业。
7. 和他再談是沒用的。
8. 練習这种技术是沒用的。
9. 假設你发生了什么事, 你能告訴我嗎?
10. 沒講一句話, 他就走了。

III. 翻譯下列句子 (注意連系動詞的用法):

1. The fruits look inviting enough.
2. After drinking the wine, he became unconscious
3. He remained a good teacher at the age of sixty.
4. She proved to be a fighter for peace and socialism.
5. She felt cold in the morning.
6. Hearing her husband's words, the woman's face grew pale.
7. As the year went by, he was getting older and older.
8. The food tasted good.
9. The news seemed encouraging.
10. The plan appears to be a good one.

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第七章§3中的过去将来时态)

I. 說明以下句中謂語動詞的时态并翻譯全句:

例: She said that she **would go** and say good-bye to
一般过去时 一般过去将来时

Mary.

她說她要去向瑪麗告別。

1. Judson said Alec would be back in half an hour.
2. She said she would not be able to come, as she would be talking with other comrades then.
3. I told him that I should go to the stadium with him the following day.
4. Marcia was afraid that something would have happened before they came to the house again.
5. He said by the end of the month he would have been working at the factory for twenty years.
6. I thought you would not have time to read the book.
7. They told us that by the end of the year they would have lived in Peking for ten years.
8. When he studied at the middle school, he would go to play football every Sunday.
9. She told me that she would have been studying English for six years by the end of the term.
10. At that time, he would usually work till two or three o'clock the next morning.
11. I told him that I should be training speed walking the next morning.
12. Judson did not think that he would have been poisoned before he left the summer cottage.
13. She decided to leave the children to Mary. Mary would take care of them.
14. They hoped their team would have reached there before the game began.
15. Marcia went down the small path. She thought Alec would be coming that way.

16. She decided that she would learn to swim the next summer.

LESSON SIXTY-SIX

A LETTER TO THE YOUTH (I)

By I. P. Pavlov

What qualities do I hope for in the youth of my fatherland who devote themselves to science?

First of all: consistency. I can never speak without emotion of this most important condition for fruitful scientific work. Consistency, consistency, and still more consistency. From the very beginning of your work train yourselves to be strictly systematic in amassing knowledge.

Learn the ABC's of science before attempting to ascend its heights. Never reach for the next step until you feel sure of the preceding one.

Never attempt to cover the gaps in your knowledge by daring conjectures and hypotheses. No matter how pleasing the colours of this soap-bubble may appear to your eye, it will inevitably burst, leaving you nothing but confusion.

Train yourselves to discretion and patience. Learn to do the rough work in science. Study, compare, and accumulate facts.

No matter how perfect a bird's wing is, it could never lift the bird if it were not supported by air. Facts are the air of the scientist. Without them you will never be able to fly. Without them your "theories" are useless.

Yet, while studying, experimenting, observing, try not to stop at the surface of facts. Do not become a mere collector of facts. Try to penetrate into the mystery of their origin. Never stop looking for the laws which control them.

(To be continued)

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. youth [ju:θ] <i>n.</i> 青年 | 21. soap-bubble ['səʊp'bʌbl] <i>n.</i> 肥皂泡 |
| 2. quality ['kwɒlɪti] <i>n.</i> 品質 | 22. inevitably [in'evɪtəblɪ] <i>adv.</i> 不可避免地 |
| 3. devote [di'vəʊt] <i>v.</i> 致力于 | 23. confusion [kən'fju:ʒən] <i>n.</i> 混亂 |
| 4. consistency [kən'sɪstənsɪ] <i>n.</i> 堅持 | 24. discretion [dis'kreʃən] <i>n.</i> 謹慎 |
| 5. emotion [i'məʊʃən] <i>n.</i> 感情 | 25. patience ['peɪʃən] <i>n.</i> 忍耐 |
| 6. fruitful ['fru:tful] <i>adj.</i> 有成果的 | 26. rough [rʌf] <i>adj.</i> 艰难的 |
| 7. scientific [saɪən'tɪfɪk] <i>adj.</i> 科学的 | 27. compare [kəm'peə] <i>v.</i> 比較 |
| 8. strictly ['striktli] <i>adv.</i> 严格地 | 28. accumulate [ə'kju:mjuleɪt] <i>v.</i> 积累 |
| 9. systematic ['sɪstɪ'mætɪk] <i>adj.</i> 系統的 | 29. fact [fækt] <i>n.</i> 事实 |
| 10. amass [ə'mæs] <i>v.</i> 积聚 | 30. wing [wɪŋ] <i>n.</i> 翅膀 |
| 11. attempt [ə'tempt] <i>n.</i> 企图, 嘗試 | 31. support [sə'pɔ:t] <i>v.</i> 支持 |
| 12. ascend [ə'send] <i>v.</i> 登上 | 32. scientist ['saɪəntɪst] <i>n.</i> 科学家 |
| 13. height [haɪt] <i>n.</i> 高度, 頂点 | 33. theory ['θiəri] <i>n.</i> 理論 |
| 14. preceding [pri'si:diŋ] <i>adj.</i> 前的, 先的 | 34. observe [əb'zə:v] <i>v.</i> 观察 |
| 15. gap [gæp] <i>n.</i> 缺陷, 缺口 | 35. surface ['sɜ:fɪs] <i>n.</i> 表面 |
| 16. daring ['deəriŋ] <i>adj.</i> 大胆的, 冒失的 | 36. collector [kə'lektə] <i>n.</i> 蒐集者 |
| 17. conjecture [kən'dʒektʃə] <i>n.</i> 猜想, 推测 | 37. mere [miə] <i>adj.</i> 仅仅的 |
| 18. hypotheses [haɪ'pəθɪsi:z] <i>n.</i> 假設 | 38. penetrate ['penɪtreɪt] <i>v.</i> 透入, 洞察 |
| 19. pleasing ['pli:ziŋ] <i>adj.</i> 舒适的, 愉快的 | 39. mystery ['mɪstəri] <i>n.</i> 神秘 |
| 20. burst [bɜ:st] <i>v.</i> 破裂 | 40. origin ['ɒrɪdʒɪn] <i>n.</i> 起源, 来历 |
| | 41. control [kən'trəʊl] <i>n.</i> 控制, 支配 |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. What was the most important condition for fruitful scientific work which Pavlov pointed out in his letter?
2. What did Pavlov mean by consistency?
3. How do you understand the ABC's of science?
4. Why did Pavlov say that we must learn to do the rough work in science and must study, compare and accumulate facts?
5. Tell us the importance of facts for a scientist.

II. 翻譯:

1. 我們把自己貢獻給祖國的體育事業。
2. 在和他們比賽以前，我們設法去了解他們。
3. 在我們的学习中，研究、比較和积累事实是非常重要的。
4. 我們應該通过研究、实验和观察找出支配事物的規律。

III. 完成句子并翻譯:

1. He will never do it without . . .
2. She will never . . . without . . .
3. No matter how much you know, you . . .
4. While running along the track, he . . .
5. They try to stop . . .

語法練習 (参考簡明語法第十六章)

I. 翻譯并說明句中假設語气的类别和用法:

例: No matter how perfect a bird's wing is, it would never lift the bird if it were not supported by air.
不管鳥的翅膀多么完善，如果它沒有空气的支持，它就不可能使鳥飞起来。(假設語气过去时，表示与現在事

实相反)

I wish I were a good coach.

我希望我能做一个好的教練員。(假設語气的其他用法, 表示願望)

1. If I should have time to-morrow, I should go to see the picture.
2. If he had time, he would come here and spend a whole afternoon in playing ball games with us.
3. If I were a coach, I should tell him how to do.
4. If it rains to-morrow, I will stay at home and prepare my lessons.
5. If you had studied hard, you would have got better marks in last week's examination.
6. If you should study this letter carefully, you would learn a lot of things from it.
7. Had she seen the match, she would have known the importance of accurate shooting.
8. If she did not study hard, she could not pass the test.
9. He acts as if he were a teacher.
10. If you do speed walking every day, your heart can be strengthened.
11. Were I a footballer, I would go to see the international football match.
12. Should he stay at home, he would received my letter.
13. If you were to drink and smoke, you would not be able to be a good player.
14. I wish I could go to Peking with you.
15. If he had been at the sports ground yesterday, he would have met the person who broke the world record.

16. If you should pass the ball to him, he could kick it into the corner of the net.

II. 用假設語气翻譯下列句子:

1. 如果他不是这样忙, 他会来。(表示和过去事实相反)
2. 如果我看到他, 我要告訴他。(表示未定)
3. 如果你在北京, 你就会看到这场国际比赛。(表示和現在事实相反)
4. 如果他不在酒里放毒药, 他自己就不会被毒死。(表示和过去事实相反)
5. 我希望我能乘飞机去上海。(表示願望)

LESSON SIXTY-SEVEN

A LETTER TO THE YOUTH (II)

By I. P. Pavlov

Second: modesty. Never think that you already know everything. No matter how great your reputation may be, always have the courage to say to yourself: "I am ignorant."

Do not allow yourself to be overcome by pride. Pride will make you stubborn when it is necessary to agree; it will make you reject useful advice and friendly assistance; it will make you lose your objectivity.

In the group which I am called upon to direct, the spirit of cooperation is everything. We are all working for one common cause and everyone helps it with his strength and ability. Often we cannot say who is responsible for some contribution, but this is only a gain for the common cause.

Third: enthusiasm. Remember that science requires the effort of a lifetime. Even if you had two lives to give, it would still not be enough. Science demands of men effort and complete devotion.

Be enthusiastic in your work and in your research.

Our fatherland offers great opportunities to scientists, and we can say truthfully that science is being generously introduced into the life of our country. Extremely generously.

What is there to say about the position of a young scientist in our country? It is perfectly clear. Much is given to him, but much also is asked of him. And it is a matter of honour for the youth, as well as for all of us, to justify the great hopes which our fatherland places in science.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. modesty ['mɒdisti] <i>n.</i> 謙虛 | 15. contribution [kəntri'bju:ʃən] <i>n.</i> 貢獻 |
| 2. reputation [repju'teɪʃən] <i>n.</i> 名譽 | 16. gain [geɪn] <i>v.</i> 獲得 |
| 3. courage ['kærɪdʒ] <i>n.</i> 勇氣 | 17. enthusiasm [ɪn'θju:ziæzəm] <i>n.</i> 熱心 |
| 4. allow [ə'laʊ] <i>v.</i> 允許 | 18. require [rɪ'kwaɪə] <i>v.</i> 需要, 要求 |
| 5. pride [praɪd] <i>n.</i> 驕傲 | 19. complete [kəm'pli:t] <i>adj.</i> 完全的 |
| 6. stubborn ['stʌbən] <i>adj.</i> 頑固的 | 20. devotion [dɪ'vəʊʃən] <i>n.</i> 獻身, 專心 |
| 7. necessary ['nesɪsəri] <i>adj.</i> 必要的 | 21. enthusiastic [ɪn'θju:zi'æstɪk] <i>adj.</i> 熱情的 |
| 8. reject [rɪ'dʒekt] <i>v.</i> 拒絕 | 22. opportunity [ɒpə'tju:nɪti] <i>n.</i> 機會 |
| 9. friendly ['frendli] <i>adj.</i> 友好的 | 23. truthfully ['tru:θfʊli] <i>adv.</i> 實在地, 真誠地 |
| 10. assistance [ə'sɪstəns] <i>n.</i> 幫助 | 24. generously ['dʒenərəsli] <i>adv.</i> 廣泛地, 不吝嗇地 |
| 11. objectivity [ɒbdʒek'tɪvɪti] <i>n.</i> 客觀性 | |
| 12. direct [daɪ'rekt] <i>v.</i> 指導 | |
| 13. cooperation ['kəʊəpə'reɪʃən] <i>n.</i> 合作 | |
| 14. responsible [rɪs'pɒnɪsbl] <i>adj.</i> 負責的 | |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 25. research [ri'sə:tʃ] <i>n.</i> 研究 | 28. perfectly ['pɜ:fɪktli] <i>adv.</i> 完全地 |
| 26. extremely [iks'tri:mli] <i>adv.</i> 非常地 | 29. honour ['ɒnə] <i>n.</i> 荣誉 |
| 27. position [pə'zɪʃən] <i>n.</i> 处境, 地位 | 30. justify ['dʒʌstɪfaɪ] <i>v.</i> 証明, 为正当 |

EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 回答問題:

1. What was the second thing which Pavlov pointed out in his letter?
2. Can you tell us what did Chairman Mao say about modesty and pride?
3. Do we need the spirit of cooperation in playing ball games?
4. Why do we say that the spirit of cooperation is everything?
5. What was the last important thing which Pavlov pointed out in his letter?
6. What is the hope of our Party in the youth?
7. Are you enthusiastic in your studying and training?
8. What is the hope of our institute in students of physical culture and sports?

II. 翻譯:

1. 不管他知道多少, 他仍然需要从头学起。
2. 不管他們多么忙, 他們仍然給我們忠告和朋友般的幫助。
3. 我們應該有爭取勝利的勇氣。
4. 在我們的共同事業中, 合作的精神是需要的。
5. 如果在比賽中有好的配合, 我們就會獲勝。
6. 我們的祖國在發展體育運動方面為體育工作者提供了良好的機會。

III. 完成句子并翻譯:

1. It is a matter of honour to . . .
2. It is a matter of importance to . . .
3. It is a matter of no importance to . . .
4. It is a matter of time to . . .
5. You should not spend the whole evening in playing cards, even if you . . .
6. You would not be able to finish the work only by yourself even if you . . .
7. It is necessary to . . .
8. It is perfectly clear that . . .
9. The students are responsible for . . .

語法練習 (參考簡明語法第十五章)

I. 補上下列句子中省略的部份并翻譯全句:

例: Never think that you already know everything.

(you) never think that you already know everything

你永远不要認為你已經懂得了一切。

1. What kind of sports do you like? Basketball.
2. Glad to see you.
3. While studying, experimenting, observing, try not to stop at the surface of facts.
4. Bill noticed his brother had stopped smoking. He asked him why.
5. Do not allow yourself to be overcome by pride.
6. He did not come, though he ought to.
7. My watch is an old one and his, a new one.
8. When did they arrive at Peking? Last night.
9. If necessary, I'll write to you again.
10. She is as old as I.
11. Sorry, I can not go with you.

12. The players ran as fast as possible.
13. If possible, I should like to see the play.
14. Can they win the game? I am afraid not.

LESSON SIXTY-EIGHT

REVISION EXERCISES

課文練習

I. 翻譯:

1. 你难道現在要离开你的工作嗎?
2. 和他談這件事是沒有必要的。
3. 假如發生了什么事，我不負責。
4. 沒有教練員的幫助，他將不能夠提高他的技術。
5. 在你試圖打破紀錄以前，必須勤學苦練。
6. 設法深入找出事物起源的奧秘是解決問題的關鍵。
7. 我們在學英語時，我每天早上用半小時讀課文。
8. 正確地讀和寫是一件重要的事。

II. 利用前面四個課文中的單詞填充下列句子，並翻譯:

1. She looks——her child when she is at home.
2. If a man gets in a room by force and takes other people's things, we call him——.
3. She was——of what her husband had done.
4. On Sunday, we——our time to going to the pictures or visiting museums.
5. Alec stopped in——as soon as he saw Judson falling down.
6. He did not agree with anyone. He is rather——.
7. I am on duty to-day. I shall be——for cleaning the desks and sweeping the floor.

8. They——the murderer by death.
9. The team which he was——upon to direct was not a strong team.
10. After training for several weeks, he made an——to break the national record.
11. Close——is needed in our training and studying.
12. She——him a cup of wine and he drank.

語法練習

I. 翻譯并說明“it”的用法:

1. It is a matter of honour to serve the cause of socialism.
2. It is rather hot to-day.
3. It was perfectly clear that we must support the war against imperialism.
4. It is necessary for us doing morning exercises every-day.
5. It is his habit to take a walk after supper.
6. It is ten o'clock.
7. We think it possible to stop making mistakes in reading the text.
8. It was the international football match that he wanted to see.

II. 指出下列句子中謂語動詞的時態:

1. He said that he would call on me the next day.
2. She told her comrades that by the end of the week she would have worked at the hospital for ten years.
3. She was afraid that somebody would enter the house by force and drink the wine.
4. The athlete was told by his coach that he should be training at the sports field the next day at ten in the morning.

III. 补上下列省略句中所省略的部分:

1. Is there anything serious? Nothing serious.
2. Would you have coffee or milk? Coffee, please.
3. When in trouble he always go to ask his teacher for help.
4. I study in Peking and he, in Shanghai.
5. She left the house as quickly as possible.
6. A speed walker walks faster than we.
7. If necessary, she will help us to do it.

IV. 翻譯并說明假設語气的类别和用法:

1. If you want to ascend the heights of science, you must first learn the ABC's of science.
2. Had she studied English, she would have been able to read that letter written in English.
3. If I should have time, I should go to see the play performed by the second-year students.
4. She looks as if she were an experienced coach.
5. If you read this book, you would learn a lot from it.
6. If you had trained hard, you would have passed the test.

LESSON SIXTY-NINE

FOOTBALL

The official name for this ball game is "association football," popularly known as "soccer" or "football".

Before the kick-off the captains of the contending team draw lots or toss up. The side that wins kicks off, the other side has the choice of the goal in the first half. The eleven

players take up their positions on the pitch (field). The centre forward stands in the centre. On his left are the inside left and the outside left, on his right the inside right and the outside right. Behind the forward line are the three half backs. The right back, the left back and the goalkeeper protect the goal.

No player but goalkeeper may handle the ball, but heading is allowed. The forwards take the ball up the field by a series of skilful passes or by means of short, quick kicks (dribbling). If they manage to out-manoeuvre their opponents and get close enough to the goal to kick the ball into it, one of them shoots. If he manages to score a goal, the score becomes 1 : 0 (One to nothing). If a defender kicks the ball over his own goal-line, a corner is awarded to the opposite side. If a player kicks the ball off the field over the touch-line or the goal-line, the opposite side is awarded a touch or a goal kick.

The game is governed by a set of rigid rules which must be strictly observed. A referee assisted by two linesmen sees to that. If somebody breaks the rules, the referee rules a free kick. He may even order a player off the field for a grave offense. In this case no replacement is allowed. The trainer (coach), the person who trains the team for the game, however, is allowed to substitute players in case of injury.

If the contending teams score the same number of goals in a match, we say that they draw, or that the game ends in a draw (tie). If the score is 4 : 3 (or the like), we say that one team won by a close score. If, however, the defeated team does not manage to score a single goal the game is said to have ended in a "shut-out".

In the football championship the title goes to the team that scores the highest number of points in games with other contenders. The football cup matches, however, are played on an elimination (Olympic) principle—the team that loses drops out of further competition. The winners keep on battling it out between them till two teams are left. Then the final match is played, the winner getting the coveted cup.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. official [ə'fɪʃəl] <i>adj.</i>
正式的, 官方的 | 18. out-manoeuvere [autmə'nu:və]
v. 运球过人 |
| 2. association [ə'səʊsi'eɪʃən] <i>n.</i> 联合
association football 足球 | 19. award [ə'wɔ:d] <i>v.</i> 授給 |
| 3. popularly ['pɒpjələli] <i>adv.</i>
普遍地 | 20. opposite [ə'pəzɪt] <i>adj.</i> 對方的 |
| 4. soccer ['sɒkə] <i>n.</i> 足球 | 21. touch-line ['tʌtʃ'laɪn] <i>n.</i> 邊綫 |
| 5. kick-off ['kɪk'ɒf] <i>n.</i> 開球 | 22. goal-line ['gəʊl'laɪn] <i>n.</i> 底綫 |
| 6. captain ['kæptɪn] <i>n.</i> 隊長 | 23. govern ['gʌvən] <i>v.</i> 管理、支配 |
| 7. contending [kən'tendɪŋ] <i>adj.</i>
進行比賽的 | 24. set [set] <i>n.</i> 一套 a set of 一套 |
| 8. lot [lɒt] <i>n.</i> 籤 | 25. rigid ['rɪdʒɪd] <i>adj.</i>
嚴格的, 硬性的 |
| 9. toss [tɒs] <i>v.</i> 拋 toss up
擲銅錢(選場地) | 26. rule [ru:l] <i>n.</i> 規則 <i>v.</i> 支配、判、
管理 |
| 10. choice [tʃɔɪs] <i>n.</i> 選擇 | 27. strictly ['strɪkli] <i>adv.</i> 嚴格的 |
| 11. pitch [pɪtʃ] <i>n.</i> 球場(足球) | 28. observe [əb'sə:v] <i>v.</i> 遵守 |
| 12. protect [prə'tekt] <i>v.</i> 保護 | 29. assist [ə'sɪst] <i>v.</i> 幫助 |
| 13. handle ['hændl] <i>v.</i> 用手拿, 掌握 | 30. linesman ['laɪnzsmən] <i>n.</i> 巡邊員 |
| 14. series ['sɪəri:z] <i>n.</i> 連續
a series of 一連串 | 31. free [fri:] <i>adj.</i> 自由的
free kick 任意球 |
| 15. skilful ['skɪlfʊl] <i>adj.</i>
巧妙的, 技巧的 | 32. grave [greɪv] <i>adj.</i> 嚴重的 |
| 16. dribble, ['drɪb] <i>v.</i> 運球 | 33. offense [ə'fens] <i>n.</i> 犯規 |
| 17. manage ['mænɪdʒ] <i>v.</i> 設法 | 34. case [keɪs] <i>n.</i> 情況, 場合 |
| | 35. replacement [rɪ'pleɪsmənt] <i>n.</i>
替補, 調換 |
| | 36. substitute ['sʌbstɪtju:t] <i>v.</i> 代替 |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 37. injury ['ɪndʒəri] <i>n.</i> 伤害 | 43. drop [drɒp] <i>v.</i> 落下, 落后 |
| 38. defeat [di'fi:t] <i>v.</i> 失败, 打败 | 44. further ['fɜ:ðə] <i>adj.</i> 进一步的 |
| 39. shut-out ['sataut] <i>n.</i> 得零分 | 45. competition [kəm'pi:tɪʃən] <i>n.</i> |
| 40. championship ['tʃæmpjənʃɪp] <i>n.</i> | 比賽、競爭 |
| 冠軍賽 | 45. final ['faɪnəl] <i>adj.</i> 最終的 |
| 41. principle ['prɪnsəpl] <i>n.</i> | final match 決賽 |
| 原則, 原理 | 47. coveted ['kɒvɪtɪd] <i>adj.</i> 渴望的 |
| 42. title ['taɪtl] <i>n.</i> 称号 | |

LESSON SEVENTY

RUNNING

Running races include sprints, middle distance races, and long distance races. The latter include cross-country races and the longest race known as the Marathon.

Start—Two different forms of starting are used in running races: Where speed is the main object, as with sprinting, the crouching start is used; in middle distance races either the crouching or standing start is used; and for races above a quarter mile in length a standing start is used. For either the crouching or standing start three signals are given by the starter:

(1) "On your mark". The runner assumes position on the starting line, relaxed.

(2) "Get set". At this the runner tenses the muscles, inclines the body forward with eyes looking ahead on the track, and listens intently for the final signal, ready to spring forward. In the crouching start he lifts the rear knee and straighten the arms.

(3) The signal to start is the word: "Go" or in official races, a pistol shot.

Sprintings—These are made in lanes for each runner. There is a starting line, and at the end a finish line on the ground and above it a soft worsted is stretched from side to side. This is called the tape, and the runner first to get over the finish line carries this with him on his breast, called "breasting the tape". The run is made by lifting the knees high and putting the feet down vigorously without entirely straightening the knees. The arms are bent at the elbows, the hands moving forward and backward freely.

Relay race—A relay race is one in which the competitors are teams instead of individuals. Each competitor runs part of the distance to be covered and is then relieved by another member of his team, these various runners being stationed at regular places on the track. The change of runners is made by an exchange of a baton.

Middle and long distance races—These races are not run in laps. It is permissible to cross in front of another runner at not less than two paces in advance of him.

Cross-country run—This is the running race over the open country. It may be along roadways or across fields and streams and through woods. The cross-country run should not be undertaken without previous training, as it is a test of endurance, especially for the heart and lungs.

Hurdle races—A hurdle race is a combination of running and jumping. It is a running in which the contestants jump over hurdles which are obstacles. Each hurdle must be jumped over with both feet.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

1. middle ['mɪdl] *adj.* 中等的
2. cross-country ['krɒs'kʌntri] *n.* 越野(跑)
3. latter ['lætə] *adj.* 后者
4. Marathon ['mærəθən] *n.* 馬拉松
5. object ['ɒbdʒɪkt] *n.* 目的
6. main [meɪn] *adj.* 主要的
7. crouch [kraʊtʃ] *v.* 下蹲
crouching start 蹲踞式起跑
8. length [lenθ] *n.* 長度
9. signal ['sɪgnl] *n.* 信号
10. starter ['stɑ:tə] *n.* 发令員
11. mark [mɑ:k] *n.* 記号
on your mark 各就各位
12. assume [ə'sju:m] *v.* 故作,
assume position 作出姿勢
13. relax [rɪ'læks] *v.* 放松
14. set [set] *adj.* 固定不动, get set
預备(賽跑时口令)
15. tense [tens] *v.* 使...紧张
16. incline [ɪn'klaɪn] *v.* 傾斜
17. ahead [ə'hed] *adv.* 向前
18. intently [ɪn'tentli] *adv.* 注意地
19. rear [rɪə] *adj.* 后面的
20. pistol ['pɪstl] *n.* 手鎗
21. lane [leɪn] *n.* 跑道
22. worsted ['wʊstɪd] *n.* 毛絨織
23. tape [teɪp] *n.* 終点带
24. breast [brest] *n.* 胸部
breasting the tape 胸前撞綫
25. entirely [ɪn'taɪəli] *adv.* 完全地
26. backward ['bækwəd] *adv.* 向后地
27. competitor[kəm'petɪtə] *n.* 比賽者
28. instead [ɪn'sted] *adv.* 代替
instead of... 而不是...
29. individual [ɪndɪ'vɪdʒuəl] *adj.*
个人的, 个别的
30. various ['veəriəs] *adj.*
各个的, 不同的
31. station ['steɪʃən] *v.* 配置, 駐
32. exchange [ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ] *n.* 交換
33. lap [læp] *n.* 跑道的一圈
34. permissible [pə'mɪsəbl] *adj.*
可以允許的
35. advance [əd'vɑ:ns] *n.* 前进
in advance of... 在...之前
36. roadway ['rəʊdweɪ] *n.*
道路(特別指行車的部分)
37. woods [wudz] *n.*
小树林(单,复数通用)
38. undertake ['ʌndə'teɪk] *v.* 从事
39. previous ['pri:vjəs] *adj.*
先前的, 預先的
40. especially [ɪs'peʃəli] *adv.* 尤其
41. combination [kəm'bɪneɪʃən] *n.*
結合
42. contestant [kən'testənt] *n.*
競賽者, 選手
43. hurdle ['hʌ:dl] *n.* 栏
44. obstacle ['ɒbstəkl] *n.* 障碍物

LESSON SEVENTY-ONE

THE MUSCLE

Muscles are composed of muscle cells. Each cell is a tiny engine which produces its share of the energy that is needed for movement. It does this by oxidizing or burning up the fuel brought to it by the blood.

There are more than five hundred muscles in the human body. They vary greatly in size and strength. Additional muscular strength is obtained by the arrangement of a number of muscles into groups in such a way that they can all work and pull together as directed.

Muscles are elastic and produce motion only by contracting and pulling on the part to which they are attached. After a certain muscle or set of muscles has moved a part of the body in one direction, another muscle or set of muscles returns the part to its original position, or moves it in an opposite direction. For example, a number of muscles work together to turn the head. The relaxing of these muscles will not cause the head to return to its original position. It has to be moved back again by an opposing group of muscles that is provided for that purpose.

Most of the movements of the body are voluntary, or are under our control. Our ability to stand, walk, run, play and work are all examples of voluntary muscle action. If we are sitting and wish to rise, the thought of rising starts messages from the brain to the muscles that are concerned in this movement. These muscles contract and we stand up. If we

decide against rising, we give no orders to the muscles and no movement takes place. The voluntary muscles are subject to training. Doing a thing over and over again in the same way leads to the formation of a "habit". Practice makes perfect in acts of skill and precision.

Involuntary muscles are responsible for the activities that take place without our control. The body is a living, "going" machine. Some muscular activity is taking place all the time. Asleep and awake, the involuntary muscles of the heart contract and relax at a fairly uniform rate and pump the blood around the body. Other involuntary muscles care for the movements connected with breathing, digestion, and other important processes.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. compose [kəm'pəuz] <i>v.</i>
組成, 构成 | 16. elastic [ə'ləstɪk] <i>adj.</i> 有弹性的 |
| 2. cell [sel] <i>n.</i> 細胞 | 17. contract [kən'trækt] <i>v.</i> 收縮 |
| 3. tiny ['taɪni] <i>adj.</i> 小的 | 18. attach [ə'tætʃ] <i>v.</i> 依附, 附屬 |
| 4. engine ['endʒɪn] <i>n.</i> 引擎, 发动机 | 19. certain [sə'teɪn] <i>adj.</i> 某, 一定的 |
| 5. share [ʃeə] <i>n.</i> 应有的, 一部分 | 20. set [set] <i>n.</i> 一套, 一群 |
| 6. energy ['enədʒi] <i>n.</i> 能量 | 21. direction [dɪ'rekʃən] <i>n.</i> 方向 |
| 7. oxidize [ˌɒksɪdaɪz] <i>v.</i> 氧化 | 22. original [ə'rɪdʒənəl] <i>adj.</i> 原来的 |
| 8. burn [bɜ:n] <i>v.</i> 燃燒 | 23. cause [kɔ:z] <i>v.</i> 引起 |
| 9. fuel [fjuəl] <i>n.</i> 燃料 | 24. opposing [ə'pəʊzɪŋ] <i>adj.</i>
相反的, 相对的 |
| 10. vary ['veəri] <i>v.</i> 变化, 差异 | 25. voluntary ['vɒləntəri] <i>adj.</i>
志願的, 隨意的 |
| 11. size [saɪz] <i>n.</i> 大小, 尺寸 | 26. action [ˈækʃən] <i>n.</i> 動作 |
| 12. additional [ə'dɪʃnəl] <i>adj.</i> 附加的 | 27. rise [raɪz] <i>v.</i> 起身 |
| 13. obtain [əb'teɪn] <i>v.</i> 获得 | 28. message ['mesɪdʒ] <i>n.</i> 音信, 信号 |
| 14. arrangement [ə'reɪndʒmənt] <i>n.</i>
安排, 排列 | 29. brain [breɪn] <i>n.</i> 腦 |
| 15. pull [pul] <i>v.</i> 拉 | 30. concern [kən'sɜ:n] <i>v.</i> 有关系 |

- | | |
|---|--|
| 31. subject [ˈsʌbdʒɪkt] <i>adj.</i> 易受
to be subject to... 易于... | 37. awake [əˈweɪk] <i>adj.</i> 醒着的 |
| 32. formation [fɔːˈmeɪʃən] <i>n.</i> 形成 | 38. fairly [ˈfeəli] <i>adj.</i> 十分的 |
| 33. act [ækt] <i>n.</i> 动作 | 39. uniform [ˈjuːnɪfɔːm] <i>adj.</i>
一致的, 不变的 |
| 34. precision [priːˈʒɪʒən] <i>n.</i> 精确 | 40. rate [reɪt] <i>n.</i> 速度, 比率 |
| 35. involuntary [ɪnˈvɒləntri] <i>adj.</i>
不随意的 | 41. connect [kəˈnekt] <i>v.</i> 连接, 接合 |
| 36. asleep [əˈsliːp] <i>adj.</i> 睡着的 | 42. digestion [dɪˈdʒestʃən] <i>n.</i> 消化 |
| | 43. process [ˈprəʊses] <i>n.</i> 过程 |

LESSON SEVENTY-TWO

THE STORY OF MIROSLAV JUREK

On a summer day a physician in the Brno Hospital stopped by a bed. Above the bed was the usual board bearing particulars about the patient concerned: "Miroslav Jurek, born October 28, 1935, diagnosis: cartilage." The doctor inquired as to how the patient was progressing. Tears came into the patient's eyes. Instead of replying, he asked himself: "Shall I ever be able to race again?"

The answer to this question was difficult. The operation had been carried out, but after several days the wound began to suppurate. A second operation followed and the patient, who several days before had weighed 60 kgs., lost seven kilogrammes. The physician did not believe that Miroslav Jurek would again appear on the running track. He remembered the past successes of his patient. Newspapers at that time described him as a great hope of Czechoslovak athletics. That was at the time when Emil Zatopek was at the height of his fame.

"We'll do everything possible to get you back on your

feet again," the physician told Jurek.

When Jurek first rose from his hospital bed, he had to learn to walk all over again. The leg still hurt him and there was no thought of the track. He started slowly with weight training exercises in the gym. At first he worked with light dumbbells, getting progressively heavier. Soon he was sent to Piestany Spa, one of the best in the world for the treatment of joint ailments. Jurek, in addition to taking the treatment, carried out exercises on his own.

"I've simply got to run," was the only thought which dominated his mind during a long period of uncertainty. After his return home from Piestany, Jurek began to train for 1500 metres. His tremendous will and boundless zest overcome everything. Afterwards he took part in a race. It was a terrible trial for him. In the middle of the race he thought that he would not be able to stay the distance. He felt great pain in his knee and suddenly was overcome by fatigue, something he had never before experienced.

"I've got to finish" was his only thought. The face of the young athlete was contorted with pain. The physician who had treated him in hospital was rebuking himself for having allowed Jurek to run. Three athletes had already passed Jurek. That's the end," he thought. "Jurek won't be able to finish. I ought not to have allowed him to run."

Then Jurek suddenly shot to the front, like a hunted animal. One after another of his rivals he passed until, in the end, he was up in front with one more lap to be run. And there he stayed, the crowd cheering him on, until he went over the line, the winner in 4:06.0, collapsing on the grass.

That is the story of Miroslav Jurek, the best of Czechoslovakia's 5000 metres runners. His tremendous stamina and determination, his great love for athletics, are guarantees that he will continue to improve.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. physician [fi'ziʃən] <i>n.</i> 医生 | 25. gym = gymnasium [dʒim'neiziəm] <i>n.</i> 体育馆 |
| 2. hospital ['hɒspɪtl] <i>n.</i> 医院 | 26. progressively [prə'gresɪvli] <i>adv.</i> 渐进地 |
| 3. board [bɔ:d] <i>n.</i> 木板 | 27. treatment ['tri:tmənt] <i>n.</i> 治疗, 处理 |
| 4. bear [beə] <i>v.</i> 记载, 负担 | 28. joint [dʒɔɪnt] <i>n.</i> 关节(骨) |
| 5. particular [pə'tɪkjələ] <i>n.</i> 细目, 详细情况(用复数) | 29. ailment ['eɪlmənt] <i>n.</i> 病, 失調 |
| 6. patient ['peɪʃənt] <i>n.</i> 病人 | 30. simply ['sɪmpli] <i>adv.</i> 单纯地 |
| 7. diagnosis [daɪəg'nəʊsɪs] <i>n.</i> 诊断 | 31. dominate ['dɒmɪneɪt] <i>v.</i> 支配, 控制 |
| 8. cartilage ['kɑ:tilɪdʒ] <i>n.</i> 软骨 | 32. uncertainty [ʌn'sə:ʔntɪ] <i>n.</i> 犹豫 |
| 9. doctor ['dɒktə] <i>n.</i> 医生 | 33. tremendous [tri'mendəs] <i>adj.</i> 极大的, 非常的 |
| 10. inquire [ɪn'kwaɪə] <i>v.</i> 询问 | 34. will [wɪl] <i>n.</i> 愿望 |
| 11. progress [prə'gres] <i>v.</i> 进展, 进步 | 35. boundless ['baʊndlɪs] <i>adj.</i> 无限的 |
| 12. tear [tɪə] <i>n.</i> 眼泪 | 36. zest [zest] <i>n.</i> 兴趣, 热心 |
| 13. operation [əpə'reɪʃən] <i>n.</i> 手术(医) | 37. afterwards [ɑ:f'tɔ:wədz] <i>adv.</i> 后来 |
| 14. several ['sevrəl] <i>adj.</i> 几个 | 38. trial ['traɪəl] <i>n.</i> 试验, 考验 |
| 15. wound [wu:nd] <i>n.</i> 伤 | 39. stay [steɪ] <i>v.</i> 停留, 坚持 |
| 16. suppurate ['sʌpjʊəreɪt] <i>v.</i> 化脓 | 40. pain [peɪn] <i>n.</i> 苦痛 |
| 17. success [sək'ses] <i>n.</i> 成功 | 41. fatigue [fə'tɪ:g] <i>n.</i> 疲劳 |
| 18. describe [dɪs'kraɪb] <i>v.</i> 描写 | 42. contort [kən'tɔ:t] <i>v.</i> 扭歪 |
| 19. Czechoslovak ['tʃekou'slɒvæk] <i>adj.</i> 捷克斯洛伐克的 | 43. treat [tri:t] <i>v.</i> 治疗, 处理 |
| 20. fame [feɪm] <i>n.</i> 名声, 盛名 | 44. rebuke [ri'bjʊ:k] <i>v.</i> 谴责 |
| 21. possible ['pɒsəbl] <i>adj.</i> 可能的 | 45. animal ['ænɪməl] <i>n.</i> 动物 |
| 22. hurt [hɜ:t] <i>v.</i> 伤害, 使痛 | 46. rival ['raɪvəl] <i>n.</i> 对手 |
| 23. slowly ['sləʊli] <i>adv.</i> 缓慢地 | |
| 24. dumbbell ['dʌm'bel] <i>n.</i> 哑铃 | |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 47. collapse [kə'leɪps] <i>v.</i> 癱倒 | 50. stamina ['stæmɪnə] <i>n.</i> 精力 |
| 48. Czechoslovakia ['tʃekəʊsləv-
vækiə] 捷克斯洛伐克 | 51. determination [dɪtə'mɪ'neɪʃən] <i>n.</i> 決心 |
| 49. grass [grɑ:s] <i>n.</i> 草地 | 52. guarantee [gærən'ti:] <i>n.</i> 保證 |

LESSON SEVENTY-THREE

REVISION EXERCISES

I. 翻譯以下短語，注意其在課文中的用法：

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| to draw lots | the choice of |
| to take up position | a series of |
| by means of | a set of |
| to see to | in this case |
| in case of | to end in a draw |
| to keep on | either . . . or |
| to assume position | to be ready to |
| the distance to be covered | to be relieved by |
| instead of | in advance of |
| in front of | to be composed of |
| to vary in size | a number of |
| to be provided for | under control |
| to take place | to be subject to |
| to lead to | to be responsible for |
| to be connected with | to carry out |
| in addition to | to stay the distance |

II. 翻譯下列句子：

- The team that wins keeps on competing with other contenders.
- The team that scores the highest points in the com-

petition will be awarded the cup.

3. The coach assisted by some players is responsible for preparing the court for the game.
4. A referee assisted by two linesmen rules the game.
5. The runner first to pass through the finish line will win the first place.
6. His ability to use English has been acquired through several year's hard study.
7. No player but the centre-forward in their team can shoot hard and accurately.
8. No other person but a strongman can lift up such weight.
9. It is permissible for a goal-keeper to handle, to kick or to head the ball.
10. It is not allowed for a basketballer to kick the ball in the game.
11. The students concerned will take part in the meeting and study the plan.
12. The prizes were given to the athletes concerned.
13. The coach inquires as to how the players are progressing in learning the new skill.
14. Different opinions arose as to how to win the game.
15. We shall do everything possible to help him getting out of his difficulties.
16. He has nothing serious to tell us.
17. Is there anything new in to-day's paper?

III. 从以上四个课文中找出和下列单词、短语在意义上相同的单词或短语

to take up position to try to
to take the ball with one's hand

to be given to
to rule
to include
before
to acquire
to ask
enthusiastic
to fall down

to replace
to fight
permissible
different
to cause
to care for
to be persistent
opponent

LESSON SEVENTY-FOUR

GENERAL FOOTWORK IN TABLE TENNIS

By Ann Hayden

As I have said before, table tennis is one of the fastest ball games. Quick reflexes and quick reactions are essential to good play, but obviously both of these are more or less useless unless you acquire the necessary speed and lightness of foot, coupled with a sense of anticipation.

In national championships matches may take over an hour, and the player is on the balls of the feet during the whole of that time. A top-class player rarely rests back on his heels and is on the move for as long as the ball is in play. Training for footwork, therefore, must consist of running, sprinting and five minutes' skipping per day to produce lightness and speed. Average-sized persons usually make the best players, but taller, heavier folk can take heart from Ference Sido, Ivan Andreadis and Ladislav Stipek, all world champions, despite their bulk.

Footwork during play is not so difficult as it may seem at first, once the player has grasped the idea that the corners of the table are not so far from the centre after all! That may sound stupid, but the beginner is usually apt to play his stroke—whatever it may be—and remain in the same spot and in the same end-of-stroke position until his opponent has hit the next shot past him. The golden rule is always to finish off your stroke as quickly as possible and return to the “ready” stance in the centre of the table. If you move both your feet to the right, move back to the left again immediately you have finished your stroke. Eventually you will find either by knowing your opponent’s game, or by experience of angles, that you will be able to anticipate where your opponent will place his next shot. Anticipation is half the battle won in any sport, and it is something that only comes after much hard work. From the square central position any ball can be reached with one or two steps, and as long as you remember to move speedily back you should have no difficulty against other players of your own standard. This movement should eliminate any need for running from corner to corner, two or at the most three steps should be sufficient. By the way, never reach for the ball. Get your feet there before making any stroke.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. footwork [ˈfʊtˈwɜ:k] <i>n.</i> | 5. acquire [əˈkwaɪə] <i>v.</i> 获得 |
| 脚步动作 | 6. lightness [ˈlaɪtnɪs] <i>n.</i> 敏捷, 輕快 |
| 2. reflex [ˈriːfleks] <i>n.</i> 反射, 反映 | 7. couple [ˈkʌpl] <i>v.</i> 結合, 伴隨 |
| 3. reaction [riˈækʃən] <i>n.</i> 反应 | 8. anticipation [æntɪsɪˈpeɪʃən] <i>n.</i> |
| 4. unless [ənˈles] <i>conj.</i> 除非 | 预料 |

9. sense [sens] *n.* 意識, 感覺
10. top-class ['tɒpk'lɑ:s] *adj.*
第一流的
11. rarely ['reəli] *adv.* 難得, 很少
12. rest [rest] *v.* 放置, 靠
rest on 靠在...
13. heel [hi:l] *n.* 腳跟
14. therefore ['ðəfɔ:] *adv.* 因此
15. consist [kən'sist] *v.* 組成
consist of... 由...組成
16. skip [skip] *v.* 跳躍, 跳繩
17. per [pə:] *prep.* 每一
18. average-sized ['ævərɪdʒ saɪzd]
adj. 一般身材的
19. folk [fouk] *n.* 人
20. despite [dis'paɪt] *prep.* 不管
21. bulk [bʌlk] *n.* 龐大
22. seem [si:m] *v.* 似乎是
23. grasp [grɑ:sp] *v.* 領會, 掌握
24. sound [saund] *v.* 听起来似乎是
25. stupid ['stju:pɪd] *adj.* 愚蠢的
26. apt [æpt] *adj.* 易于, 傾向于
27. stroke [strouk] *n.* 击球动作
28. whatever [hwət'evə] *prep.*
不論什麼
29. remain [ri'meɪn] *v.* 停留在
30. spot [spɒt] *n.* 地點
31. hit [hit] *v.* 打, 击
32. golden ['gouldən] *adj.*
寶貴的, 金色的
33. stance [stæns] *n.* 姿勢
34. eventually [i'ventʃuəli] *adv.*
最后, 終於
35. angle ['æŋɡl] *n.* 角度
36. anticipate [æn'tɪsɪpeɪt] *v.* 預料
37. square [skweə] *adj.* 四方形的
38. central ['sentrəl] *adj.*
中央的, 中心的
39. step [step] *n.* 步
40. standard ['stændəd] *n.*
水平, 标准
41. eliminate [i'lɪmɪneɪt] *v.*
消除, 免除
42. sufficient [sə'fɪʃənt] *adj.*
足够的, 充分的

LESSON SEVENTY-FIVE

AGE NOT DECISIVE IN SPORT

"What fine athlete he used to be! What a pity he can't be expected to last out much longer, he is over 30."

This type of comment can often be heard not only from fans but from sportsmen themselves. It raises one of the major problems in sports—the problem of longevity.

A study of the life of our sports clubs presents great contrasts. We can see athletes who are still improving their results at the age of 35 and even 40.

On the other hand we are sad witnesses of cases when young gifted athletes, for whom much more is possible, don't improve after the age of 20-25.

However, there are instances when a change in the pattern of training can bring about a swift improvement in the results of an athlete and he rapidly advances to the leading ranks of our top sportsmen.

Why does this happen? Is the age limit the main criterion? Does it determine what an athlete can do, what will be his future?

Living conditions and the standards of welfare of our people allow for the preservation of a good sports form for many years.

LONGEVITY

The instances of sports longevity are numerous. Take the examples of Y. Kutsenko, N. Shatov, J. Kotkas, A. Mazur, merited masters of sports, and of many others who have shown spectacular results at the age of 35-40. Remember the recent Olympic Games.

Out of 52 Soviet athletes who had won Olympic titles 11 were 30 years of age and even older. I, for one, and T. Lomakin, my team-mate, broke world weightlifting records in Rome and we are both 36 years old.

I think that we owe this to our coaches and doctors, to our scientists because the present records in all sports events are so high that international class results are impossible without a method of training that is founded on scientific principles, without the closest co-operation between the coach, the athlete and the doctor.

Thus, age is not the decisive factor in sports longevity.

Rather it is the conditions in which the athlete lives and trains. I have come to this conclusion from my own experience and from that of my athlete friends.

SKILL

Our sports experts are not unanimous on this point. Millions of people go in for physical training in our country.

Young gifted athletes are continually augmenting the army of Soviet sportsmen; young blood is regularly renovating our teams. And yet sometimes our coaches and experts err gravely by putting all their stakes on youth. We all know that youth always lacks experience.

Experience and skill which make for top results come only with time. Yet athletes who are no longer young, but are already experienced, can be classed by some coaches as holding out little promise.

What the coaches should do is not only to encourage the influx of young blood but do everything possible to stretch the active sports life of an experienced athlete.

The length of active life in sports depends on the observance of a strict daily schedule, on the regularity with which the athlete has trained throughout the year and also on his participation in a definite number of important contests.

MY EXPERIENCE

My own experience tells me an athlete who is more than 30 years old should not often take part in meets where he has to strain himself to the utmost.

This is because the recovery processes in an organism of that age, and particularly in the nervous system, has slowed down.

An athlete over 30 should not go in for more than 3 major

meets each year, and there must be an interval of not less than 2-3 months between them.

This applies only to those who are over 30. Younger athletes should try their best seven or eight times a year and will benefit from it. However even in this case, every individual should have a certain limit.

We have every requisite for the successful development of our physical culture. The achievements of Soviet athletes are continually improving. Our progress will be even more assured if we solve the problem of longevity in sports.

by Arkady Vorobyev

Doctor, Merited Master of Sports,
Champion of the 17th Olympic Games,
Many Times Champion of the World

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. age [eidʒ] <i>n.</i> 年龄 | 15. contrast ['kɒntræst] <i>n.</i> 对照, 差别 |
| 2. decisive [di'saɪsɪv] <i>adj.</i> 决定性的 | 16. witness ['wɪtnɪs] <i>n.</i> 证明, 证人 |
| 3. fine [faɪn] <i>adj.</i> 优秀的, 好的 | 17. gifted ['gɪftɪd] <i>adj.</i> 有天才的 |
| 4. pity ['pɪtɪ] <i>n.</i> 可惜的事 | 18. instance ['ɪnstəns] <i>n.</i> 实例 |
| 5. expect [ɪks'pekt] <i>v.</i> 期待, 指望 | 19. pattern ['pætən] <i>n.</i> 花样, 打法 |
| 6. type [taɪp] <i>n.</i> 类型, 种类 | 20. swift [swɪft] <i>adj.</i> 迅速的 |
| 7. comment ['kɒmənt] <i>n.</i> 评论 | 21. rapidly ['ræpɪdli] <i>adj.</i> 迅速地 |
| 8. raise [reɪz] <i>v.</i> 引起 | 22. advance [əd'vɑːns] <i>v.</i> 前进 |
| 9. major ['meɪdʒə] <i>adj.</i> 重要的, 主要的 | 23. rank [ræŋk] <i>n.</i> 等级, 行列 |
| 10. problem ['prɒbləm] <i>n.</i> 问题 | 24. limit [lɪmɪt] <i>n.</i> 限度, 限制 |
| 11. longevity [lɒn'dʒɛvɪtɪ] <i>n.</i> 寿命, 长寿 | 25. main [meɪn] <i>adj.</i> 主要的 |
| 12. study ['stʌdi] <i>n.</i> 研究 | 26. criterion [kraɪ'tɪərɪən] <i>n.</i> (批评, 判断的) 标准 |
| 13. club [klʌb] <i>n.</i> 俱乐部 | 27. determine [dɪ'tɜːmɪn] <i>v.</i> 决定 |
| 14. present ['priːznt] <i>v.</i> 呈现 | 28. welfare ['welfeə] <i>n.</i> 福利 |

29. preservation [prə'sɜ:vəʃən] *n.*
保持, 保存
30. numerous ['nju:mərəs] *adj.*
大批的
31. merited ['meritɪd] *adj.* 功勳的
32. master ['mɑ:stə] *n.* 健將
33. weightlifting [weɪt'liftɪŋ] *n.*
舉重
34. present ['prezənt] *adj.*
現在的, 目前的
35. found [faʊnd] *v.* 建立
36. factor ['fæktə] *n.* 因素
37. conclusion [kən'klu:ʃən] *n.* 結論
38. unanimous [ju:'nænɪməs] *adj.*
一致的
39. continually [kən'tɪnjuəli] *adv.*
不斷地
40. augment [ə:g'ment] *v.*
加大, 壯大
41. renovate ['renoveɪt] *vt.* 更新
42. gravely [greɪvli] *adv.* 嚴重地
43. stake [steɪk] *n.* 賭本
44. lack [læk] *v.* 缺乏
45. hold [həʊld] *v.* 握 hold out 保持
46. influx ['ɪnflʌks] *n.* 注入
47. length [leŋθ] *n.* 長度
48. observance [əb'se:vəns] *n.* 遵守
49. schedule ['ʃedju:lɪ] *n.*
時間表, 預定的計劃
50. regularity [regju'lærɪti] *n.*
規律性, 經常性
51. throughout [θru:'aʊt] *prep.* 遍于
52. participation [pɑ:tɪ'si:'peɪʃən] *n.*
參加, 出席
53. contest ['kɒntəst] *n.* 競賽, 比賽
54. strain [streɪn] *v.* 使勞累, 使緊張
55. utmost ['ʌtməʊst] *n.* 極限
56. recovery [ri'kʌvəri] *n.* 恢復
57. particularly [pə'tɪkjʊləli] *adj.*
特別
58. system [sɪstəm] *n.* 系統
59. interval ['ɪntəvəl] *n.* 間隔
60. apply [ə'plai] *v.* 適用於
61. benefit ['benɪfɪt] *v.* 獲益
benefit from... 从...得到好處
62. requisite ['rekwɪzɪt] *n.* 必要條件
63. successful [sək'sesfʊl] *adj.*
成功的
64. achievement [ə'tʃi:vmənt] *n.*
成就
65. assure [ə'ʃʊə] *v.* 保証
66. solve [sɒlv] *v.* 解決

LESSON SEVENTY-SIX

BASKETBALL GAME (I)

Modern basketball is fast, requiring sudden burst of speed and instant stops. The players should run as fast as the fastest

sprinters. So fast that in some situations the ball is passed at speeds up to 41 miles an hour. And yet, even at such great speeds, the game of basketball demands the finest of control and coordination.

It demands stamina. In a hard game, and at such speeds, players will often run as much as 4 or 5 miles during the course of the game. And above all, it demands the calm precision and accurate control that enables a player to find his target quickly in the rush and pressure of the game and to shoot accurately over long distances.

A further requirement, and a most essential one is what basketball players call wide angle vision, the ability to look straight ahead, and still see and recognize players on both sides. You must be able to see action on either side without looking at it if you expect to play successful basketball.

Five men make a basketball team—a center, two forwards and two guards.

When a game starts each team tries to score in its own basket which is at the opposite end of the floor and the opposing team tries to prevent them from reaching their basket.

The game is divided into certain time periods, consisting of two twenty-minute periods with a ten minute intermission between halves.

The referee puts the ball in play by what is called a center jump. The referee tosses the ball between the two opposing centers and they try to tap the ball toward a teammate by jumping for it.

When a player gets the ball he must advance it toward his own basket—the one the opposing team is guarding. He must not run with the ball. It's a violation of the rules to

take more than one step while either hand is touching the ball.

He can advance the ball by dribbling—that is by running and bouncing the ball as he goes. In this way his hand is not in contact with the ball for more than a single step at a time.

However, if he stops his dribble and touches the ball with both hands, he can not dribble again. He must get rid of the ball either by passing the ball to a teammate or shooting at the basket.

(to be continued)

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. instant ['ɪnstənt] <i>adj.</i>
立即的, 瞬間的 | 10. prevent [pri'vent] <i>vt.</i> 防止
prevent... from... 防止...做... |
| 2. situation [sitju'eɪʃən] <i>n.</i>
情况, 形勢 | 11. divide [di'vaɪd] <i>v.</i> 划分 |
| 3. course [kɔ:s] <i>n.</i> 过程, 进行 | 12. period ['piəriəd] <i>n.</i>
时期, 部分時間 |
| 4. accurate [ækjʊərɪt] <i>adj.</i> 准确的 | 13. intermission [ɪntə'mɪʃən] <i>n.</i>
間隔, 中斷時間 |
| 5. enable [ə'neɪbl] 使...能够 | 14. tap [tæp] <i>v.</i> 輕拍 |
| 6. target ['tɑ:ɡɪt] <i>n.</i> 目标 | 15. violation [vaɪə'leɪʃən] <i>n.</i>
違背, 違犯 |
| 7. pressure ['preʃə] <i>n.</i> 紧急, 压力 | 16. bounce [daʊns] <i>v.</i> 彈跳, 跳起 |
| 8. vision ['vɪʒən] <i>n.</i> 視力, 視覺 | 17. get rid of [get rid əf] 排除, 摆脱 |
| 9. recognize ['rekəɡnaɪz] <i>vt.</i>
認識, 辨別 | |

LESSON SEVENTY-SEVEN

BASKETBALL GAME (II)

There are no restrictions on how he may pass. He can pass overhand or under-hand, with one hand or two hands.

He can throw it through the air, bounce it or roll it across the floor, or he can hand it to a teammate.

And there are no restrictions on shooting. Here, too, he may shoot overhand, underhand, with one hand or two.

A team scores by throwing the ball through its own basket from the top downward. The ball must enter from the top and come out through the bottom. After a score the ball becomes dead. To put it back in play, the other team takes it out of bounds under the basket and throws or bounces it into the playing area. The play resumes just as before.

For certain infractions of the rules, the penalty is one or two free throws awarded to the team which is fouled. One player stands behind the line in the free throw circle and tries to throw the ball through his basket.

If he succeeds in getting the ball through the basket on a free throw, his team scores one point for each successful throw.

On every basket made during play, the team making the basket receives two points. This is known as a Field Goal. The team that scores the most points during the game wins.

There are many other rules in basketball. They are all explained in the official rule books. Every beginner should study the rule books until he knows all the rules thoroughly.

Basketball can be one of the fastest, most dazzling of all team sports. It requires excellent team-work with perfect coordination between players. But, most important, before that perfect cooperation is possible, every player must be competent in all phases of the game. . . in ball handling, dribbling, passing, shooting, guarding and maneuvering.

And he must learn to do all this with a minimum of bo-

dily contact with his opponent. Not roughness, but skill, not brute strength but endurance and stamina are the keys to success in basketball.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. restriction [ris'triksjən] <i>n.</i> 限制 | 13. succeed [sək'si:d] <i>v.</i> 成功 |
| 2. overhand ['ouvə'hænd] <i>adj.</i> 肩上 | 14. thoroughly ['θʌrəli] <i>adv.</i>
完全地, 彻底地 |
| 3. underhand ['ʌndə'hænd] <i>adj.</i>
低手 | 15. dazzle ['dæzl] <i>v.</i> 使人眼花 |
| 4. downward ['daunwəd] <i>adv.</i>
往下, 向下 | 16. perfect ['pə:fɪkt] <i>adj.</i> 完善的 |
| 5. enter ['entə] <i>v.</i> 进入 | 17. competent ['kɒmpitənt] <i>adj.</i>
胜任的, 有能力的 |
| 6. bottom ['bɒtəm] <i>n.</i> 底部 | 18. minimum ['mɪnɪmə] <i>n.</i> |
| 7. dead [ded] <i>adj.</i> 死的 | 最底限度, 最小量 |
| 8. bound [baund] <i>n.</i> 界綫 | 19. bodily ['bɒdɪli] <i>adj.</i> 身体的 |
| 9. resume [ri'zjum] <i>v.</i> 重新开始 | 20. roughness ['ʌfəns] <i>n.</i> 粗暴 |
| 10. infraction [ɪn'frækʃən] <i>n.</i> 违犯 | 21. brute [bru:t] <i>n.</i> 野蛮 |
| 11. foul [faul] <i>v.</i> 犯規, 做粗暴动作 | 22. key [ki:] <i>n.</i> 鑰匙, 關鍵 |
| 12. circle ['sɜ:kl] <i>n.</i> 圓圈 | 23. phases [feɪz] <i>n.</i> 方面 |

LESSON SEVENTY-EIGHT

REVISION EXERCISES

I. 翻譯以下短語, 注意其在課文中的用法:

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| as long as | to consist of |
| to take heart from | after all |
| to be apt to | by the way |
| on the other hand | to bring about |
| to owe something to | to come to the conclusion |
| to put one's stakes on | no longer |

| | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| to hold out | to depend on |
| to strain oneself to the utmost | |
| to try one's best | to benefit from |
| so . . . that | above all |
| to prevent from | to succeed in |
| to get rid of | in contact with |
| to be competent in | a minimum of |

II. 翻譯:

1. Excellent team work with perfect coordination between players is essential to good basketball game.
2. Learning the new skill for him is essential to improving his performance.
3. Quick reflexes and quick reactions coupled with a sense of anticipation are essential to good play.
4. As long as he gets the ball, he manages to pass it to the centre-forward.
5. An athlete should not undertake more than three major meets each year as long as he is over thirty.
6. What a pity that he could not strain himself to the utmost to lift up the weight during the contest.
7. It is a great pity that he don't manage to improve himself after the age of 25.
8. The basketball game is so fast that each player should run as fast as a sprinter.
9. His age is so old that he can not take part in any meet again.
10. His great love for sports, his tremendous stamina, coupled with a scientific training method, are guarantees that he will continue to improve.
11. Out of twenty-five students in the class there were

ten who got 5 in the last English test.

12. There are three high-jumpers who can jump over two metres out of ten high-jumpers in our institute.
13. It is a violation of the rules for a runner to run before hearing the final signal in a race.
14. Our Party and government offer every requisite for developing physical culture and sports.
15. After training for several months, the players have every reason to say that they are in top form.

Ⅲ. 从以上课文中找出与下列单词、短语在意义上相同的单词、短语:

| | |
|-------------------|--------------|
| very important | clearly |
| to obtain | a feeling of |
| to consist of | to expect |
| enough | problem |
| to show | example |
| to decide | competition |
| advantage | to need |
| in some situation | requisite |
| first-class | |

LESSON SEVENTY-NINE

WARMING UP

The process which elicits the acute physiological changes that prepare the organism for strenuous physical performance is known as "warming up." Warming up improves performance and prevents injury in vigorous activities by two essential means.

First, a rehearsal of the skill before competition commences, fixes in the athlete's neuromuscular coordinating system the exact nature of the impending task. It also heightens his kinesthetic senses. Execution of shots in billiards, taking a few serves in tennis, or shooting a few baskets brings into focus the precise movements which will be employed in the game, thus enhancing performance when the game begins.

Second, the rise in body temperature facilitates the biochemical reactions supplying energy for muscular contractions. Elevated body temperature also shortens the periods of muscular relaxations and aids in reducing stiffness. As a result of these two processes there is an improvement in accuracy, strength and speed of movement, and an increase in tissue elasticity which lessens the liability to injury.

The value of warming up exercises to improve performance in endurance events, which have low elements of skill, speed or strength, is questionable.

To gain the greatest benefit from the warming up procedures, they should imitate as closely as possible the movements which are to be used in the event. Warming up with a heavier implement, or using two bats or clubs, will impair coordination. If such overweight objects are used for the purpose of raising body temperature, they should be discarded well before the event is to commence, and the warm up should continue with an instrument which is to be employed in the event.

The duration of the warm-up period varies with the event. In ballet, the dancers spend two hours before the performance, commencing with very light movements and

gradually increasing the intensity and range of motions until the moment before their appearance. This, they feel, reduces the risk of a pulled muscle which would destroy the perfection of their movements. Marathon runners simply report to the starting area and await the starting gun. There may be individual variations in the need for a warm up, and the coach provides for this by scheduling arrival at the field of play at least half an hour in advance of the time the event is to commence.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. elicit [i'lisit] <i>v.</i> 引起 | 14. execution [eksɪ'kju:ʃən] <i>n.</i> 做, 实行 |
| 2. acute [ə'kju:t] <i>adj.</i> 尖锐的, 剧烈的 | 15. billiards ['bɪljədz] <i>n.</i> 打弹子游戏 |
| 3. physiological [fɪzɪ'ɒlədʒɪkəl] <i>adj.</i> 生理的, 生理学的 | 16. tennis ['tenɪs] <i>n.</i> 网球 |
| 4. strenuous [strenjuəs] <i>adj.</i> 紧张的, 费力的 | 17. focus ['foukəs] <i>n.</i> 焦点, 中心 |
| 5. performance [pə'fɔ:məns] <i>n.</i> 动作, 表演, 成绩 | 18. precise [pri'saɪs] <i>adj.</i> 精确的 |
| 6. rehearsal [ri'hɜ:səl] <i>n.</i> 演习, 预演, 讲述 | 19. employ [em'plɔɪ] <i>v.</i> 应用, 使用 |
| 7. commence [kə'mens] <i>v.</i> 开始 | 20. enhance [ɪn'hɑ:ns] <i>v.</i> 增加, 加大 |
| 8. fix [fɪks] <i>v.</i> 注入, 固定 | 21. temperature [ˈtempərətʃə] <i>n.</i> 体温, 温度 |
| 9. neuromuscular [nju:ərəu'mas-kjulə] <i>adj.</i> 神经肌肉的 | 22. facilitate [fə'sɪlɪteɪt] <i>v.</i> 使便利 |
| 10. exact [ɪg'zækt] <i>adj.</i> 正确的, 确切的 | 23. biochemical [ˈbaɪə'kemɪkəl] <i>adj.</i> 生物化学的 |
| 11. impending [ɪm'pendɪŋ] <i>adj.</i> 迫切的 | 24. contraction [kən'trækʃən] <i>n.</i> 收缩紧张 |
| 12. heighten ['haɪtən] <i>v.</i> 增高 | 25. elevate [ˈelɪveɪt] <i>v.</i> 升高, 抬高 |
| 13. kinesthetic [ˈkɪnəs'tetɪk] <i>adj.</i> 肌肉运动的 | 26. relaxation [rɪlæksɪ'ʃən] <i>n.</i> 放松 |
| | 27. aid [eɪd] <i>v.</i> 帮助 |
| | 28. stiffness [ˈstɪfnɪs] <i>n.</i> 僵硬 |

29. tissue ['tɪʃu:] *n.* 組織(生物)
30. elasticity [i:'læs'tisiti] *n.* 彈性
31. lessen ['lesən] *v.* 減輕, 減少
32. liability [laɪə'biliti] *n.*
易遭, 傾向
33. value ['vælju:] *n.* 價值
34. element ['elɪmənt] *n.*
因素, 分子
35. questionable ['kwɛstʃənəbl] *adj.*
可疑的
36. procedure [prə'si:dʒə] *n.*
程序, 方法
37. imitate ['imiteit] *v.* 模倣
38. implement ['ɪmplɪmənt] *n.*
器具, 器械
39. bat [bæt] *n.* 打球棒
40. impair [ɪm'peə] *v.* 減少, 損害
41. club [klʌb] *n.* 棍棒, 高爾夫球棒
42. discard [dɪs'kɑ:d] *v.* 廢棄
43. duration [dʒuə'reɪʃən] *n.*
持續, 持續期
44. ballet ['bæleɪ] *n.* 芭蕾舞
45. intensity [ɪn'tensiti] *n.*
強度, 劇烈
46. range ['reɪndʒ] *n.* 範圍
47. appearance [ə'piərəns] *n.*
出現, 出場
48. perfection [pə'fɛkʃən] *n.*
完善, 完美
49. area ['eəriə] *n.* 區域
50. await [ə'weɪt] *v.* 等候
51. variation [və'reɪ'eiʃən] *n.*
變化, 種類
52. schedule ['ʃedju:l] *v.*
制訂表格, 安排
53. arrival [ə'raɪvəl] *n.* 到達

LESSON EIGHTY

AMBITIONS? POSSIBILITIES? LIMITS? (I)

Are there any limits to man's achievements in sports? Are the developments over the past hundred years approaching the ceilings?

The answer is that there are limits, but no one can yet say what they are.

Various "limits" tables have appeared in various countries from time to time. So what? What seemed to be the most fantastic results were in time bettered. The tables were not based on any scientific research and so could not

be relied upon. More than that, they even gave rise to certain psychological difficulties in some athletes and hampered their progress. It is difficult to determine the actual possibilities of human effort and thorough research is necessary. This is still to come.

LATENT RESERVES

As things stand today, however, we can say that from the data available there is much room for improvement on existing records.

Physiology teaches us that every man possesses a vast amount of latent reserves. This has to be remembered by all athletes. These latent reserves, however, are not usually brought into play in ordinary circumstances. The desire alone proves insufficient. What is necessary is a very powerful emotional stimulus, greatly intensifying the activities of the central nervous system. Anger, fear and similar emotions can bring these hidden forces into action.

Emotional excitement is aroused in an athlete by competition. Yet it is not powerful enough a stimulus to touch all his latent reserves. This means that he should not fully rely on the help of the emotional factor in cases like this. The main means of stepping up the efficiency lie in his central nervous system, which can be developed and strengthened. This is done by careful training and participation in competitions, by increasing the requirements and laying emphasis on the psychological factor and the athlete's willpower. Apart from that all factors impeding the manifestation of maximum strength should be eliminated.

Psychological Barriers

These factors may be various. Some are usually referred to as "psychological barriers". These can also be of different kinds. One sportsman can keep telling himself that he will never be able to outdo a famous champion. He may be able to defeat any rival, in fact, but shrink at the thought of pitting his skill against the champion. Another may be too nervous, convinced that it is not for him to set records, that this is the prerogative of the "elite".

practice shows that this is the usual thing with records. Athletes may approach quite near to them, and yet prove unable to overcome the last barrier. The very word "record" acts like magic and deprives them of all willpower. It may take years before an athlete appears who manages to overcome the psychological barrier" and improve the record.

Take this example, for instance. Several years ago the 60 m. hammer throw seemed a fantastic dream. Many physically fit athlete trained all their life and still failed to reach that distance. Then one valiant soul threw farther, and immediately several more followed suit. Today the world record is more than 68 metres, and dozens of athletes have gone over the 60 metre mark after only two or three years of training.

(to be continued)

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. ambition [æm'biʃən] <i>n.</i> | 3. approach [ə'prəʊtʃ] <i>v.</i> |
| 雄心, 大志 | 接近, 达到 |
| 2. possibility [pɒsɪ'bɪləti] <i>n.</i> | 4. ceiling ['si:lɪŋ] <i>n.</i> 天花板 |
| 可能性 | 5. various ['veəriəs] <i>adj.</i> 不同的 |

6. fantastic [fæn'tæstɪk] *adj.*
幻想的
7. better ['betə] *v.* 使更好, 提高
8. rely [ri'laɪ] *v.* 依靠,
rely(up)on... 依靠于...
9. base [beɪs] *v.*
基于, 置于...基础上
10. psychological [saɪkə'lɒdʒɪkəl] *adj.*
心理的, 心理学的
11. hamper ['hæmpə] *v.* 妨碍
12. latent ['leɪtənt] *adj.* 潜在的
13. reserve [ri'zə:v] *n.* 后备力量
14. data [deɪtə] *n.* 资料
15. available [ə'veɪləbl] *adj.* 可靠的
16. exist [ɪg'zɪst] *v.* 存在
17. physiology [fɪzi'ɒlədʒi] *n.*
生理学
18. vast [vɑ:st] *adj.* 巨大的
19. amount [ə'maʊnt] *n.* 数量
20. ordinary ['ɔ:dɪnəri] *adj.*
普通的, 平常的
21. circumstance [sə:kəmstəns] *n.*
环境
22. desire [di'zaɪə] *n.* 慾望, 希望
23. alone [ə'ləʊn] *adj.*
仅只, 独自的
24. prove [pru:v] *v.* 証明
25. insufficient [ɪnsə'fɪʃənt] *adj.*
不足的
26. powerful ['paʊəfʊl] *adj.*
有力的
27. emotional [ɪ'məʊʃənl] *adj.*
情感的
28. stimulus ['stɪmjʊləs] *n.* 刺激
29. intensify [ɪn'tensɪfaɪ] *v.* 加强
30. anger [æŋgə] *n.* 怒气
31. similar ['sɪmɪlə] *adj.* 类似的
32. emotion [ɪ'məʊʃən] *n.* 情感
33. hidden ['hɪdn] *adj.* 隐藏的
34. action ['ækʃən] *n.* 动作
35. excitement [ɪk'saɪtmənt] *n.*
兴奋
36. arouse [ə'raʊz] *v.* 唤起
37. efficiency [e'fɪʃiənsi] *n.* 效率
38. lie [laɪ] *v.* 躺, 坐落, lie in...
在于...
39. emphasis [em'fæsɪs] *n.* 强调
40. willpower ['wɪl'paʊə] *n.*
意志力
41. impede [ɪm'pi:d] *v.* 阻碍
42. manifestation [mænɪfəs'teɪʃən]
n. 表现
43. maximum ['mæksɪmə] *n.*
最大限度, 最大量
44. barrier ['bæriə] *n.* 阻拦
45. refer [rɪ'fə:] *v.* 归因于...
46. outdo [aʊt'du:] *v.* 超过
47. famous ['feɪməs] *adj.* 著名的
48. shrink [frɪŋk] *v.* 退缩
49. pit [pɪt] *v.* 对抗
50. convince [kən'vɪns] *v.*
使相信, 說服
51. elite [eɪ'li:t] *n.* 名流
52. prerogative [pri'rɒɡətɪv] *n.*
特权
53. unable [ʌn'eɪbl] *adj.*
不可能的, 不能的
54. act [ækt] *v.* 扮演

- | | |
|---|--|
| 55. magic ['mædʒɪk] <i>n.</i> 魔术 | 59. fit [fɪt] <i>adj.</i> 合适的, 健康的 |
| 56. deprive ['dɪpraɪv] <i>v.</i> 剥夺
deprive...of... 剥夺某人的... | 60. valiant ['veɪliənt] <i>adj.</i> 勇敢的 |
| 57. manage ['mænɪdʒ] <i>v.</i> 设法 | 61. soul [saʊl] <i>n.</i> 灵魂(指人) |
| 58. dream [dri:m] <i>v.</i> 梦想 | 62. farther ['fɑ:ðə] <i>adj.</i> 更远的 |
| | 63. dozen ['dɒzn] <i>n.</i>
一打(十二个), 许多 |

LESSON EIGHTY-ONE

AMBITIONS? POSSIBILITIES? LIMITS? (II)

Stamina And Firm Conviction

Only a short while ago our high-jumpers used to assert that the two-metre cross-bar was beyond their limits. There were many cases of a sportsman clearing 195 cm. and it seemed that were the bar to be lifted 10 or 15 cm. he would manage it all the same. Yet as soon as it went up even 5 cm. the athlete lost all confidence and moved as if bound hand and foot.

What is the position now? Y. Stepanov, for one, has cleared 2 m. 16 cm. and no one is afraid of the 2 m., it having ceased to be a psychological barrier. There are many Soviet athletes who have surpassed it.

One can argue that techniques and methods of training have improved. That's true. Yet, the main thing about overcoming the psychological barrier remains an athlete's stamina and firm conviction that the goal must and can be achieved.

To attain the next-to-impossible an athlete first and foremost has to be bold, and must bravely storm the highest.

peaks. The first step on the way towards revealing his latent potentialities is to explain to him the physiological mechanism of the reserves, using the most vivid examples, and convince him that he can do considerably better.

The second step is to increase the number of competitions he takes part in, which will help him to develop his willpower and learn how to compete and win.

In every single competition the athlete should strive to attain results he might never have dreamed of before. This is the third step. It is such a pity when, say, a skier or long-distance runner arrives at the finish with a certain amount of unspent energy left. It means that he could have shown better results.

No. 1 Runner In The World

If Kuts had followed this practice he would have never become No. 1 runner in the world. Many people still remember his performances over the 5,000 and 10,000 m. distances in 1952 and 1953. He rushed forward, as if into the attack, from the very start and proceeded at a pace which was beyond his capabilities. Then he was obliged to slacken speed somewhat, grew very tired, and arrived at the finish behind other runners. Yet these bold attempts finally led to outstanding victories and many Olympic gold medals.

Are there many athletes who are as daring as Kuts was in their attempts at rowing, swimming, running, speed skating or skiing? No, very few, unfortunately. On the contrary, there are too many who are unwilling to try, to take the risk, who are too cautious and inclined to rely on tactics.

There is every ground for stating that great progress can be expected within the near future in a number of sports. If, for instance, an athlete who covers 100 m. in 11 sec. were to be trained over long distances, he could cover the 5,000 and 10,000 m. distances in 12 min. 58 sec. and 26 min. 40 sec. respectively. This is explained by the presence of a certain connection between maximum speed over a short distance and average speed over a specialized distance.

* * * * * * * * *

To conclude I should like to say that athletes to-day have a long way to go before they reach the limit. They are nearer to it so far as speed is concerned but farther away in strength and still farther in endurance.

An awareness of their vast hidden reserves would open up great prospects for improving performances. It is clear, however, that outstanding results can be achieved only by well-trained athletes. If physical fitness is not up to the mark or skill insufficient, then even the greatest will in the world to set up a record will be of no avail.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. conviction [kən'vikʃən] <i>n.</i> 信念</p> | <p>10. argue ['ɑ:gju:] <i>v.</i> 爭辯, 爭論</p> |
| <p>2. assert [ə'sə:t] <i>v.</i> 宣稱</p> | <p>11. technique [tek'ni:k] <i>n.</i> 技術</p> |
| <p>3. beyond [bi'jənd] <i>prep.</i>
在...之外</p> | <p>12. remain [ri'mein] <i>v.</i> 仍然是</p> |
| <p>4. clear [kliə] <i>v.</i> 跳過</p> | <p>13. attain [ə'tein] <i>v.</i> 獲得, 達到</p> |
| <p>5. bar [bɑ:] <i>n.</i> 竿</p> | <p>14. next-to-impossible ['nekstəim'pəsibl] <i>adj.</i>
能力所達到的最高度</p> |
| <p>6. confidence ['kɒnfɪdəns] <i>n.</i> 信心</p> | <p>15. storm [stɔ:m] <i>v.</i> 沖擊</p> |
| <p>7. bind [baɪnd] <i>v.</i> 綁住</p> | <p>16. foremost ['fɔ:məʊst] <i>adj.</i>
首要的</p> |
| <p>8. cease [si:z] <i>n.</i> 停止, 不再...</p> | |
| <p>9. surpass [sə'pɑ:s] <i>v.</i> 超過</p> | |

17. peak [pi:k] *n.* 頂峰
18. reveal [ri'vi:l] *v.* 揭示, 揭露
19. potentiality [pə'tenʃi'æli:tɪ] *n.*
潛力, 可能性
20. mechanism ['mekənɪzəm] *n.*
機制
21. vivid ['vɪvɪd] *adj.* 鮮明的
22. considerably [kən'sɪdərəbli] *adv.*
大量地
23. compete [kəm'pi:t] *v.* 對抗
24. strive [straɪv] *v.* 努力爭取
25. unspent ['ʌn'spent] *adj.*
未耗盡的
26. proceed [prə'si:d] *v.* 繼續進行
27. capability ['kæpə'bɪləti] *n.* 能力
28. oblige [ə'blaɪdʒ] *v.* 不得不
29. slacken ['slækən] *v.* 減慢
30. attempt [ə'tempt] *v.* 嘗試
31. outstanding ['aʊt'stændɪŋ] *adj.*
杰出的
32. medal ['medl] *n.* 獎章
33. daring ['deərɪŋ] *adj.* 大胆的
34. unfortunately ['ʌn'fɔ:tʃnətli] *adv.*
遺憾地, 不幸地
35. contrary ['kɒntrəri] *n.* 相反
on the contrary 相反地
36. unwilling ['ʌn'wɪlɪŋ] *adj.*
不願意的
37. risk [rɪsk] *n.* 危險
38. cautious ['kɔ:ʃɪəs] *adj.* 謹慎的
39. incline [ɪn'klaɪn] *v.* 傾向
40. tactics ['tæktɪks] *n.* 戰術, 策略
41. state [steɪt] *v.* 說明, 宣稱
42. within [wɪ'ðɪn] *prep.* 在...之內
43. respectively [rɪ'pektɪvli] *adv.*
各自, 分別
44. presence ['preznz] *n.* 存在
45. connection [kə'nekʃən] *n.* 聯系
46. average ['ævərɪdʒ] *adj.* 平均的
47. specialized ['speʃəlaɪzd] *adj.*
特定的
48. conclude [kən'kli:əd] *v.* 下結論
49. awareness [ə'weənis] *n.*
知道, 意識到
50. prospect ['prɒspekt] *n.* 前景
51. fitness ['fɪtnɪs] *n.*
合適, 健康狀態
52. avail [ə'veɪl] *n.* 有用, 用處

LESSON EIGHTY-TWO

CONSCIOUS ACTIVITY IN WAR

(From selected works of Mao Tse-tung)

60. When we say we are opposed to the subjective approach to a problem, we mean that we must oppose such

ideas as are not based upon or do not correspond with objective facts because, being fancies and falsehoods, they will lead to failure if we act on them. But things are to be done by man; the protracted war and final victory will not take place without human endeavour. For that endeavour there must be people who, on the basis of objective reality, form ideas, arguments or opinions, and bring forward plans, directive, policies, strategies or tactics; only thus can the endeavour succeed. Ideas, etc., are subjective, while endeavours or actions are manifestations of the subjective in the objective, but both indicate the activity peculiar to human beings. We term such activity "conscious activity", a characteristic distinguishing men from things. All ideas based upon and corresponding with objective facts are correct ideas, and all endeavours or action based upon correct ideas are correct actions. We must develop such ideas and actions, such conscious activity. As the Anti-Japanese War is waged to drive out imperialism and to transform the old China into a new China, the people throughout China must be mobilised and their conscious activity in resisting Japan developed before this objective can be achieved. If one sits tight and takes no action there would be only extermination but no protracted war or final victory.

61. Conscious activity is man's characteristic. This characteristic is most strongly manifested in man at war. Victory or defeat in a war is of course decided by military, political, economic and geographical conditions, by the character of the war and of the international support on both sides, but not by these alone; these alone constitute only the possibility of victory or defeat, and do not in themselves decide the

issue. To decide the issue, efforts must be added, efforts in directing and waging the war, i.e. man's conscious activity in war.

62. People who direct a war cannot strive for victories beyond the limit allowed by the objective conditions, but within that limit they can and must strive for victories through their conscious activity. The stage of action for these directors of war must be built upon objective conditions, but given this stage as the basis, they can direct the performance of many dramas, full of sound and colour, of powerful grandeur. On a given objective material basis, commander in the Anti-Japanese War should display his power and lead the whole army to crush the nation's enemy, transform our society and state now under aggression and oppression, and create a new China of freedom and equality; this is where our own ability in directing war can and must be exercised. We do not advocate that any of our commanders in the Anti-Japanese War should detach himself from objective condition and become a rash and reckless hothead; but we must encourage every one of them to become a brave and wise general. He should possess not only the courage to overwhelm the enemy but the ability to control the changes and development in an entire war. Swimming in an immense ocean of war, a commander must not only keep himself from sinking but also make sure of reaching the opposite shore with measured strokes. Strategy and tactics as laws for directing the war constitute the art of swimming in the ocean of war.

WORDS TO THE TEXT

1. conscious ['kɒnʃiəs] *adj.* 自觉的
2. subjective [səb'dʒektɪv] *adj.*
主觀的
3. approach [ə'prəʊtʃ] *n.* 看法
4. correspond [kɒrɪs'pɒnd] *v.*
符合于
5. objective [əb'dʒektɪv] *adj.*
客觀的
6. fancy ['fænsɪ] *n.* 幻想, 幻觉
7. falsehood ['fɔ:lʃud] *n.* 虛假
8. failure ['feɪljə] *n.* 失敗
9. protracted [prə'træktɪd] *adj.*
持久的
10. endeavour [ɪn'devə] *n.* 努力
11. reality [rɪ'æliəti] *n.* 现实
12. argument ['ɑ:gjʊmənt] *n.* 論点
13. opinion [ə'pɪnjən] *n.* 意見
14. directive [dɪ'rektɪv] *n.* 指示
15. strategy ['strætɪdʒɪ] *n.* 战略
16. etc. (ɪt'setə) 等等
17. indicate ['ɪndɪkeɪt] *v.* 表明
18. term [tɜ:m] *v.* 称呼, 称
19. characteristic ['kærɪktə'rɪstɪk] *n.*
特点, 特性
20. distinguish [dɪ'stɪŋɡwɪʃ] *v.* 区别
distinguish... from... 把……
从……区别开来
21. anti- ['æntɪ] 反……
22. Japanese [dʒæpə'nɪs] 日本人
23. wage [weɪdʒ] *v.* 从事, 进行
(战争)
24. drive [draɪv] *v.* 驅逐, 推出
25. mobilise ['moubɪlaɪz] *v.* 动员
26. resist [rɪ'sɪst] *v.* 反抗, 抵抗
27. tight [taɪt] *adj.* 紧紧的, 穩的
28. extermination [ɛkstə'mɪ'neɪʃən]
n. 粉碎, 毁灭
29. military ['mɪlɪtəri] *adj.* 軍事的
30. geographical [dʒɪə'græfɪkəl] *adj.*
地理的
31. condition [kən'dɪʃən] *n.* 条件
32. character ['kærɪktə] *n.* 性質
33. support [sə'pɔ:t] *n.* 支持
34. constitute ['kɒnstɪtju:t] *v.* 构成
35. issue ['ɪʃu:] *n.* 爭論, 結果
36. add [æd] *v.* 加上
37. stage [steɪdʒ] *n.* 場所, 舞台
38. director [dɪ'rektə] *n.* 指導者
39. basis ['beɪsɪs] *n.* 基础
40. drama ['drɑ:mə] *n.* 戏剧
41. grandeur ['grændʒə] *n.*
庄严, 华丽
42. material [mə'tɪəriəl] *adj.*
物質的
43. commander [kə'mɑ:ndə] *n.*
司令員
44. display [dɪs'pleɪ] *v.* 表現, 显示
45. crush [krʌʃ] *v.* 粉碎
46. state [steɪt] *n.* 国家
47. aggression [ə'ɡreʃən] *n.* 侵略
48. create [kri'eɪt] *v.* 創造
49. freedom ['fri:dəm] *n.* 自由
50. equality [ɪ'kwəlɪti] *n.* 平等
51. exercise ['eksəsaɪz] *v.* 發揮

- | | |
|---|---|
| 52. advocate [ˈædvəkeɪt] <i>v.</i>
主张, 鼓吹 | 58. general [ˈdʒenərəl] <i>n.</i> 將軍 |
| 53. detach [diˈtætʃ] <i>v.</i> 分离
detach...from... 使...从分离 | 59. possess [pəˈzes] <i>v.</i> 具有 |
| 54. rash [ræʃ] <i>adj.</i>
魯莽的, 輕率的 | 60. overwhelm [ˈoʊvəˈhwelm] <i>v.</i>
壓倒, 击败 |
| 55. reckless [ˈreklɪs] <i>adj.</i> 冒險的 | 61. immence [ɪˈmens] <i>adj.</i> 巨大的 |
| 56. hothead [ˈhɒθed] <i>n.</i>
头脑发热的人 | 62. ocean [ˈoʊʃən] <i>n.</i> 海洋 |
| 57. wise [waɪs] <i>adj.</i> 聰明的 | 63. sink [sɪŋk] <i>v.</i> 沉沒 |
| | 64. measure [ˈmeɪʒə] <i>v.</i> 測量 |
| | 65. law [lɔ:] <i>n.</i> 法則, 規律 |
| | 66. art [ɑ:t] <i>n.</i> 藝術 |

LESSON EIGHTY-THREE

REVISION EXERCISES

I. 翻譯以下短語, 注意其在課文中的用法:

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| warming up | to gain the benefit from |
| in the need for | at least |
| for the purpose of | in time |
| to be based on | to rely upon |
| to give rise to | to bring into play |
| to lie in | to lay emphasis on |
| apart from | to be referred to |
| in fact | to pit against |
| to deprive someone of | to follow suit |
| to be obliged to | on the contrary |
| to take the risk | so far as... is concerned |
| to set up | to be of no avail |
| to be opposed to | to correspond with |
| on the basis of | to be peculiar to |
| to distinguish... from | of course |

to strive for to detach oneself from
to keep someone from to make sure

II. 翻譯:

1. To gain the benefit from doing speed walking, one must do it regularly and correctly.
2. To attain desired results, your training method must be improved.
3. To conclude, I should like to say that age is not the decisive factor in sports.
4. To direct a war, a commander should possess not only the courage to overwhelm the enemy but the ability to control the changes and development in an entire war.
5. It is difficult to determine his possibility in running a Marathon.
6. It was such a pity that he did not win the first place.
7. It may take several years for an athlete to set up a world record.
8. It took me five weeks to learn this new skill.
9. It took him several months to master the teaching method of swimming.
10. What is necessary for him is the courage to defeat his rivals.
11. What he needs is to be persistent in doing things.
12. What I have to do is to encourage them to storm the highest peaks.
13. If you had trained with correct method, you would have become a first-class runner.
14. If you were to stop training, you would never achieve outstanding results.

15. Had he taken part in the meet, he would have set up another record.
16. If I were a coach, I should train my athletes with scientific method.
17. There is every ground for stating that doing warming up can improve performance and prevent injury.
18. I see no sufficient ground for your being nervous in the meet.
19. So far as his shooting is concerned, there is much room for improvement.
20. So far as he is concerned, he has the ability to read and write in English.

Ⅲ. 从以上課文中找出同以下單詞、短語在意义上相同的單詞、短語:

| | |
|----------------|-------------|
| to begin | to heighten |
| to assist | to acquire |
| to reach | to decide |
| participation | to surpass |
| valiant | to assert |
| to cease | to show |
| to make effort | |

簡 明 語 法

第一部分 語 音

I. 音 標

1. 元音: 前元音

| | |
|------|-----------|
| [i:] | me [mi:] |
| [ɪ] | set [sit] |
| [e] | bed [bed] |
| [æ] | bad [bæd] |

中元音

| | |
|------|--------------|
| [ə:] | girl [gɜ:l] |
| [ə] | above [ə'ʌv] |

后元音

| | |
|------|--------------|
| [ɑ:] | heart [hɑ:t] |
| [ɒ] | box [bɒks] |
| [ɔ:] | court [kɔ:t] |
| [u] | book [buk] |
| [u:] | too [tu:] |
| [ʌ] | cup [kʌp] |

集中双元音

| | |
|------|------------|
| [iə] | year [jiə] |
| [eə] | hair [heə] |
| [uə] | poor [puə] |

| | |
|------|------------|
| [ɔə] | door [dɔə] |
|------|------------|

合口双元音

| | |
|------|--------------|
| [eɪ] | name [neɪm] |
| [aɪ] | life [laɪf] |
| [aʊ] | mouth [maʊθ] |
| [ɔɪ] | voice [vɔɪs] |

2. 輔音

破裂音

| | |
|-----|-------------|
| [p] | put [put] |
| [b] | book [buk] |
| [t] | too [tu:] |
| [d] | do [du:] |
| [k] | keep [ki:p] |
| [g] | go [gou] |

鼻 音

| | |
|-----|------------|
| [m] | may [meɪ] |
| [n] | near [niə] |
| [ŋ] | ring [rɪŋ] |

舌側音

| | |
|-----|-------------|
| [l] | like [laɪk] |
|-----|-------------|

| | | | |
|-----|-----------------|-------------|--------------|
| | [r] | run [rʌn] | |
| 摩擦音 | [h] | hard [hɑ:d] | |
| [f] | fine [faɪn] | | |
| [v] | very ['veri] | 破擦音 | |
| [θ] | third [θɜ:d] | [tʃ] | chair [tʃeə] |
| [ð] | then [ðen] | [dʒ] | jump [dʒʌmp] |
| [s] | see [si:] | | |
| [z] | is [ɪz] | 半元音 | |
| [ʃ] | she [ʃi:] | [w] | work [wɜ:k] |
| [ʒ] | measure ['meʒə] | [j] | you [ju:] |

II. 清音和浊音

清音: 发音时声带不振动

浊音: 发音时声带振动

英語元音均屬浊音, 輔音則有清浊之分:

| | | | | | | | | | |
|----|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|-----------------|
| 清音 | p | t | k | f | ʃ | s | θ | tʃ | |
| 浊音 | b | d | g | v | ʒ | z | ð | dʒ | m n ŋ l h r w j |

III. 音节、单詞重音、句子重音

1. 音节: 英語的詞按发音可分音节

例: mother ['mʌðə] 可分 mo-ther

doctor ['dɒktə] 可分 doc-tor

eat [i:t]

音节大体上根据元音划分, 一个元音一般地可分为一个音节, 只有一个音节的詞称单音节詞, 有两个以上音节的詞称多音节詞。

2. 单詞重音: 在多音节詞中, 有一个音节要讀得特別重, 这个音节称“重音”, 用“/”在其左上角标明。

| | |
|------------|--------------|
| 例: sister | [ˈsɪstə] |
| window | [ˈwɪndəʊ] |
| activity | [ækˈtɪvɪti] |
| importance | [ɪmˈpɔ:təns] |

三个音节以上的单词可能有两个重音，一个是主要重音，一个是次要重音。次要重音用“/”在其左下角标明。

例: preparation [ˌprepəˈreɪʃən]

3. 句子重音: 在一个句子中，某些词类读音要重些，这些词类有: 名词、形容词、动词、副词、指示代词、疑问词等。

IV. 讀音規則

1. 元音字母在四种音节中的讀音規則

开音节: 音节末尾是元音或一个辅音加上一个不发音的 e 的称开音节，开音节中的元音字母按照其字母名称讀。

| | | | |
|-------|--------|------|--------|
| 例: go | [gəʊ] | me | [mi:] |
| take | [teɪk] | nine | [naɪn] |

闭音节: 音节末尾是辅音的称闭音节，闭音节中的元音字母讀短音。

| | | | |
|--------|-------|-----|-------|
| 例: cup | [kʌp] | big | [bɪg] |
| hat | [hæt] | hot | [hɒt] |

r 音节: 元音加 r 构成的音节称 r 音节，其讀音規則如下:

| | |
|--------------|------|
| ar 讀 | [ɑ:] |
| or 讀 | [ɔ:] |
| ir, ur, er 讀 | [ə:] |

例: her [hə:] girl [gɜ:l] worker [ˈwɜ:kə]

re 音节: 元音加 re 构成的音节称 re 音节，其讀音規則如下: [ə]

| | | | | | |
|-------|------|-------|-------|-------|------|
| are 讀 | [ə] | ire 讀 | [aɪə] | ure 讀 | [uə] |
| ere 讀 | [ɪə] | ore 讀 | [ɔ:] | | |

例: here [hɪə] more [mɔ:]

2. 元音字母的讀音

| | | | |
|--------|-------|-------------------|---------------|
| a | [ei] | name [neim] | |
| | [æ] | hand [hænd] | |
| | [ɑ:] | ask [ɑ:sk] | |
| | [ə] | want [wɒnt] | |
| | [ə] | about [ə'baʊt] | |
| ar | [ɑ:] | far [fɑ:] | |
| | [ɔ:] | warm [wɔ:m] | |
| ai, ay | [ei] | aim [eim] | day [dei] |
| e | [e] | desk [desk] | |
| | [i:] | she [ʃi:] | |
| ee, ea | [i:] | meet [mi:t] | speak [spi:k] |
| er | [ə:] | her [hə:] | |
| | [ə] | teacher ['ti:tʃə] | |
| ew | [ju:] | new [nju:] | |
| i | [ai] | time [taim] | |
| | [i] | big [big] | |
| ir | [ə:] | first [fɜ:st] | |
| ie | [ai] | die [dai] | |
| igh | [ai] | high [hai] | |
| o | [ou] | go [gou] | |
| | [ə] | not [nɒt] | |
| oi, oy | [ɔi] | voice [vɔis] | boy [bai] |
| oo | [u] | look [lʊk] | |
| | [u:] | food [fu:d] | |
| ou | [au] | ground [graʊnd] | |
| or | [ɔ:] | for [fɔ:] | |
| ow | [ou] | window ['windəʊ] | |
| u | [ju:] | union ['ju:njən] | |
| | [ʌ] | run [rʌn] | |

ur [ə:] turn [tə:n]

3. 部分輔音字母的讀音

c [s] (在e,i,y前) city ['siti]
celebrate ['selibreit]
cycle ['saikl]

[k] (在o,o,u或輔音前及音節尾) cold [kould]
can [kæn]
music ['mju:zik]

g [dʒ] (在e,y前) page [peidʒ]
gymnasium [dʒim'neizjəm]

[g] (在其他情況) game [geim] great[greit]
ng [ŋ] training ['treiniŋ]

qu [kw] quite [kwait]

th [θ] throw [θrou]

[ð] those [ðouz]

ch [tʃ] cheer [tʃiə]

sh [ʃ] shoot [ʃu:t]

4. 詞末的讀音

ture [tʃə] picture ['piktʃə]

tion [ʃən] liberation ['libə'reiʃən]

s [s] (在p,t,k,之后) books, wants.

[z] (在元音或濁輔音之后) plans, days,
years, is.

[iz] (在s,z,ʃ,tʃ,dʒ,之后而加的) boxes,
watches.

ed [id] (在t,d之后) wanted, needed.

[d] (在元音、濁輔音之后) explained,
loved.

[t] (在清輔音之后) stopped, liked.

V. 語調

英語有兩種基本語調，即降調和升調：

1. 降調：在句末聲調下降，用於：

敘述句 They hated that landlord very much ↘.

祈使句 Get up and go to work. ↘

感嘆句 How strange it was! ↘

特殊疑問句 What do we need? ↘

2. 升調：在句末聲調上升，用於：

一般疑問句 Are you still sleeping? ↗

第二部分 語法

第一章 詞和句

§1. 詞類：英語的詞可以根據詞義、句法作用和形式特征分為十大詞類。

1. 名詞：表示人或事物的名稱的詞，如：China, people, water, peace。
2. 形容詞：表示人或事物的特征或性質的詞，如：great, fine, cold, big。
3. 數詞：表示數量或數目順序的詞，如 nine, thousand, third。
4. 代詞：用來代替名詞，形容詞或數詞的詞，如：he, that, many。
5. 動詞：表示行為或狀態的詞，如：do, study, see, are。
6. 副詞：表示行為特征或狀態特征的詞，如 early, slowly, very, too。
7. 前置詞：表示名詞（或起名詞作用的成份）和其他詞之間的關係，如：on, about, for, to。
8. 連接詞：用來連接詞與詞，句與句的詞，如：and

so, but.

9. 冠詞：用在名詞前幫助說明名詞所指的對象的詞，這類詞只有 a, an, the。

10. 感嘆詞：用以表示說話時的感情的詞，如 oh, well。

§2. 句子(The Sentence)

1. 什么是句子：表达一个完整的意思、具有一定的語法結構及語調的一組詞叫做句子。

例：We study English.

2. 句子的成分：句子包含主要成分和次要成分。

主要成分有：主語 (The Subject)

謂語 (The Predicate)

次要成分有：賓語 (The Object)

定語 (The Attribute)

狀語 (The Adverbial)

3. 主語和謂語：主語和謂語是句子的主要成分，是一個句子所不可缺少的。主語是謂語所講述的對象，表示所談的是誰，是什麼，主語由名詞或能起名詞作用的成分擔任。謂語用來說明主語在做什么或是什麼。謂語有簡單謂語和複合謂語兩種。簡單謂語由一個動詞或動詞短語構成，複合謂語由連系動詞加上表語構成。英語中的主要連系動詞為 to be，表語由名詞，形容詞或能起以上兩種詞類作用的成分擔任。

例：We are students.

主語 複合謂語

We study.

主語 簡單謂語

The game will take place soon.

主語 動詞短語當簡單謂語

4. 賓語：賓語是及物動詞所表示的行為對象，賓語由名詞或起名詞作用的成分擔任。賓語有兩種：

(1) 直接宾語: 及物動詞的直接对象。

例: We study **English**.
直接宾語

(2) 間接宾語: 及物動詞的間接对象。

例: She gives **him** **a book**.
間接宾語 直接宾語

此外, 有些及物動詞除了要一个宾語外, 还需要有个成分来补充, 这样意思才完整。我們称这个补充的成分为宾語补語。宾語补語由名詞、形容詞或起这两种詞性作用的成分担任。宾語及其补語合称为复合宾語。

例: We call **him comrade Wang**.
宾語 宾語补語

再者, 除了及物動詞外, 有些動詞短語也可以要求宾語。

例: She looks after the child.

They arrived at Peking yesterday

5. 定語: 在句中用来说明名詞的成分叫定語, 定語由形容詞或起形容詞作用的成分担任。

例: I have a red pen. ~~紅的~~
We serve the cause of socialism.

單詞当定語用时往往放在所說明的名詞前, 短語用作定語时則放在紧接着所說明的名詞后面。

6. 状語: 在句中用来说明動詞、形容詞、副詞的成分叫状語, 状語用来表示行为发生的时间、地点、状态、原因、目的、結果、条件、程度等。状語由副詞或起副詞作用的成分担任。

例:

My sister does morning exercises every day.

They live in Peking.

The students read carefully.

He plays basketball very well.

經常坐公共汽車去學校。
He often goes to school by bus.

狀語位置很不固定，一般說，表示地點、狀態的往往放句尾；表示確定時間的往往放在句尾，有時也在句前；表示不確定時間的放在動詞前。

第二章 名詞 (The Noun)

§1. 名詞是事物或概念的名稱，名詞可分下列幾類：

1. 普通名詞：

(1) 可數名詞

a. 個體名詞：desk, worker, factory.

b. 集體名詞：class, group, family.

(2) 不可數名詞

a. 物質名詞：Water, paper, ice.

b. 抽象名詞：Love, peace, strength.

2. 專有名詞：

China, Peking, Mao Tse-tung.

§2. 名詞的數

名詞有單數和複數的變化，在一般情況下只有可數名詞才有變化，其變化分規則的和不規則的兩類。

1. 規則變化

a. 在單數名詞後面加“s”，如：

year—years

sister—sisters

book—books

b. 如詞尾是 s, x, sh, ch, o 則加“es”，如：

class—classes

box—boxes

brush—brushes

bench—benches

hero——heroes

c. 如詞尾是y, 而y前又是輔音, 則去y加“ies”如前是元音, 則直接加“s”, 如:

factory——factories

city——cities

activity——activities

boy——boys

day——days

d. 如詞尾是f或fe, 則去f或fe, 加“ves”如:

knife——knives

life——lives

leaf——leaves

2. 不規則变化

常用的不規則复数名詞如下:

man——men

woman——women

child——children

foot——feet

tooth——teeth

radio——radios

§3. 名詞的所有格

名詞的所有格变化是在名詞后面加“'s”, 如:

Li's family

the boy's brother

my mother's book

如果是复数名詞, 則只在“s”后面加“'”就可以, 如: a girls' school, the students' bedroom。一般來說, 加“'s”的做法只限于有生命的名詞, 但表示時間, 距离的名詞在习惯上也采用这种办法来表示所有格, 如:

to-day's newspaper, ten minutes' walk

无生命的名詞要表示所有关系时則用of短語，如：

the capital of our country

the windows of the class room

§4. 名詞在句中的作用

名詞在句中可以用作主語、賓語、表語、賓語補語、定語、狀語等。

第三章 冠詞 (The Article)

冠詞有两种

1. 不定冠詞：不定冠詞只有 a, an 两个，a 用在以輔音开头的單詞前面，an 用在以元音开头的單詞前面。不定冠詞直接用在可数的單数名詞前面，表示屬於某一类别。

如： a table 一张桌子
a coat 一件大衣
a house 一座房子
an eye 一只眼睛
an honest man 一个誠实的人

2. 定冠詞：定冠詞只有 the 一个，可以用在所有的普通名詞前面，表示这是特定的一种事物。

例：

the worker 这（或那个）工人
the table 这张（或那张）桌子
the house 这座（或那座）房子

第四章 形容詞 (The Adjective)

§1. 形容詞是用來說明名詞的状态、性質、顏色、大小等特征的詞。例如：the blue sky, a big room, a good comrade.

§2. 为了表示程度不同，形容詞有三种級。

1. 原級

例: I am young.

I am as young as he.

I am not so young as he.

2. 比較級: 在两个事物进行比较时应该用比較級, 这时形容詞的詞尾要加“er”, 它的后面要加用連接詞 “than”。

例: I am younger than he.

3. 最高級: 在三个以上的事物进行比较时要用最高級, 这时形容詞的詞尾要加“est”, 它的前面加冠詞“the”, 后面加一个附加成分, 表示范围。

例: I am the youngest in our class.

形容詞在級方面的詞形变化是这样: 单音节詞或以 y, er, ow, ble 結尾的双音节詞在詞尾加 er 或 est, 如詞尾是 y, 則变 y 为 i, 后加 er 或 est, 如詞尾是重讀閉音节, 則最后的輔音字母重写然后加上 er 或 est, 双音节或多音节詞則在前面加 more 或 most, 請观察下表:

| 原 級 | 比 較 級 | 最 高 級 |
|-----------|----------------|----------------|
| short | shorter | shortest |
| old | older | oldest |
| happy | happier | happiest |
| able | abler | ablest |
| hot | hotter | hottest |
| useful | more useful | most useful |
| beautiful | more beautiful | most beautiful |
| difficult | more difficult | most difficult |

此外, 少数形容詞在构成比較級和最高級时是沒有規則的, 这些形容詞主要有:

| 原 級 | 比 較 級 | 最 高 級 |
|--------|---------|----------|
| bad | worse | worst |
| good | better | best |
| far | farther | farthest |
| little | less | least |
| many | more | most |
| (much) | | |

§3. 形容詞在句中可以用作定語、表語和賓語補語。

例: She has a **new** watch. (定語)

We are **happy**. (表語)

They made him **happy**. (賓語補語)

第五章 數詞 (The Numeral)

§1. 數詞用來表示數量或次序，可分為基数詞、序數詞、分數、小數四種。

§2. 基数詞

英語基数詞從1—12各有特殊名稱，但表示十幾的詞則詞尾是teen，表示幾十的詞則詞尾是ty。

| | | | |
|---|-------|----|----------|
| 1 | one | 9 | nine |
| 2 | two | 10 | ten |
| 3 | three | 11 | eleven |
| 4 | four | 12 | twelve |
| 5 | five | 13 | thirteen |
| 6 | six | 14 | fourteen |
| 7 | seven | 15 | fifteen |
| 8 | eight | 16 | sixteen |

| | | | |
|----|------------|-----------|------------------|
| 17 | seventeen | 50 | fifty |
| 18 | eighteen | 60 | sixty |
| 19 | nineteen | 70 | seventy |
| 20 | twenty | 80 | eighty |
| 21 | twenty-one | 90 | ninety |
| 22 | twenty-two | 100 | a (one) hundred |
| 30 | thirty | 1,000 | a (one) thousand |
| 40 | forty | 1,000,000 | a (one) million |

§3. 序数詞

序数詞是在基数詞后面加詞尾 *th*, 但从第一到第三各有特殊的名称。

| | | | |
|---------|---------------|---------|------------|
| 第 一 | first | 第 八 | eighth |
| 第 二 | second | 第 九 | ninth |
| 第 三 | third | 第 十 | tenth |
| 第 四 | fourth | 第 十 一 | eleventh |
| 第 五 | fifth | 第 十 二 | twelfth |
| 第 六 | sixth | 第 十 三 | thirteenth |
| 第 七 | seventh | 第 二 十 | twentieth |
| 第 二 十 一 | twenty-first | 第 五 十 | fiftieth |
| 第 二 十 二 | twenty-second | 第 六 十 | sixtieth |
| 第 二 十 三 | twenty-third | 第 七 十 | seventieth |
| 第 二 十 四 | twenty-fourth | 第 八 十 | eightieth |
| 第 三 十 | thirtieth | 第 九 十 | ninetieth |
| 第 三 十 一 | thirty-first | 第 一 百 | hundredth |
| 第 三 十 四 | thirty-fourth | 第 一 千 | thousandth |
| 第 四 十 | fortieth | 第 一 百 万 | millionth |

§4. 分数

分数由分母和分子构成，分子用基数詞，分母用序数詞。如果前面有整数也用基数詞来表示。1/2 和 1/4 各有特殊名称。

| | | | |
|-------|--------------------|--------|--------------------------------------|
| 1/2 | half | 1/3 | one third |
| 1/4 | a quarter | 1/5 | one fifth |
| 1/6 | one sixth | 1/129 | one one hundred and
twenty-ninth, |
| 2/5 | two fifths | 3/9 | three ninths |
| 1-2/3 | one and two thirds | 30-4/7 | thirty and four
sevenths |

§5. 小数

小数点讀为 point, 小数点前面按基数詞讀，后面逐个数字分开按基数詞讀，遇零可讀 nought 或[ou]。

| | |
|---------|---|
| 1.2 | one point two |
| 2.35 | two point three five |
| 38.07 | thirty-eight point nought seven |
| 13.0001 | thirteen point nought nought nought one |

§6. 年，月日，鐘点，号碼的讀法

年: 1949 nineteen forty-nine
1006 ten hundred and six

月日: 5月1日 May first 或 the first of May
8月15日 August fifteenth 或 the fifteenth of August

鐘点: 8点 eight o'clock
8点一刻 a quarter past eight
8点15分 fifteen minutes past eight
8点半 half past eight
9点差十分 ten minutes to nine
11:16 eleven sixteen

5:30 five thirty
 20:04 twenty and four
 5分4秒 five minutes and four seconds

號碼: No. 5 Number five
 No. 234 Number two hundred and thirty-four
 電話號碼 53198 five three one nine eight

§7. 數詞在句中可以用作主語、賓語、表語、定語。

How many do you need? Four will be enough, I think.

I want two.

We are eight.

There are three students in the classroom.

第六章 代詞 (Pronoun)

代詞可用來代表名詞、形容詞。代詞的種類:

§1. 人稱代詞

人稱代詞變格表

| 數 | 格
人稱 | 主 格 | 賓 格 | 所 有 格 | |
|---|---------|-------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| | | | | 不 獨 立 的 | 獨 立 的 |
| 單 | 第一人稱 | I | me | my | mine |
| | 第二人稱 | you | you | your | yours |
| 數 | 第三人稱 | he, she, it | him, her, it | his, her, its | his, her's its |
| 復 | 第一人稱 | we | us | our | ours |
| | 第二人稱 | you | you | your | yours |
| 數 | 第三人稱 | they | them | their | theirs |

§2. 反身代詞

| 人 稱 \ 數 | 單 數 | 復 數 |
|---------|------------------------|------------|
| 第一人稱 | myself | ourselves |
| 第二人稱 | yourself | yourselves |
| 第三人稱 | himself herself itself | themselves |

§3. 指示代詞

| 單 數 | 復 數 |
|------|-------|
| this | these |
| that | those |

§4. 疑問代詞

疑問代詞用來構成特殊疑問句，英語的疑問代詞有：

| 主 語 | 賓 語 | 所 有 格 |
|----------|----------|-------------------|
| who 誰 | whom 誰 | whose 誰的 |
| what 什麼 | what 什麼 | what 什麼
(樣的) |
| which 哪個 | which 哪個 | which 哪個 |

例：Who is your English teacher?

Whom did you meet yesterday?

Whose book is this?

What are you reading?

Which of you speaks English?

Which book do you like best?

What books do you want?

§5. 关系代詞

关系代詞用来引起复合句中的形容詞从句，作为这个从句的主語或宾語，但本身没有什么意义，只是用来指前面所說的人或物。英語里的关系代詞有：

who 指人（其宾格为 whom，所有格为 whose）

which 指物

that 指人指物均可

例： I want a man **who** understands English.

我需要一個懂英語的人。（who 用以引起形容詞从句，在从句中當主語，指前面的人man）

The girl **whom** you met yesterday is my sister.

你昨天遇的那個女孩子是我的妹妹。（whom 用以引起形容詞从句，在从句中當宾語，指前面的girl）

I shall give you the book **which** you want.

我將把你想要的書給你。（which 用以引起形容詞从句，在从句中當主語，指前面的book）

§6. 連接代詞

連接代詞用来引起复合句中的名詞从句，作为这个从句的主語或宾語，英語里的連接代詞有：

who 誰（其宾格为 whom，所有格为 whose）

which 哪個

what 什么（有时不当“什么”解释，只用来表示所說的“話”或所做的“事”）

that （只起連接的作用，本身沒有意义）

例： **Who** should be our Chairman is still not decided.

誰应当做我們的主席还未決定。

What subject we should take is still a question.

我們應該學什麼科目還是一個問題。

This is what he did.

這就是他所做的事。

That our team will win is very clear.

我們的隊會贏是很清楚的。

§7. 不定代詞

1. 不定代詞用來指人或物，多數兼有名詞和形容詞的作用，英語里的不定代詞有如下幾個：

all 所有的，一切

every 每一（人或物），指整體中的人或物，意義上和 **all** 相近，只能起形容詞作用。

each 每一（人或物），指個別的一個一個的，能起名詞和形容詞作用。

one 用來代表前面提到的名詞，有時指人。

both 兩個都…

either 兩個中的任何一個…

neither 兩個都不…

other 其他

another 另一個

many 許多（用於可數名詞）

much 許多（用於不可數名詞）

few 很少（用於可數名詞）

little 很少（用於不可數名詞）

some（一些），**any**（一些，）**no**（沒有）在表示不定數量時，**some** 用於肯定句中，**any** 用於否定句和疑問句中，**no** 用在否定句中。（但當 **some** 表示“某一個”，**any** 表示“任何一個”時則不受上述規律的限制）。

例：**Have you any new English books?**

I have some new English books.

I have not any new English books.

I have no new English books.

2. every, some, any, no 可以和 one, thing, body, 組成复合的不定代詞。

| | | |
|--------------|------------|-----------|
| everyone | everything | everybody |
| someone | something | somebody |
| anyone | anything | anybody |
| no one, none | nothing | nobody |

第七章 动 詞 (The Verb)

§1. 动詞的分类

动詞可以分为表意动詞、連系动詞、助动詞和情态动詞四类。現分別介紹如下:

1. 表意动詞 (Notional Verbs): 表意动詞有自己的意思, 能独立作謂語, 如 have, walk, do, take ……等。英語中絕大多數动詞屬这类动詞。表意动詞又可分为及物动詞和不及物动詞两种:

及物动詞 (Transitive Verbs): 要求宾語。

例: We **play** football.
They **like** swimming.
He **gives** me a book.

上例中 play, like, give 都是表意动詞, 独立作謂語, 同时它們又是及物动詞, 要求 football, swimming, me (間接), book (直接) 等作为宾語, 不然, 意思就不完整。

不及物动詞 (Intransitive Verbs): 不要求宾語。

例: Class **begins**.
Students **go** to school every day.

上例中 begin, go 都是表意动詞, 独立作謂語, 同时它們又是不及物动詞, 不要求宾語。

2. 連系动詞 (Link-verbs): 大多数連系动詞有自己的意思,

但不能獨立作謂語，需要和名詞或形容詞(或与之相當的詞類、短語，從句)一起構成複合謂語。英語的連系動詞不多，主要有動詞 be, become, seem, look, feel, get, remain, appear, turn sound, taste. ……等。

例: We are students.

We feel happy.

He looks healthy.

3. 助動詞 (Auxiliary Verbs): 助動詞本身沒有意思，不能獨立作謂語，只能和別的動詞一起作謂語，它的作用主要是表示謂語的時態，語態、語氣、人稱、數等。英語的助動詞有 to be, to have, shall (should), will (would), do (did, does) 等。

例: I shall go to Shanshai to-morrow. (表示時態)

This letter was written by my brother. (表示語態)

Do you get up early in the morning? (表示疑問)

4. 情態動詞 (Modal Verbs): 本身有一定意思，但不能獨立作謂語，需要和別的動詞一起構成謂語。英語的情態動詞有 can, may, must ……等。

例: He can speak English.

You must go to school.

You may be right.

英語的動詞雖然可分以上幾類，但有許多動詞既可用作及物也可用作不及物，有的既能當表意動詞用，也能當連系動詞用。請注意下例：

- { I have a book. (have 用作表意動詞)
- { I have studied English for three years. (have 用作助動詞)
- { They are athletes. (to be 用作連系動詞)
- { She was told to stay at home. (to be 用作助動詞)
- { They read slowly. (read 用作不及物動詞)
- { They read the text. (read 用作及物動詞)

- { He got a ball from the coach. (get 用作簡單謂語)
 { He is getting old. (get 當連系動詞用)

§2. 動詞的形式

1. 英語的絕大多數動詞都有四種形式：

| 現在式 | 過去式 | 過去分詞 | 現在分詞 |
|------|--------|--------|---------|
| work | worked | worked | working |
| live | lived | lived | living |
| come | came | come | coming |
| go | went | gone | going |

這四種形式的用途如下：

現在式：用于一般現在時的謂語。

過去式：用于一般過去時的謂語。

過去分詞：用于完成時或被動句的謂語。

現在分詞：用于進行時的謂語。

2. 動詞由現在式變為過去式或過去分詞時加“ed”的稱規則動詞。在加“ed”時應注意：(1)如該詞以重讀閉音節結尾，詞尾是輔音字母，則這個輔音字母要雙寫；(2)如以“輔音+y”收尾，則先變“y”為“i”後加“ed”；(3)如詞尾是“e”則只加“d”；(4)在其他情況下則直接加“ed”。

| 例： | permit | permitted | permitted |
|----|--------|-----------|-----------|
| | try | tried | tried |
| | live | lived | lived |
| | want | wanted | wanted |

不按以上規則變化的動詞稱不規則動詞。不規則動詞大部分是常用詞，我們應該熟記其變化形式。我們在這裡不列舉不規則的動詞，大家可以參考語法附錄後面的不規則動詞表。

3. 動詞在構成現在分詞時是在詞尾加上“ing”，但加時應注意：(1)詞尾是重讀閉音節再加上一個輔音字母時，則這個輔音字

母要双写；(2)詞尾是“e”則去“e”加“ing”；(3)在其他情況下則直接加“ing”。

| | | |
|----|-------|----------|
| 例: | plan | planning |
| | write | writing |
| | keep | keeping |

§3. 動詞的時態 (Tense)：動詞的時態是指動詞所表達的動作或狀態的時間。動詞在不同時態的句子中要用不同的動詞形式來表示。如：

He comes everyday.

每天來

He came yesterday.

昨天來

He will come tomorrow.

明天將要來

動詞的時態在時間上可分為四大類，即：“現在”，“過去”，“將來”和“過去將來”，每一類時間內所發生的動作或狀態又因各種不同的情況再分為“一般”，“進行”，“完成”和“完成進行”四小類，因此，英語動詞共有十六個時態，分列如下：

1. 一般現在時 (The present indefinite)
2. 現在進行時 (The present continuous)
3. 現在完成時 (The present perfect)
4. 現在完成進行時 (The present perfect continuous)
5. 一般過去時 (The past indefinite)
6. 過去進行時 (The past continuous)
7. 過去完成時 (The past perfect)
8. 過去完成進行時 (The past perfect continuous)
9. 一般將來時 (The future indefinite)
10. 將來進行時 (The future continuous)
11. 將來完成時 (The future perfect)
12. 將來完成進行時 (The future perfect continuous)
13. 一般過去將來時 (The past future indefinite)
14. 過去將來進行時 (The past future continuous)

15. 过去将来完成时 (The past future perfect)
16. 过去将来完成进行时 (The past future perfect continuous)

这些时态有的常用, 有的不常用, 下面分述几个常用的时态。

1. 一般现在时, 现在进行时, 现在完成时:

比较下面三个例句:

I work.

I am working.

I have worked.

上面三句都是表达现在正在做的动作。但是在第一句中, 动词 work 所表达的动作并不指明动作的状态, 因此称为一般现在时。第二句中动词 am working 表达动作正在进行或尚未完, 所以称为现在进行时。第三句中动词 have worked 表示动作已经完成了, 称为现在完成时。由此可见, 这三种时态虽然都和“现在”有关, 但所表达的含意是有区别的。分述如下:

(1) 一般现在时通常是用来表达:

a. 现在正在做的某种动作

He comes.

I throw a javelin.

We receive visitors.

b. 一般真理:

The sun rises in the east.

China is in the east of Asia.

Exercise trains the muscles.

c. 习惯的动作或职业

He plays basketball. (相当于: He is a basketball player.)

We sent many athletes to other countries every year.

I train running event.

He **has been** here for two hours.

They **have seen** the film more than twice.

現在完成時的謂語結構形式：

have

(not) + 過去分詞 (past participle)

has

2. 一般過去時，過去進行時，過去完成時。

比較以下三個例句：

I **wrote** a letter last evening.

I **was writing** a letter at that time.

I **had written** the letter when he came.

和現在時的幾個時態一樣，在第一句動詞 **wrote** 只表示過去曾發生過的動作，並不指明動作的狀態。第二句謂語 **was writing** 表示動作正在進行。第三句的謂語動詞 **had written** 表示動作的完成。

(1) 一般過去時表示過去某一時間曾發生過的動作或存在的狀態，這種動作和現在沒有什麼關係。

The farmhands **decided** to punish the landlord.

I **met** an old friend yesterday.

He **broke** a record for 100 m. in the last competition.

一般過去時的謂語結構形式是用動詞的過去式。

(2) 過去進行時表示過去某一時間內正在進行或尚未完成的動作。

They **were training** from 3 to 5 yesterday afternoon.

He **was moving** towards the enemy stronghold under the enemy fire.

It **was raining** all day yesterday.

過去進行時的謂語結構形式是

was

(not) + 現在分詞

were

(3) 过去完成时表达一个在过去某时刻已經完成的动作，或用以表示某一动作完成于另一过去动作发生之前。

By the end of last term, we **had already learned**
about 2000 words.

As soon as he **had got** the ball he shot at the basket.
I suddenly remembered I **had not brought** the
ticket with me.

过去完成时的謂語結構是

had (not) + 过去分詞

3. 一般将来时，将来进行时，将来完成时。

比較下面三个例句：

I **shall review** my lessons tomorrow.

I **shall be reviewing** my lessons during next week.

I **shall have reviewed** all my lessons by the end
of next week.

上面三个句子都是說将来所要发生的动作。第一句中的謂語 shall review 只指明将来将做什么，是一般将来时。第二句中的謂語 shall be reviewing 是将来进行时，說明动作的进行。第三句中的謂語 shall have reviewed 表示动作将在某时完成，是将来完成时。

(1) 一般将来时用来表示将来某时将发生的动作或状态。

He **will go** to attend the match to-night

I **shall write** to you as often as I can.

We **shall be very busy** when the final examination
comes.

一般将来时的謂語結構形式是

shall

(not) + 動詞原形

will

(2) 将来进行时表示在将来某一時間內正在进行或未完成的动作。

He **will be playing** basketball tomorrow afternoon.

I **shall be doing** my homework this evening.

We **shall be having** our training class when you come.

将来进行时的謂語結構形式是

shall

(not) be + 現在分詞

will

(3) 将来完成时用来表示在将来某时刻将完成的动作或状态，也可以表示某一将来的动作发生前已經完成的动作：

The examination **will have finished** by the end of next month.

I **shall have been** here for 3 months next week.

The rain **will have stopped** when we start this afternoon.

将来完成时的謂語結構是

shall

(not) have + 过去分詞

will

4. 一般过去将来时，过去将来进行时，过去将来完成时这三个时态的謂語結構形式是

- should
(1) 一般过去将来时: (not) + 动词原形
would
- should
(2) 过去将来进行时: (not) be + 现在分词
would
- should
(3) 过去将来完成时: (not) have + 过去分词
would

这三个时态表示过去某一时间预计将要发生、进行着或将完成的动作。这种时态多用在名词从句中。如:

He said he **would be free** that evening.

I believed you **would come** back before 9 o'clock.

He asked what I **should be doing** tomorrow evening.

They hoped they **would be seeing** us soon.

We thought that the match **would have** already **begun** before we reached the stadium.

I was afraid he **would not have received** your letter before you got there.

5. 现在完成进行时, 过去完成进行时, 将来完成进行时。过去将来完成进行时。

这是四个比较不常用的时态, 它们往往可以与相应的完成时交换使用。

(1) 现在完成进行时表示过去某一时刻发生的动作持续到现在还在进行着, 也可能刚停止, 其谓语动词的结构形式是:

have

(not) been + 现在分词

has

例: I am rather tired, I **have been training** for three hours.

(2) 过去完成进行时表示过去某一时刻以前发生的而持續到过去某一时刻还在进行的动作, 也可能刚停止, 其謂語动詞的結構形式是:

had (not) been + 現在分詞

例: I did not know that you **had been training** so hard.

(3) 将来完成进行时表示将来某一时刻以前发生而且一直延續的动作, 其謂語动詞的結構形式是:

shall

(not) have been + 現在分詞

will

例: By next summer we **shall have been studying** here for two years:

(4) 过去将来完成进行时表示从过去某一时刻展望将来所将发生而且持續的动作, 其謂語动詞的結構形式是:

should

(not) have been + 現在分詞

would

例: They told me that you **would have been studying** here for two years by next summer.

6. 英語动詞时态的基本公式: 英語动詞时态虽有十六个之多, 但根据“一般”, “进行”和“完成三类”, 可把它們的結構形式归納为下列一些基本公式。

(1) 一般时:

a. 动詞現在式 (現在)

b. 动詞过去式 (过去)

c. shall (should) + 动詞原形
will (would)

(2) 进行时;

助动词 to be + 现在分词

(3) 完成时:

助动词 to have + 过去分词

下面是动词 to train 的十六个时态:

| | 一般时 | 进行时 | 完成时 | 完成进行时 |
|------|-----------------------------|--|---|---|
| 现在 | train
trains | am training
is training
are training | have trained
has trained | have been training
has been training |
| 过去 | trained | was training
were training | had trained | had been training |
| 将来 | shall train
will train | shall be training
will be training | shall have trained
will have trained | shall have been training
will have been training |
| 过去将来 | should train
would train | should be training
would be training | should have trained
would have trained | should have been training
would have been training |

§4. 动词的语态(voice of the Verbs)

1. 语态是表示主语和谓语的关系。一个句中如果主语是行为的执行者，这句子的动词就用主动语态 (the Active Voice): 如:

People **play** football all over the world.

在这个句子中主语 people 是谓语动词 play 的执行者。主动语态句子的结构是

主语 + 动词 + 宾语

反之，如果主语是行为的对象，那这个句子中的谓语动词就要用被动语态 (The Passive Voice)

如: **Football is played by the people all over the world.**

在这个句子中原来作为行为对象的宾語 **football** 变为主語, 原来的行为执行者 **the people** 則变为前置詞 **by** 的宾語, 而動詞 **play** 則用被动語态来表达。因此, 被动語态句子的結構是:

主語 (行为的对象) + **to be** + 过去分詞 + **by** + 宾語 (行为执行者)

在大多数的情况下, 被动語态句子中行为的执行者 (即 **by** + 宾語) 是不表示出来的, 如上句可改为:

Football is played all over the world.

2. 被动語态動詞的結構和时态

(1) 被动語态動詞結構的基本公式:

在被动語态句中, 除了把行为的对象作为句子的主語和把行为的执行者改为 **by** + 宾語的短語外, 最主要的是把主动語态動詞改为被动語态動詞。被动語态動詞結構的基本公式是:

助動詞 **to be** + 过去分詞

在这个公式中, 过去分詞是不变的部分, 助動詞 **to be** 則根据动作发生的时间和状态的不同而有許多变化。这种变化的結果, 也就构成了被动語态動詞的各个不同的时态, 如:

The ass was carried away by the stream.

(一般过去时)

The ass was being carried away by the stream.

(过去进行时)

The ass had been carried away by the stream.

(过去完成时)

(2) 被动語态動詞的时态

被动語态動詞的时态主要是由助動詞 **to be** 的变化来表示, 所以熟記動詞 **to be** 在十个时态中的变化是十分必要的。

被动語态動詞只有十个时态, 下表是動詞 **to give** 的十个被动时态:

| | 一般时 | 进行时 | 完成时 | 完成进行时 |
|------|---|---|---|-------|
| 現在 | am }
is } given
are } | am being }
is being } given
are being } | have been }
has been } given | 无 |
| 过去 | was }
were } | was being }
were being } | had been given | 无 |
| 将来 | shall be }
will be } | 无 | shall have }
been } given
will have }
been } | 无 |
| 过去将来 | should }
be } given
would }
be } | 无 | should have }
been } given
would have }
been } | 无 |

注：被动語态动词沒有将来进行时，也沒有完成进行时，如果这些时态的主动結構改为被动結構时，可用一般时或完成时，如：

- { We shall be discussing it tomorrow.
It will be discussed tomorrow.
- { We have been discussing it for two days.
It has been discussed for two days.

(3) 带情态动词的被动語态：如果謂語中有情态动词，它的被动結構也以这个情态动词加 be，然后再加过去分詞的方式构成，例如：

主动語态

We can (could) do it in two days.

We must (had to) do it quickly.

You ought to do it this way.

You should do it yourself.

被 动 語 态

It can (could) be done in two days.

It must (had to) be done quickly.

It ought to be done this way.

It should be done by yourself.

(4) 被动語态的用法, 被动語态在下列几种情况下使用:

a. 当我们不知道动作执行者是谁或不必提出是谁时, 例

如:

The Party's educational policy is accepted wholeheartedly (by the people).

My book has been taken away (by somebody).

Has the room already been cleaned?

b. 当我们对行为对象的兴趣比对行为执行者的兴趣更大时, 或者行为对象是谈话的中心时, 如:

The plan must be carried out within 2 days.

No foul is allowed in any game.

Finally the game was won by the visiting team by only one point.

c. 由于方便或某种需要的原故:

It is believed that they will have little chance to win.

The plan was agreed to only by some of the classmates.

It is said that the time for final examination will begin on next Monday.

(5) 由于被动語态句子的主語是行为的对象, 而行为对象通

常只有及物動詞才有，因此在一般情況下，就只有及物動詞才能被用于被動結構中。不及物動詞(如come, appear, lie, sleep等)一般不用于被動結構中，但是有一部分不及物動詞在和前置詞結合后(如 look at, look for, laugh at, listen to, agree to, depend upon (on) 等)，實際上已成為及物動詞，這時候它們就可以用在被動句子中。例如。

Such a man cannot be depended upon.

§5. 動詞不定式 (the Infinitive)

1. 動詞不定式的結構和特點：不定式是動詞的一種形式，一般是在動詞原形前加“to”構成(to work, to be 等)，但也有不加“to”的。不定式是動詞的非謂語形式，這就是說它在句子中不能當謂語用。因此，它也沒有人稱和數的變化，它只是用來敘述一種動作。如：

He learned to throw javelin.

We learned to throw javelin.

2. 不定式短語：不定式既然是動詞，它就可以有自己的狀語，如果是及物動詞，也可以有自己的賓語。我們稱帶有狀語或賓語的不定式為不定式短語。如：

to throw javelin, (帶賓語)

to read the text correctly, (帶賓語和狀語)

to come at nine o'clock, (帶狀語)

3. 不定式的時態和語態：

(1) 不定式的一般時態所表示的動作時間一般和謂語所表示的時間相同或稍后，完成時態所表示的動作時間早于謂語所表示的時間，進行時表示的時間與謂語所表示的時間相同。

I am glad to see you. (一般)

We hope him to come early. (-一般)

He seems to be thinking hard. (進行)

He seems to have been crying. (完成進行)

| | 主 动 | 被 动 |
|------------|--------------------------------|---|
| 一 般 | to do
to throw | to be done
to be thrown |
| 完 成 | to have done
to have thrown | to have been done
to, have been thrown |
| 进 行 | to be doing | 无 |
| 完 成
进 行 | to have been doing | 无 |

I did not know him **to have broken** the record a week before. (完成)

(2) 不定式的主被动語态:

He likes **to help** others. (主动)

He likes **to be helped** by others. (被动)

The teacher wants the students to do their homework carefully. (主动)

The teacher wants the homework **to be carefully done**. (被动)

4. 不定式或不定式短語的性質及其用法: 不定式具有名詞、形容詞和副詞的性質。因此, 它在句子中可以作主語、賓語、賓語補語、表語、定語和狀語用。

(1) 不定式作主語用:

To say it is one thing, to do it is another thing.

To study hard is our duty.

To practice reading is necessary.

不定式当主語用时，我們往往可以把它放于句末，而在句子前面用先行詞“it”代替真正的主語，如：

It is our duty to study hard.

It is necessary to practice reading.

(2) 不定式作賓語用：

No athletes like **to be beaten**

Soon we began **to look for it.**

What do you wish **to become?**

The coach taught us **how to make a correct start in a sprint.**

(3) 不定式作賓語補語用：不定式作賓語補語用時是和賓語結合成為复合賓語，它和賓語之間有着邏輯上的主謂關係。

He doesn't want **anybody to help him.**

We train the **students to be teachers and coaches.**

(4) 不定式作表語用：

My wish is **to become a teacher.**

To do things well means **to live well.**

(5) 不定式作定語用：

He didn't get any chance **to shoot.**

We have the same purpose **to build socialism in our country.**

One important thing **to be remembered** is to help each other in your study.

(6) 不定式作狀語用：

We study and work **to serve the people.** (目的)

To do your homework correctly, you must first make questions clear. (目的)

You will live **to see what communism is.** (結果)

He have been training hard **to make such a good result.** (結果)

We are very happy to hear of your success. (原因)

§6. 动名词(the Gerund)

1. 动名词的结构和特点: 动名词也是动词的非谓语形式。因此, 它在句中也不能作谓语用。它是由动词变来的名词, 因此, 它具有动词的性质和名词的功用。动名词的结构形式是在动词的末尾加“-ing”, 如:

doing, working, increasing.

2. 动名词短语: 动名词具有动词的性质, 因此它可以有状语和宾语, 动名词和它的状语或宾语结合起来就构成动名词短语, 如:

developing sports in China, (带宾语和状语)

working hard, (带状语)

doing exercise, (带宾语)

3. 动名词的时态和语态: 动名词有一般和完成两种时态。一般时态表示的动作与谓语所表示的动作同时发生, 或不明确表示何时发生的动作。完成时态则表示其动作发生在谓语所表示的动作之前。动名词有主动和被动两种语态。

| | 主 动 | 被 动 |
|----|-------------|------------------|
| 一般 | doing | being done |
| 完成 | having done | having been done |

例: I don't like **talking** like that.

I don't remember **having promised** you that.

He is afraid of **being talked** about.

4. 动名词和动名词短语的用途: 动名词具有名词的功用, 因此, 它在句子中可以作主语、表语、宾语之用。动名词前面加用前置词还可以作状语和定语用。

(1) 动名詞作主語用

Learning Marxism-Leninism is necessary for everybody.

Reading without understanding is of little use.

动名詞用作主語時，我們往往可以把它放在句末，而在句首用先行詞“it”來代替，如：

It is necessary for everybody **learning Marxism-Leninism.**

It is a good idea **asking each other questions.**

(2) 动名詞作表語用

The aim of the Party's educational policy is **training cultured working people with socialist political out-look.**

Our common purpose is **building socialism in our country.**

One of the most important way to improve your English is **reading carefully.**

(3) 动名詞作賓語用：动名詞作賓語用的情况很多。

The players stopped **playing** as the referee blew the whistle.

You should keep **trying** before you succeed.

Try to avoid **fouling** whenever you take part in a competition.

It needs **practicing every day.**

They began **making plan for the work.**

(4) 动名詞也可以做前置詞的賓語，这种帶前置詞的动名詞短語可在句子中作定語或狀語用。

He felt a little better **after resting for a while.**

(狀語)

On arriving at the stadium, we found a large crowd

of people waiting at the door. (状語)

They were surprised at your doing that. (状語)

Have you any difficulties in learning English? (状語)

You can't get good results without studying hard.
(状語)

There are many reasons for our learning English.
(定語)

He has a lot of experiences in running long distance
races. (定語)

He has a good habit of doing exercises every morning.
(定語)

Our coach has adopted a new way of training his
athletes. (定語)

5. 名詞化的动名詞，一个动名詞有时可以进一步名詞化，具有更多的名詞特点，它可以有冠詞，可以用定語来形容，有时甚至可以有复数。

例如：

He always makes good starts in his sprintings.

Much time has been spent on the making of plans.

It needs careful planning.

§7. 分詞 (the Participles)

1. 分詞的性質和特点，分詞也是一种动詞非謂語形式。它除了和助動詞合用能构成进行时、完成时或被动語态之外（見本章§3和§4），还具有形容詞和副詞的性質，因此在句子中它可以作定語、状語、表語和賓語补語之用。分詞有两种，即現在分詞和过去分詞（見本章§2）。如：

| | |
|----------|---------|
| writing | written |
| beating | beaten |
| carrying | carried |

現在分詞和过去分詞在使用时有不同的含义，現在分詞含有

主动的意义，其所表示的动的时间，和謂語所表示的动的时间同时，过去分詞含有完成或被动的意义。如：

Look at the **rising sun**. (the sun that is rising).

He is a **trained athlete**. (an athlete who has been well trained).

2. 分詞短語：和不定式、动名詞一样，分詞也可以和它自己的状語、表語和宾語构成分詞短語：

Being an **inexperienced runner**. (带表語)

Walking **on for a while**. (带状語)

Gathering **all our strength**. (带宾語)

Beaten **in the last match**. (带状語)

注：現在分詞及其短語的結構形式和动名詞一样，但用法完全不同，必須十分注意。

3. 分詞的时态和語态：現在分詞有一般和完成时态，也有主动和被动語态。

| | 一般时 | 完成时 |
|----|------------|------------------|
| 主动 | doing | having done |
| 被动 | being done | having been done |

4. 分詞的用途：分詞具有形容詞的性質，因此，可在句子中作定語、表語、状語、宾語补語用。

(1) 分詞作定語用，

a. **exciting** event. (紧张的项目)

smiling face. (笑脸)

rushing water. (激流)

hard-working student. (努力学习的學生)

b. **excited** man. (激动的人)

defeated team. (失败的队)

fixed zone. (固定区域)

well-trained athlete. (受过良好訓練的運動員)

用分詞短語作定語時，它跟在被修飾的名詞後面，其作用和一個定語从句差不多。

- a. You may ask the man **sitting** (=who is sitting) **at the desk.**

Many of our fellow-students **taking part in** (=who took part in) **the competition** received prizes.

While I was walking **along the road leading** (=which leads) **to the Stadium,** I met an old friend.

- b. The cross-country race is a race (which is) **run in the open country** instead of on the track.

There isn't much time (which is) **left for doing that sort of things.**

Chairman Mao is the greatest leader (who is) **loved by all Chinese people.**

(2) 分詞作表語用:

- a. The story is very **interesting.**

The match was quite **exciting.**

Everything looks **Charming** (迷人的) after the rain.

- b. He looked **excited** on hearing the news.

There are no sports our people are not **interested in.**

The teacher was **pleased** to see the students doing their homework correctly.

(3) 分詞作狀語用: 表示時間、原因、動作的方式或陪衬性的動作。

- a) 表示時間的狀語和狀語从句的功用差不多。

Having covered some distance, the ghost suggested taking turns to carry each other on the back.

(After they had covered some distance, the ghost. . .)

(While) walking along the street, I met an old friend.

(While I was walking along the street, I. . .)

Picking up speed, he passed all other runners one by one and finished first.

(After he picked up speed, he. . .)

b) 当原因状語用的分詞短語，其功用和状語从句差不多。

Being a new ghost, I am quite ignorant of what we ghosts are most afraid of.

(Since I am a new ghost, I. . .)

Having failed several times, he had no courage to try again.

(As he had failed several times, he. . .)

(Though) defeated in the last match, they were not in low spirits.

(Though they were defeated in the last match, they. . .)

c) 表示动作的方式或陪衬的动作。

He was sitting at the desk reading a book.

(He was sitting at the desk and was reading a book)

The farmhands ran out, knocking the landlord down and beating him hard.

(The farmhands ran out, knocked the landlord down and beat him hard.)

The old man stood there, surrounded (包围) by his three sons.

(The old man stood there and was surrounded by his three sons.)

(4) 分詞在复合宾語中作宾語补語用。

Don't you see a girl running towards us?

You will feel your heart beating faster after doing

exercise.

The teacher wants all homework clearly written.

§.8. 助動詞和情態動詞

1. 助動詞：本身沒有詞義，幫助別的動詞來表示時態、語態、語氣或構成否定式和疑問式。英語有以下這些助動詞：

to be (am, is, are, was, were, been, being)

to have (has, had, having)

shall (should)

will (would)

do (did, does)

(1) to be 用法

She is playing table tennis now. (構成進行時)

She was asked to answer the question. (構成被動語態)

She is to go to Shanghai to-morrow. (和不定式構成謂語。表示將來一定發生的動作)

(2) to have 用法

Our team has won the game. (構成完成時)

(3) do 的用法

Did he go to the Peking Worker's Stadium? (構成疑問句)

He did not go there. (構成否定句)

He does go to take part in the meet. (表示加強語氣)

(4) Shall (should) 的用法

I shall learn to swim next month. (構成將來時)

He asked me whether I should be free to-night. (構成過去將來時)

shall (should) 在用來表示將來時，一般只用於第一人稱。

(5) Will (would) 的用法

You will have got to Shanghai by this time to-morrow.

(构成将来时)

She said she would not be able to see the game.

(构成过去将来时)

Will (would) 在用来表示将来时，一般只用于第二、三人称。

2. 情态动词：本身有一定意思，但要和别的动词一起才能构成谓语，英语的情态动词主要有以下几个：

can (过去式 could)

may (过去式 might)

must

have to (过去式 had to)

need

ought to

shall (过去式 should)

will (过去式 would)

(1) can (could) 的用法：

表示能力： They can speak English.

表示可能性或不可能性： I thought he could not come.

The news can not be true.

could 用以客气地提问题或表示意见：

Could you give us another chance to try?

(2) may (might) 的用法

表示允许： You may go home now.

表示可能性： Our team may visit the Soviet Union next month.

表示愿望： May you live happily.

表示目的： They trained hard that they might win the game.

(3) must 的用法

表示必要性或責任: You **must** follow these rules.

must 和 **to be** 連用表示“一定”:

This sentence **must** be wrong.

(4) **have to** (had to) 的用法

表示必須: The students **have to** do morning exercises every day.

(5) **need** 的用法

主要在否定句中當情態動詞用, 表示不必:

You **need not** come.

(6) **ought to** 的用法

表示該做的事: You **ought to** shoot accurately.

(7) **Shall** (Should) 的用法

用在第二、三人稱表示願望、決心:

You **shall** not stay here. (說話者的願望)

They **shall** learn the skill. (行為者的決心)

表示應該: We **should** do our homework carefully.

表示驚異: It is a pity that he **should** have lost the game.

(8) **Will** (would) 的用法

用在第一人稱表示願望決心:

I **will** help you to do it. (願望)

I **will** do my best to get the first place. (決心)

would 表示過去的習慣:

When he was a child, he **would** go to play football every afternoon.

would 表示有禮貌的請求: **Would** you go with us?

第八章 副詞 (The Adverb)

§1. 副詞用來說明動詞、形容詞和副詞

副詞在說明動詞時用來表明：

動作的方式，如：slowly, carefully, correctly.

動作的時間，如：yesterday, to-morrow, often.

動作的地點，如：here, there .

副詞在說明形容詞和副詞時用來表明：

程度，如：very, rather, too.

§2. 英語的副詞多半是用來表明動作的方式的，這種副詞一般由形容詞加“ly”構成（遇到詞尾是“y”時，改“y”為“i”再加“ly”，詞尾為able時去“e”加“y”）。

例： slow——slowly
careful——carefully
happy——happily
able——ably

§3. 副詞和形容詞一樣有比較級和最高級，但它的比較級和最高級往往是在詞前加“more”和“most”。例：

| 原 級 | 比 較 級 | 最 高 級 |
|---------|--------------|--------------|
| slowly | more slowly | most slowly |
| bravely | more bravely | most bravely |
| quickly | more quickly | most quickly |

下面几个副詞的等級是不規則的:

| 原 級 | 比 較 級 | 最 高 級 |
|--------|---------|----------|
| well | better | best |
| badly | worse | worst |
| little | less | least |
| far | farther | farthest |
| much | more | most |

§4. 疑問副詞: 疑問副詞是用来对动作的方式、時間、地点提問的, 英語的疑問副詞有:

When (何時): **When** do you go to swim?

Where (何處): **Where** do you live?

How (如何): **How** do you make this plan?

Why (為何): **Why** do you study English?

§5. 关系副詞和連系副詞:

关系副詞用来引起形容詞从句。英語的关系副詞有 When, Where, why。連系副詞用来引起名詞从句。英語的連系副詞有 how, when, where, why, whether 等。

§6 副詞在句中的位置:

1. 表明不确定時間的, 如 Often, always 等副詞放于所說明的動詞前。

例: He **often** goes to the reading room.

I **always** do my homework at night.

2. 表明确定時間的副詞可以放于句首或句尾。

例: **Yesterday** he ran a Marathon.

They will play football against Class B **to-morrow**.

3. 表明地点、方式的副詞通常放于句尾。

例: They walk **slowly**.

We don't often go **there**.

4. 說明形容詞、副詞的副詞放在該詞的前面。

例: He shoots **very well**.

The centre-forward is **rather tall**.

第九章 前置詞 (The preposition)

§1. 前置詞不能獨立担任句子的成分, 只能用在一個名詞或相當於名詞的成分之前, 說明這個名詞和句子另一個成分的關係。

例: We have English lessons **in** this classroom.

The picture **on** the wall is chairman Mac.

上例中的 **in** 用在 **classroom** 前, 表明 **classroom** 和 **have** 的關係, 說明上課在什麼地點, **on** 用在 **wall** 前面, 表明 **wall** 和 **picture** 的關係, 說明什麼地方的照片。

§2. 英語主要有下面三種類型的**前置詞**:

1. 簡單前置詞: On, under, about, down, near, up, along, towards, off, like, among, ……等。

2. 合成前置詞: Out of, within, without, into, inside, outside, ……等。

3. 成語前置詞: in front of, according to, by means of, because of, ……等。

§3. 前置詞和它的名詞或相當於名詞的成分構成**前置詞短語**, 我們稱這個名詞或相當於名詞的成分為這個前置詞的**賓語**。前置詞短語在句子中有以下作用:

1. 用作**狀語**:

例: We study **at the Peking Institute of Physical Culture**.

I met him **in the gymnasium** last night.

He lives in Peking.

We take our breakfast at seven.

Students often go to the pictures on Sunday.

Our players usually warm themselves up before the game.

The teacher explains in English.

The game begins with a centre jump.

2. 用作定語:

例: We are students of new China.

我們是新中国的大學生。

This is a classroom of our Institute.

這是我們學院的一個教室。

The book on the desk is mine.

書桌上的這本書是我的。

The girl in the room is my sister.

房間里的這個女孩子是我的妹妹。

This is a story about the old peasant.

這是關於這個老農民的故事。

The bell for supper is ringing.

晚飯鈴響了。

3. 用作表語:

例: She is at home now.

She is not like her mother.

第十章 連接詞 (The Conjunction)

§1. 連接詞不能獨立擔任句子的成分,而只起連接詞與詞、短語和短語以及句和句的作用。

例: The game began as soon as we got there. (連接句與句)

You will find him in the reading room or in the

basketball court. (连接短語与短語)

I have brother and sisters. (连接詞与詞)

§2. 連接詞有以下兩類:

1. 等立連接詞: 用来連接同等的詞、短語或分句。

例: He studies **not only** English **but also** Russian.

You must train hard, **or** you will not be able to pass the test.

这类連接詞有: and, but, or, so, therefore, yet, however, as well as, both . . . and, not only . . . but also, either . . . or, neither . . . nor . . . 等。

2. 从屬連接詞: 用来引起从句。

例: She had studied Russian for three years **before** she took up English.

He can not come, **because** he is training now.

这类連接詞常見的有: after, when, before, as, while, till, although, though, if, even if, unless, because, that, whether, so that, as soon as, as long as, in order that, as if, as . . . as, so . . . as, . . . 等。

第十一章 感叹詞 (The Interjection)

§1. 感叹詞往往放于句首, 它不构成后面句子的一个成分, 只是在意思上有关連, 它用来表示在說話时产生的情緒。

例: Oh, it's so exciting! (it 代表 the game)

啊, 這場比賽这么紧张!

§2. 常用的感叹詞如下:

| | |
|--------------|---------------|
| oh (或 ah, O) | 表示喜悦、惊奇、痛苦。 |
| hallo | 用来向对方打招呼。 |
| well | 表示惊异, 犹疑、松口气。 |
| why | 表示惊异。 |

alas

表示痛苦，焦急。

第十二章 句子种类 (kinds of Sentences)

句子按使用目的可以分四种：

陈述句 (Declarative)

疑問句 (Interrogative)

祈使句 (Imperative)

感叹句 (Exclamatory)

1. 陈述句：用来说明一个事实或看法，可以是肯定的，也可以是否定的。

例： Our team is rather strong.

He has gone to Shanghai.

We did not see the game.

They will not go with us.

2. 疑問句：疑問句有以下四种：

(1) 一般疑問句：对事物之是否提出問題，回答时用“是”或“否”。

例： Are you an athlete?

Yes, I am. (或： Yes, I am an athlete.)

Is he a teacher?

No, he is not. (或： No, he is not a teacher.)

Have you a watch?

Yes, I have. (或： Yes, I have a watch.)

Do you train sprinting?

Yes, I do. (或： Yes, I train sprinting.)

在构成一般疑問句时，要将句中紧接主語后的助动词或情态动词放于句首。如謂語是 to be 或 to have，則將它們放于句首，如謂語是缺乏助动词或情态动词的表意动词，則在句首加 do (第三人称单数现在时用 does，过去时一律用 did)。

(2)特殊疑問句: 用來提出“為什麼”, “什麼時候”, “誰”, “怎樣”等問題, 它們不是用“是”或“否”來回答, 必須針對所問來回答。

例: Who is your English teacher?

Comrade Liu is my English teacher.

Whom do you want to see?

I want to see comrade Liu.

特殊疑問句所用的疑問詞有以下几个:

who 誰(主格)

whom 誰(賓格)

whose 誰的(所有格)

what 什麼

which 哪個

when 何時

where 何地

how 如何

why 為何

特殊疑問句有兩種形式:

第一種: 疑問詞(或疑問詞+其他詞)+謂語+其他成分

例: Who likes to play volleyball?

Who teaches you English?

Who is in the room?

Which book is yours?

Which is better?

第二種: 疑問詞(或疑問詞+其他詞)+一般疑問句

例: When did you begin to learn English?

Where do you live?

How are you?

How old is your brother?

How many sisters have you?

Why do you want to study physical culture?

Whose letter are you reading?

What are they doing now?

What do you want?

- (3) 选择疑问句: 对两种不同的情况, 要弄清楚哪一种对时, 所提的疑问句叫选择疑问句。

例: Does he live in Peking or in Shanghai?

- (4) 反意疑问句: 当提問人对所提的問題已經有一定的主見, 但不完全肯定, 还需要再問一下, 以便証实时, 所提的問句叫反意疑問句。

You are a coach, aren't you?

You can not speak English, can you?

3. 祈使句: 祈使句是用来向对方提請求、命令、劝告的句子, 它的結構是: 謂語+其他成分

例: Be quick!

Give me a pencil, please.

Hand in your paper.

Don't smoke too much.

Let us go.

4. 感叹句: 感叹句是用来表示喜悦、惊奇、感叹及其他强烈感情的句子。

結構: What(用于名詞前) + 所強調的成分 + 主語 + 謂語
How(用于其他詞類前)

例: What a good athlete he is!

What an exciting game it is!

How fast he runs!

How clean your classroom is!

第十三章 句子类型 (Types of Sentences)

从結構上說, 句子有以下四种类型:

简单句 (Simple Sentences)

等立复合句(Compound Sentences)

主从复合句(Complex Sentences)

等立主从复合句 (Compound-Complex Sentences)

§1. 简单句: 只包含一个主謂结构的句子。

例: We like sports.

我們喜愛运动。

We love our country.

我們愛我們的国家。

They are footballers.

他們是足球運動員。

Comrade Wang and Comrade Liu are good swimmers.

王同志和刘同志是好的游泳運動員。

The students study and play together.

學生們在一起学习和玩。

以上例句全是简单句。在简单句中有时可以有两个主語共一个謂語或两个謂語共一个主語，或两个以上的主語共两个以上的謂語。

§2. 等立复合句: 等立复合句包括两个以上的主謂结构。这些主謂结构互不依从，在句中处于同等地位，我們可以用等立連接詞把它們連結起来；有时，不用連接詞，只用逗号或分号分开。

例: He works and I study.

他工作，我学习。

The sky was clear, but the wind was cold.

天空晴朗，但风是冷的。

You must train hard, or you will fail in the test.

你必须努力訓練，否則你将通不过測驗。

Hurry up; it is getting late.

赶快，要迟到了。

§3. 主从复合句：主从复合句包含两个以上的主謂結構，其中有一个是主要的，称主句，其他是次要的，称从句。我們可以用从屬連接詞把从句和主句連結起来。从句有三种，現分述如下：

1. 名詞从句

名詞从句在句中起名詞作用，可用作主語、賓語、表語，因此又称主語从句、賓語从句、表語从句。

(1) 名詞从句用以下詞和主句連接，請注意這些詞在名詞从句中的意思。

that (本身沒有意思，只起連接的作用)

I know that he is a coach.

我知道他是一個教練

whether, if (兩個詞都解釋為“是否”)

I don't know whether (或 if) he can take part in the race.

我不知道他是否能參加這個賽跑。

who (解釋為“誰”)

Who will be our team leader has not been decided yet.

誰將擔任我們的隊長，還沒有決定。

What (代表所說的或所做的)

What we need is the courage to defeat any strong team.

我們所需要的是有擊敗任何強隊的勇氣。

What we have to do is to study hard.

我們所必須做的是努力學習。

Which (解釋“哪個”)

Which team will win the match is still a question.

哪一隊會贏得這場比賽仍然是一個疑問。

When (解释“何时”)

Tell me when the game begins.

告訴我比賽什麼時候開始。

Where (解释“何处”)

I don't know where he lives.

我不知道他住在什麼地方。

how (解释“如何”)

They will tell us how they train sprinting.

他們將告訴我們他們是怎樣訓練短跑的。

Why (解释“为何”)

This is why he is so happy.

这就是为什么他这样的高兴。

注：名詞从句當賓語用時連接詞that可省略。

例：I hope (that) I shall run faster.

(2) 名詞从句的用途及位置：

a. 用作主語，放在謂語前面。

例：That every one will pass the test is very clear.

注：名詞从句在用作主語時有時也可以放於句末，用it開頭。

It is very clear that every one will pass the test.

b. 用作賓語，放在謂語後面（如作前置詞的賓語則放在該前置詞的後面）。

例：Marx said that books were his slaves.

He was asked about what he was going to do in summer.

c. 用作表語，放在連系動詞後面。

例：That is why he could set another world record.

(3) 在解釋名詞从句時，基本上按原語序解釋，請注意以下句子的漢英對比。

What he said is true.

他所說的是真的。

We believe that our athlete will set more world records.

我們相信，我們的運動員將會創造更多的世界紀錄。

That we train harder is known to every one.

我們訓練得更努力是大家所知道的。

2. 副詞从句

副詞从句用來說明時間、地點、條件、原因、結果……等

(1) 副詞从句的連接詞：常用的連接詞如下：

when (當…的時候)

since (自從，既然，

until (直到)

因為)

as (當…的時候，由
于，因為)

because (因為)

before (在…以前)

after (在…以後)

if (如果)

as long as (只要)

as if (好象)

even if (即使)

although, though (虽
然)

so...that (如此的
…以致于)

so that (因此)

the more...the

as soon as (…一當)

more... (越…

越…)

例：The referee blew the whistle as the ball got into the net.

當球進網時，裁判員吹哨子。

He teaches me basketball, as he has experience in teaching it.

他教我籃球，因為他有教籃球的經驗。

The game began as soon as we reached the stadium.

我們一到體育場，比賽馬上開始。

He looks as if he were an weight-lifter.

他看起来好象是一个举重运动员。

Several years have passed since we came here.

自从我們来这里，好几年已經过去了。

Since you are here, you had better do it yourself.

既然你在这里，你最好自己做这件事。

The game was so exciting that we all enjoyed it very much.

這場比賽如此的紧张，以致于我們都非常欣賞它。

注：正确理解副詞从句的连接詞的意思是非常重要的，只要理解了连接詞，就能理解全句。

(2) 副詞从句的位置是在主句前或主句后，和主句之間有时有逗号分开，有时不用逗号分开。在譯成汉语时，表示時間的从句一般放主句前面；表示原因的从句有时在前，有时在后；表示結果的从句放于主句后面；表示条件的从句則放于主句前面。

例：We go to swim when summer comes.

到夏天的时候，我們去游泳。（時間）

We helped him to do it, because he was unable to do it alone.

我們帮他做这件事，因为他自己单独做不了。（原因）

We must study English well, so that we can use it to serve the cause of socialism.

我們應該学好英語，因此我們才能用它来为社会主义事业服务。（結果）

If you do speed walking every day, your heart and lungs will be strengthened.

如果你每天練習竞走，你的心肺会得到增强。（条件）

3. 形容詞从句

形容詞从句在句中起定語作用，主要用来说明句中的名詞

或代詞，因此又稱定語从句。

(1) 形容詞从句用以下連接詞和主句連結，請注意這些連接詞在形容詞从句中的意思和用途。

Who (本身沒有意思，用來代表人，在從句中作主語)
The boy **who is playing basketball** is my brother.
正在打籃球的小孩是我的兄弟。

Whom (本身沒有意思，用來代表人，在從句中作賓語)
He is the comrade **whom I want to see**.
他是我要見的那位同志。

Whose (本身沒有意思，用來代表“某人的”，在從句中作定語)
A person **whose name is Li-ming** came to see me yesterday.

一個名字叫李明的人昨天來看我。

Which (本身沒有意思，用來代表物，在從句中作主語或賓語)

He gave me a book **which was written by Lu Hsun**.
他給我一本魯迅著的書。(用作主語)

The game **which I saw last night** was very exciting.

昨晚我看的那場比賽很緊張。(用作賓語)

that (本身沒有意思，用來代表人或物，在從句中作主語或賓語)

The person **that passes the test** will receive a badge.
通過測驗的人將拿到一個証章。(代表人，用作主語)

It is the picture **that we saw last night**.

這是我們昨晚看見的那張圖片。(代表物，用作賓語)

when (本身沒有意思，代表前面名詞所指出的時間，在從句中作狀語)

It was the year **when I began to learn English**.

这是我开始学习英语的那一年。

where (本身沒有意思, 代表前面名詞所指出的地点,
在从句中作状語)

**The Peking Worker's Stadium is the place where
we shall see the international game.**

北京工人体育场是我們将要看国际比賽的地点。

why (作“为什么”解释, 在从句中作状語)

Is this the reason why you don't want to go?

这就是你为什么不想去的理由嗎?

注: 連接詞 **whom, which, that** 在从句中作宾語时可省略。
例:

He is the comrade (whom) I want to see.

**The game (which) I saw last night was very ex-
citing.**

It is the picture (that) we saw last night.

(2) 如果連接詞作为从句中前置詞的宾語, 那么前置詞的位
置可以在从句的結尾, 也可以在連接詞前:

例: **The house which we live in faces south.**

The house we live in faces south.

The house in which we live faces south.

(3) 形容詞从句的位置一般是在紧接着所說明的名詞或代詞
的后面, 在譯成漢語时往往将从句放在被說明的名詞或代詞前,
但如果从句和主句之間有逗号分开, 或从漢語角度来看不便于放
在前面譯, 則应分开譯。

例: **He is the person who set a new record.**

他就是創造新紀錄的那个人。

Everything that we saw was of great interest.

我們看到的每一件东西都是很有意思的。

**This is the classroom in which we have our English
lessons.**

這是我們上英語課的教室。

Yesterday I met an old friend, **who was very pleased to see me.**

昨天我遇見一個老朋友，他看到我非常高興。

Three years ago, they came to Peking, **where they worked at a factory.**

三年前，他們到了北京，在那裡他們在一個工廠工作。

My brother is a high-jumper, **whose name is Li-ming.**

我的兄弟是一個跳高運動員，他的名字叫李明。

注：以上例句中的後三句的從句和主句有逗號分開，因此可以分開翻譯，這種從句如果省略，句子意思的完整性不受影響，而前三句的從句則不能省略。

§4. 等立主從複合句

等立複合句中包含一個或一個以上的從句時稱等立主從複合句。

例：He will go to see the game if he has time, but I shall stay here to do my homework.

In school it is not so easy to learn a second language because the students have so little time for it, and they are busy with other subjects as well.

第十四章 “It” 的用法

“It” 的用法主要有以下四種：

§1. “It” 用作指示代詞，用以指事物，人或上文提到的現象。

例：I attended a football match. It was very exciting.
我看了一場足球賽，這場足球賽非常緊張。（“It” 指一場足球賽）

Who is singing? It is comrade Wang.

誰在唱歌？是王同志。（“It”指在唱歌的人）

He will run a Marathon to-morrow. It is not an easy job.

他明天要跑馬拉松，這不是件容易的事。（“It”指他明天要跑馬拉松這件事）

§2. “It”用作無人稱代詞，當主語用，表示自然現象，時間，距離或其他情況。

例：It is fine to-day.

今天天晴。

It is raining.

下雨了。

It is already ten o'clock.

已經十點了。

It is Sunday to-day.

今天是星期天。

It is about two miles to the station.

這裡到火車站約兩英里路。

It is only ten minutes' walk to the stadium.

這裡到體育場走路只要十分鐘。

It is very crowded here.

這裡很擁擠。

It is quite close in the room.

房間內很悶。

§3. “It”用以代替主語或賓語，把真正的主語或賓語移到後面去，能被“it”所代替的主語或賓語有以下三類：

1. 代替不定式短語

例：It is our duty to study hard.

努力學習是我們的責任。（代替主語）

It is not so easy to master a language.

掌握一种語言不是那么容易的。(代替主語)

He found it difficult to explain this sentence.

他发现解释这个句子有困难。(代替宾語)

2. 代替动名詞短語

例: It is no use making such an experiment.

做这样的实验是没有用的。(代替主語)

It is a good habit doing morning exercises every day.

每天做早操是一种好习惯。(代替主語)

I think it necessary telling her the truth.

我认为告诉她真实情况是必要的。(代替宾語)

3. 代替名詞从句

例: It is good news that our team has won the championship.

我們队得了冠軍是好消息。(代替主語)

It is very likely that he will coach our team.

他将訓練我們的队是非常可能的。(代替主語)

We think it necessary that our team should train harder.

我們认为,我們队更努力地訓練是必要的。(代替宾語)

§4. "It" 用来強調句中的某一成分

例: 原句: I saw a basketball match in the gymnasium last last evening.

我昨晚在体育館看一場籃球賽。

強調句:

It was I who saw a basketball match in the gymnasium last evening.

是我昨晚在体育館看了一場籃球賽。(強調主語)

It was last evening that I saw a basketball match in the gymnasium.

是昨晚我在體育館看了一場籃球賽。(強調時間狀語)

It was in the gymnasium that I saw a basketball match last evening.

是在體育館我昨晚看了一場籃球賽。(強調地點狀語)

It was a basketball match that I saw in the gymnasium last evening.

我昨晚在體育館看的正是一場籃球賽。(強調賓語)

第十五章 省略句 (Elliptical Sentences)

一個句子中有时有一个或更多的成分被省略掉，这种句子称为省略句。省略句大多用在回答問題、接着別人說話、叙述自己意見、提出問題等場合中。被省略的成分可以是主語、謂語，也可以是賓語、狀語或其他成分。

1. 主語的省略

(I) Haven't seen you for ages!

好久不見了!

(you) Never think that you already know everything.

永远不要認為你已經懂得了一切。

2. 謂語或謂語的一部分的省略

Some of the students study English; others (study) Russian.

有些学生学习英語，其他的学习俄語。

My time is 11 seconds, his, (is) 10.7.

我的成績是11秒，他的成績是10秒7。

I am older than he (is old).

我比他年紀大。

3. 主語和謂語(或謂語的一部分)的省略

What kind of sports do you like? (I like) Basketball.

你喜欢哪一种运动？篮球。

He is an excellent forward, though (he is) very young.

虽然他很年轻，但他是一个出色的前锋。

If (it is) possible, keep near your opponent all the time.

如果可能，随时看紧你的对手。

4. 宾语的省略

What kind of sports do you like best?

Well, it is hard to tell. (it).

你最喜欢哪一种运动？嗯，这很难说。

Don't you know her address?

No, I forget (her address).

难道你不知道她的地址吗？对，我忘了。

Will you run a Marathon?

I'll try (to run a Marathon).

你要跑马拉松吗？我要试试。

5. 不定式和其他东西的省略

He never came, though he ought to (come).

虽然他应该来，但他从没来过。

Shall we be late?

I hope (we shall) not (be late).

我们会迟到吗？我希望不会。

第十六章 假设语气 (The Subjunctive Mood)

§1. 假设语气可以用来表示“未定”(uncertainty)或“纯粹假设”(pure supposition)。常用的假设语气有四种：

1. 假设语气现在时

用法：表示现在或将来的“未定”假设

結構：条件从句的謂語動詞用原形動詞

例：If you train hard, you will break the record.

假如你努力訓練，你將會打破紀錄。

Come to see us if you are free.

假如你有空，來看我們。

2. 假設語氣將來時

用法：表示將來“未定”的假設

結構：条件从句的謂語動詞用 should (或 were to) + 原形動詞

主句的謂語動詞用 should, would, could 或 might + 原形動詞

例：If you should study hard, you would pass the examination.

假如你努力學習，你就會通過考試。

If you were to ask him the question, he might answer it.

假如你要問他這個問題，他可能回答。

If he should pass the ball to me, I could kick it into the net.

假如他傳球給我，我能踢球進網。

3. 假設語氣過去時

用法：表示和現在事實相反的假設

結構：条件从句的謂語動詞用一般過去時（有 to be 的地方一律用 were）

主句的謂語動詞用 should, would, could 或 might + 原形動詞。

例：If I were a swimmer, I would teach you how to swim.

假如我是一個游泳運動員，我會教你如何游泳。（事實是我不是個游泳運動員）

If he had time, he would help us.

假如他有時間，他会幫助我們。（事实是他沒有時間）

4. 假設語气过去完成时

用法：表示与过去事实相反的假設

結構：条件从句的謂語動詞用过去完成时

主句的謂語動詞用 should, would, could, might +
have + 过去分詞

例：If he had not left Peking, he might have seen the
international match.

假如他沒有离开北京，他可能看到這場国际比賽。（事
实是他离开了北京）

If he had gone there, he would have met me.

假如他去那里，他会遇到我。（事实是他沒有去那里）

注：如果条件从句含有一个助動詞、情态動詞、to be 或 ot
have 时，我們可以去掉 "if"，把上述的这些詞放于句首。

例：

Had he time, he would help us.

Should you study hard, you would pass the
examination.

Were I a swimmer, I would teach you how to swim.

§2. 假設語气的其他用法

1. 表示願望

例：I wish I were a coach.

我希望我是个教練。（事实是我現在不是个教練）

I wish I could run as fast as a sprinter.

我希望我能跑得象短跑運動員那样快。（事实是我現在
不能跑得那样快）

2. 用在 as if 或 as though 所引导的从句中

例：He looks as if he were a weight-lifter.

他看起来好象是一个举重運動員。（事实上他不是一个

举重运动员)

3. 用以表达建議或命令

例: I suggest that we should take part in the meet.
我建議我們應該参加这个运动会。

第十七章 标点符号 (Punctuation)

1. 句号 (.) (the full stop 或 the period)

用在陈述句、祈使句、縮写之后:

We do morning exercises every day.

Come in.

U.S.S.R. (the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics).

2. 问号 (?) (the question mark)

用在疑問句之后:

What kind of sports do you like best?

Do you study English?

3. 感叹号 (!) (the exclamation mark)

用在感叹句、感叹詞或短語之后

How exciting the game is!

Hurrah! We have won the game.

Good-bye!

Let us go!

4. 逗号 (,) (the comma)

(1) 用以分开一系列的單詞、短語或从句:

Students learn English, anatomy, physiology, football and some other subjects.

Our visitors came by train, by airplane and by ship.

I do not know who he is, where he comes from, and what he will do.

(2)用以分开独立成分、插入語、分詞短語、放于首句的副詞短語:

He is, indeed, a good athlete. (插入語)

The work being easy, we finished it at once. (独立成分)

Having finished his training, he went to take a bath. (分詞短語)

On his way home, he came across his coach. (放句首的副詞短語)

(3)在下列情況下用以分开复合句中的分句:

If it rains to-morrow, we shall not go to swim.

(副詞从句在主句前)

We welcome our coach, who has just returned from Shanghai. (和主句关系不密切、省略掉对主句意思上的完整不受影响的形容詞从句)

The sun was shining brightly, the air was fresh and cold. (沒有連接詞的等立复合句)

I asked him about it, but he could not tell me anything. (有連接詞,但句子稍为长一些的等立复合句)

(4)用以分开地址、日期或省略部分:

The Red Star People's Commune, Peking, China
May 5, 1960

My time is 11 seconds and his, 10.7.

(5)用在非強調的感嘆詞之后,用在 yes, no 之后:

Well, let us go.

Yes, I know.

No, I do not know.

5.分号(;) (the semicolon)

用在等立复合句中表示比逗号长、比句号短的停顿:

The weather was fine; the sky was blue; there was no wind.

The wind is from the north; therefore it is cold.

6. 冒号 (:) (the colon)

(1) 用在列举的东西前面:

There are five players in a basketball team: a centre, two forwards and two guards.

(2) 用在引話的前面:

I said to him: "I am going to the stadium. Won't you go with me?"

7. 破折号 (—) (the dash)

(1) 用以指思想的突然中断或用以分开插入語:

Yesterday I met your teacher, comrade—what is his name?

The game—I think—will be very exciting.

(2) 用以表示說話时的迟疑:

He said: "I -I-I want to go home now."

(3) 用以注释前文:

It raises one of the major problems in sports—the problem of longevity.

8. 引号 (" ") (the quotation marks)

(1) 用以分开引話:

He said: "Let us start."

(2) 用以分开書名, 刊名, 題目名:

We have read "the Song of Youth";

We like to read "China's Sports".

(3) 用以喚起讀者对某些單詞或短語的注意:

The word "become" is a linking verb.

9. 省略号 (') (the apostrophe)

(1) 用以指出字母、数字的省略:

I don't know where he lives.

He was born on March 1, '55.

(2)用以組成所有格:

Liu's brother is studying at the Peking Institute of Physical Culture.

10. 連字號 (-) (the hyphen)

用在複合詞各部分之間或用來分音節以便宜於單詞移行。

man-to-man (複合詞)

for-get (分音節)

第三部分 構詞法

英語構詞法主要有三種:

1. 詞類轉化法: 把一個詞由一種詞類轉為另一種詞類, 作其他用途, 在轉化時詞形不變。

例: He can walk 10 kilo-metres an hour. (walk 用作動詞)

He had a long walk of 10 kilo-metres. (walk 用作名詞)

2. 合成法: 把兩個或兩個以上原有獨立意思的詞連結起來, 構成新詞。

例: sportsman 運動員

basketball 籃球

overcome 克服

all-round 全面的

five-year 五年

man-to-man 人盯人

3. 加綴法: 加綴法有下列兩種:

(1) 加前綴法: 在詞干或詞根前加東西, 一般不改變其詞性, 只限制或加強詞本身的意思。

a. 表示“否定”、“相反”、“反对”、“錯誤”等的前綴

| | | | | |
|--------|-------------|------|------------------|-------|
| dis-: | agree | 同意 | disagree | 不同意 |
| | like | 喜欢 | dislike | 不喜欢 |
| in-: | accurate | 准确 | inaccurate | 不准确 |
| | correct | 正确 | incorrect | 不正确 |
| im-: | possible | 可能 | impossible | 不可能 |
| | mobile | 活动的 | immobile | 不动的 |
| ir-: | regular | 有規則的 | irregular | 无規則的 |
| | responsible | 負責的 | irresponsible | 不負責的 |
| anti-: | imperialist | 帝国主义 | anti-imperialist | 反帝国主义 |

| | | | | |
|-------|------------|----|---------------|----|
| mis-: | understand | 了解 | misunderstand | 誤解 |
|-------|------------|----|---------------|----|

b. 表示“預先”、“以前的”，“在前”、“在后”的前綴

| | | | | |
|--------|---------------|-----|-------------------|------|
| fore-: | head | 头 | forehead | 前額 |
| | arm | 臂 | forearm | 前臂 |
| pre-: | war | 战争 | pre-war | 战前 |
| | revolutionary | 革命的 | pre-revolutionary | 革命前的 |
| post-: | war | 战争 | post-war | 战后 |
| | graduate | 毕业生 | post-graduate | 研究生 |
| ex-: | minister | 部长 | ex-minister | 前部长 |
| | president | 总统 | ex-president | 前总统 |

c. 表示“在一起”的前綴

| | | | | |
|------|-----------|----|--------------|----|
| co-: | operation | 行动 | co-operation | 合作 |
| | existence | 存在 | co-existence | 共存 |

d. 表示“使”，将形容词、名詞轉变为动詞的前綴

| | | | | |
|------|-------|----|---------|------|
| en-: | able | 能夠 | enable | 使…能夠 |
| | large | 大的 | enlarge | 扩大 |
| | slave | 奴隶 | enslave | 奴役 |

e. 表示“之間”的前綴

| | | | | |
|---------|----------|-----|---------------|-----|
| inter-: | national | 国家的 | international | 国际的 |
|---------|----------|-----|---------------|-----|

change 变换 inter-change 交换

(2)加后缀法: 在词根或词干后加东西, 不变词的意思而变其词性。

a. 构成名词的主要后缀

| | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| -ion: educate (v.) | education 教育 (n.) |
| -sion: include (v.) | inclusion 包括 (n.) |
| -ation: organize (v.) | organization 组织 (n.) |
| -ment: move (v.) | movement 动作 (n.) |
| -ness: correct (adj.) | correctness 正确 (n.) |
| -ity: active (adj.) | activity 活动 (n.) |
| -ism: social (adj.) | socialism 社会主义 (n.) |
| -ist: commune (n.) | communist 共产主义者 (n.) |
| -er: work (v.) | worker 工人 (n.) |
| -or: direct (v.) | director 指导者 (n.) |

b. 构成形容词的后缀

| | |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| -able: change (v.) | changeable 能改变的 (adj.) |
| -al: culture (n.) | cultural 文化的 (adj.) |
| -ive: act (v.) | active 积极的 (adj.) |
| -ic: athlete (n.) | athletic 运动的 (adj.) |
| -ent: persist (v.) | persistent 持久的 (adj.) |
| -ful: use (v.) | useful 有用的 (adj.) |
| -ous: nerve (n.) | nervous 神经的 (adj.) |

c. 构成副词的后缀

| | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| -ly: easy (adj.) | easily 容易地 (adv.) |
| -ly: accurate (adj.) | accurately 准确地 (adv.) |

d. 构成动词的后缀

| | |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| -en: strength (n.) | strengthen 增强 (v.) |
| -ize: organ (n.) | organize 组织 (v.) |

第四部分 不規則動詞表

| 現在式 | 過去式 | 過去分詞 |
|-----------|-------------|---------------|
| arise | arose | arisen |
| awake | awoke | awoke |
| | awaked (美) | awaked (用于被动) |
| be | was | been |
| bear 生 | bore | borne |
| | | born |
| beat | beat | beaten |
| become | became | become |
| begin | began | begun |
| bend | bent | bent |
| bind | bound | bound |
| bite | bit | bitten |
| | | (偶作bit) |
| bleed | bled | bled |
| blow | blew | blown |
| break | broke | broken |
| breed | bred | bred |
| bring | brought | brought |
| broadcast | broadcast | broadcast |
| | broadcasted | broadcasted |
| build | built | built |
| burn | burnt | burnt |
| burst | burst | burst |
| buy | bought | bought |
| cast | cast | cast |

| 現在式 | 過去式 | 過去分詞 |
|--------|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| catch | caught | caught |
| choose | chose | chosen |
| cling | clung | clung |
| come | came | come |
| cost | cost | cost |
| creep | crept | crept |
| cut | cut | cut |
| deal | dealt | dealt |
| dig | dug | dug |
| do | did | done |
| draw | drew | drawn |
| dream | { dreamt [dremt]
dreamed | { dreamt
dreamed |
| drink | drank | drunk |
| drive | drove | driven |
| dwell | dwelt | dwelt |
| eat | ate [et'eit] | eaten |
| fall | fell | fallen |
| feed | fed | fed |
| feel | felt | felt |
| fight | fought | fought |
| find | found | found |
| flee | fled | fled |
| fling | flung | flung |
| fly | flew | flown |
| forbid | { forbade
forbad | forbidden |
| forget | forgot | { forgotten
forgot (美) |

| 現在式 | 過去式 | 過去分詞 |
|---------|------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| forgive | forgave | forgiven |
| freeze | froze | frozen |
| get | got | got |
| give | gave | given |
| go | went | gone |
| grind | ground | ground |
| grow | grew | grown |
| hang | hung | hung |
| have | had | had |
| hear | heard | heard |
| hide | hid | { hid
hidden (較常用) |
| hit | hit | hit |
| hold | held | held |
| hurt | hurt | hurt |
| keep | kept | kept |
| kneel | knelt | knelt |
| know | knew | known |
| lay | laid | laid |
| lead | led | led |
| lean | { leant [lent]
{ leaned [li:nd] | { leant
{ leaned |
| leap | { leapt [lept]
{ leaped [li:pt] | { leapt
{ leaped |
| learn | { learnt
{ learned | { learnt
{ learned |
| leave | left | left |

| 現在式 | 過去式 | 過去分詞 |
|-------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| lend | lent | lent |
| let | let | let |
| lie | lay | lain |
| light | { lit
lighted | { lit
lighted (作定語時較多) |
| lose [lu:z] | lost [lɒst] | lost |
| make | made | made |
| mean [min] | meant [ment] | meant |
| meet | met | met |
| pay | paid | paid |
| put | put | put |
| read [ri:d] | read [red] | read [red] |
| ride | rode | ridden |
| ring | rang | rung |
| rise | rose | risen [rizn] |
| run | ran | run |
| saw | sawed | sawn (偶作sawed) |
| say | said [sed] | said |
| see | saw | seen |
| seek | sought | sought |
| sell | sold | sold |
| send | sent | sent |
| set | set | set |
| shake | shook | shaken |
| shave | shaved | { shaved
shaven (主要用作 |
| shed | shed | shed 定語) |

| 現在式 | 過去式 | 過去分詞 |
|--------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| shine [ʃaɪn] | shone [ʃɒn] | shone |
| shoot | shot | shot |
| show | showed | shown (偶作 show-ed) |
| shrink | { shrank | shrunk (作定語用 |
| | { shrunk | 时为 shrunken) |
| shut | shut | shut |
| sing | sang | sung |
| sink | sank (偶作 sunk) | sunk (作定用語時
为 sunken) |
| sit | sat | sat |
| sleep | slept | slept |
| slide | slid | slid |
| smell | { smelt | { smelt |
| | { smelled | { smelled |
| sow | sowed | { sown |
| speak | spoke | { sowed |
| spell | { spelt | { spoken |
| | { spelled | { spelt |
| spend | spent | { spelled |
| spill | { spilt | { spent |
| | { spilled | { spilt |
| spin | spun | { spilled |
| spit | spat | spun |
| split | split | spat |
| spoil | { spoilt | split |
| | { spoiled | { spoilt |
| spread | spread | { spoiled |
| spring | sprang | spread |
| | | sprung |

| 現在式 | 過去式 | 過去分詞 |
|-------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------|
| stand | stood | stood |
| steal | stole | stolen |
| stick | stuck | stuck |
| sting | stung | stung |
| strike | struck | { struck
stricken (仅作定語
或表語) |
| strive | strove | striven ['stivn] |
| swear | swore | sworn |
| sweep | swept | swept |
| swell | swelled | swollen(偶作 swe-
lled |
| swim | swam | swum |
| swing | swung | swung |
| take | took | taken |
| teach | taught | taught |
| tear | tore | torn |
| tell | told | told |
| think | thought | thought |
| throw | threw | thrown |
| tread | trod | trodden |
| understand | understood | understood |
| wake | { woke
waked | { woke
woken
waked |
| wear | wore | worn |
| weep | wept | wept |
| win | won [wʌn] | won [wʌn] |
| wind [waɪd] | wound [waʊnd] | wound [waʊnd] |
| write | wrote | written |

总 詞 彙 表

A

- a [ei. ə] *arti.* 一个。
- ability [ə'bilɪti] *n.* 能力。
- able ['eɪbl] *adj.* 能够。
- about [ə'baʊt] *adv.* 大约, 附近, 到处。
- prep.* 关于, 大概, 在周围。
- above [ə'baʊ] *adv.* 在上面 *prep.* 在...之上, above all 尤其是。
- abroad [ə'brɔ:d] *adv.* 国外。
- absolutely [æbsəlu:tli] *adv.* 绝对地。
- accept [ək'sept] *vt.* 接受, 承認
- accompany [ə'kʌmpəni] *vt.* 陪, 伴。
- according [ə'kɔ:dɪŋ] *adv.* 依据
- according to* 依照。
- accumulate [ə'kju:mjuleɪ] *vt. & vi.* 积累。
- accuracy [ækjʊrəsi] *n.* 准确, 正确。
- accurate [ækjʊrɪt] *adj.* 准确的, 正确的。
- accurately [ækjʊrɪtli] *adv.* 准确地, 正确地。
- achieve [ə'tʃi:v] *vt.* 完成, 获得(胜利), 达到(目的)。
- achievement [ə'tʃi:vmənt] *n.* 成就,
- 完成。
- acquire [ə'kwɪə] *vt.* 取得, 获得。
- across [ə'krɔ:s] *adv. & prep.* 横过, 越过, to come across 碰见。
- act [ækt] *n.* 行为, 动作。
- vt. & vi.* 行动, 扮演(角色)。
- action ['æksən] *n.* 动作, 活动, 行动。
- active [æktɪv] *adj.* 活动的, 积极的。
- actively [æktɪvli] *adv.* 活动地, 积极地。
- activist [æktɪvɪst] *n.* 积极分子。
- activity [æk'tɪvɪti] *n.* 活动。
- actual [æktʃuəl] *adj.* 真实的; 实际的。
- acute [ə'kju:t] *adj.* 剧烈的, 厉害的, 尖锐的。
- addition [ə'dɪʃən] *n.* 附加, in addition 加之, 又 in addition to 除...外又。
- additional [ə'dɪʃnəl] *adj.* 附加的。
- adjust [ə'dʒʌst] *vt.* 调整。
- adjustment [ə'dʒʌstmənt] *n.* 调整, 调节。
- adopt [ə'dɒpt] *vt.* 采用。

advance [əd'vɑ:ns] *vt. & n.* 增
进, 前进, to be in advance of
在...之前, in advance 预先。
advantage [əd'vɑ:ntidʒ] *n.* 利益,
优势, *vt.* 有利。
advice [əd'vaɪs] *n.* 忠告, 劝告, 意
见。
advocate ['ædvəkeɪt] *vt.* 拥护, 提
倡, *n.* 拥护者。
afraid [ə'freɪd] *adj.* 害怕, 担忧。
after ['ɑ:ftə] *adv.* 在后, 后来 *prep.*
在...后 after all 毕竟, 到底。
conj. 在...后。
afternoon ['ɑ:ftə'nu:n] *n.* 下午。
afterwards ['ɑ:ftəwədz] *adv.* 后来。
again [ə'geɪn] *adv.* 再, 又。
age [eɪdʒ] *n.* 年龄, 年代。
aggression [ə'ɡresʃən] *n.* 侵略, 攻
击。
ago [ə'ɡəʊ] *adv.* 以前。
agree [ə'ɡri:] *vi.* 同意。
agriculture ['ægrɪkʌltʃə] *n.* 农业。
ahead [ə'hed] *adv.* 在前, 向前, 先。
aid [eɪd] *n., vi. & vt.* 帮助, 协助。
ailment ['eɪlment] *n.* 病, 失调。
aim [eɪm] *n.* 目标, 瞄准。
vi. & vt. 瞄准, 指望。
air [eə] *n.* 空气。
alcohol ['ælkəhɒl] *n.* 酒精。
alcoholic [ælkə'hɒlɪk] *adj.* 酒精的,
含酒的, *n.* 含酒精的饮料。
all [ɔ:l] *adj.* 所有的, *n. pron.* 一切,
全部, *adv.* 全然, 都。

allow [ə'lau] *vt. & vi.* 容许, 准许。
almost ['ɔ:lməʊst] *adv.* 几乎, 差不
多。
alone [ə'ləʊn] *adj.* 单独的, 唯一的。
adv. 单独, 独自。
along [ə'lɒŋ] *prep. & adv.* 沿, 一道,
to get along 过日子, 进行(工
作)。
aloud [ə'ləʊd] *adv.* 高声地。
already [ɔ:l'reɪdɪ] *adv.* 已经。
also [ɔ:l'səʊ] *adv. & conj.* 亦, 也,
同样。
although [ɔ:l'ðəʊ] *conj.* 虽然, 即使。
altogether [ɔ:l'tə'geðə] *adv. & n.* 完
全, 全体。
always [ɔ:lweɪz] *adv.* 始终, 总是。
am [æm] *vi.* 是。
amass [ə'mæs] *vt.* 堆积。
ambition [æm'bɪʃən] *n.* 雄心, 大志,
野心。
America [ə'merɪkə] *n.* 美洲, 美国。
among [ə'mʌŋ] *prep.* 在(多数)之
中, 在...中间。
amount [ə'maʊnt] *vt. & n.* 总数, 合
计。
an [æn, ən] *arti.* 一个
anatomy [ə'nætəmi] *n.* 解剖, 解剖
学。
and [ænd, ənd] *conj.* 和, 并且。
anger ['æŋgə] *n.* 愤怒, 怒气。
angle ['æŋɡl] *n.* 角, 角度。
angry ['æŋɡri] *adj.* 发怒的, 生气的。
animal ['ænɪməl] *n.* 动物, 兽, 畜牲

adj. 动物的。
another [ə'nʌðə] *adj.* 另一, 第二个
pron. 另一件东西, 另一个人。
answer ['ɑ:nsə] *n., vt. & vi.* 回答。
anticipate. [æn'tɪsɪpeɪt] *vt.* 期待, 預
期, 預料。
anticipation [æntɪsɪ'peɪʃən] *n.* 期待,
預期。
anti-Japanese [æntɪdʒæpə'ni:z] *adj.*
抗日。
anxious ['æŋkʃəs] *adj.* 渴望的, 急想,
忧虑的。
any ['eni] *adj., pron. & adv.* 任何,
一些。
anything ['eniθɪŋ] *pron.* 任何东西。
apart [ə'pa:t] *adv.* 分离, apart from
且莫說, 不管…还。
appear [ə'piə] *vi.* 出現, 显得是。
apply [ə'plai] *vi. & vt.* 应用, 适用,
請求。
approach [ə'prəʊtʃ] *vt. & vi.* 走近,
將近, *n.* 走近(知識的)門徑,
手段, 看法。
April ['eɪprɪl] *n.* 四月。
apt [æpt] *adj.* 易于…的, 有…傾向
的。
are [ɑ:] *vi.* 是。
area ['eəriə] *n.* 区域, 範圍。
argue ['ɑ:gju:] *vt. & vi.* 議論, 爭論。
主張。
argument ['ɑ:gju:mənt] *n.* 議論, 爭
論, 論証。

arise [ə'raɪz] *vi.* 兴起, 发生, 上昇。
arm [ɑ:m] *n.* 臂, 武器, *vt. & vi.* 武
裝。
army ['ɑ:mɪ] *n.* 軍隊。
around [ə'raʊnd] *adv.* 周圍, 附近
prep. 周圍, 在附近。
arrange [ə'reɪndʒ] *vt.* 整理, 安排,
調整 *vi.* 商妥, 准备。
arrangement [ə'reɪndʒmənt] *n.* 整
理, 安排, 料理。
arrival [ə'raɪvəl] *n.* 到达。
arrive [ə'raɪv] *vi.* 到达。
art [ɑ:t] *n.* 艺术, 技艺, 技术。
as [æz] *adv. & conj.* 象, 由于, 当
…时, 作为, as if 好象 as...as
possible 尽可能, as...as ever 象
以往那样…。
ascend [ə'send] *vt. & vi.* 登上, 昇,
Asia ['eɪʃə] *n.* 亞洲。
ask [ɑ:sk] *vt. & vi.* 問, 請求, 邀請。
asleep [ə'sli:p] *adv. & adj.* 睡着的。
ass [æs] *n.* 驢子。
assert [ə'sə:t] *vt.* 主張, 硬說。
assist [ə'sɪst] *vt. & vi.* 幫助。
assistance [ə'sɪstəns] *n.* 幫助。
association [ə'səʊsi'eɪʃən] *n.* 协会,
联合, association football 足球。
assume [ə'sju:m] *vt.* 承担, 假定,
故作 to assume position 作出姿
勢。
assuré [ə'ʃuə] *vt.* 保証, 使安全。
astonishment [ə'stɒnɪʃmənt] *n.* 驚訝。
at [æt, ət] *prep.* 在于。

athlete [æθ'li:t] *n.* 運動員(田徑)。
athletic [æθ'letik] *adj.* 田徑運動的。
athletics [æθ'letiks] *n.* 田徑運動。
attach [ə'tætʃ] *vt. & vi.* 依附, 附屬。
attack [ə'tæk] *n., vt. & vi.* 攻擊。
attain [ə'tein] *vt. & vi.* 得到, 達到。
attempt [ə'tempt] *n.* 賞試, 企圖,
vt. 試圖。
attend [ə'tend] *vt. & vi.* 出席, 參加。
augment [ɔ:g'ment] *vt. & vi.* 增加,
加大。
August [ɔ:gəst] *n.* 八月。
aunt [a:nt] *n.* 伯母, 叔母, 姑母,
姨母, 舅母。
authority [ə'θɔ:riti] *n.* 權威, 當局

(用複數形式)

autumn [ə'tʌm] *n.* 秋天。
avail [ə'veil] *n.* 效用, 利益, *vt. & vi.*
有利于, 有效, 有用。
available [ə'veiləbl̩] *adj.* 可利用的,
有效的, 有利的。
avenue [ə'venju:] *n.* 大道, 林蔭路。
average [ə'verɪdʒ] *n. & adj.* 平均。
await [ə'weɪt] *vt.* 等候, 期待。
awake [ə'weɪk] *vt. & vi.* 覺醒, 喚
醒, *adj.* 醒着的。
award [ə'wɔ:d] *vt. & n.* 獎給, 授給。
aware [ə'weə] *adj.* 明白的, 自覺的。
awareness [ə'weənɪs] *n.* 自覺到, 意
識到。
away [ə'weɪ] *adv.* 離開, 不在。

B

baby ['beɪbi] *n.* 嬰孩。
back [bæk] *adv.* 回, 向後, *n.* 背,
衛(足球運動), full back 後衛,
half back 中衛, right back 右後
衛, left back 左後衛。
backward ['bækwəd] *adv.* 向後。
bad [bæd] *adj.* 不好的, 壞的。
ball [bɔ:l] *n.* 球。
ballet ['bæleɪ] *n.* 芭蕾舞。
ballgame ['bɔ:l'geɪm] *n.* 球類運動。
bank [bæŋk] *n.* 河岸, 銀行。
bar [bɑ:] *n.* 棒, 障礙, *vt.* 禁止。
barrier ['bæriə] *n.* 障礙, 防壁, 柵
欄。
base [beɪs] *n.* 基礎, 據點, 壘(棒,

球, *vt.* 以...為根據, 以...為基礎。
base-ball ['beɪsbɔ:l] *n.* 棒球。
basis ['beɪsɪs] *n.* 基礎, 根據地。
basket ['bɑ:skɪt] *n.* 籃。
basketball ['bɑ:skɪtbɔ:l] *n.* 籃球。
bat [bæt] *n.* 棒, 打擊, *vt. & vi.* 打,
用球棒打球。
baton ['bætn] *n.* 接力棒(接力跑
所用的棒)。
bathe [beɪð] *vt. & vi.* 沐浴。
battle ['bætl̩] *n.* 戰鬥, 戰爭 *vi.* 交
戰。
be [bi:, bi] *vi.* 是(原形動詞)。
bear [beə] *vt.* 帶有, 忍, 負擔, 記
(在心裡或本上), *vi.* 支持, 忍,

beat [bi:t] *vt.* 打, 胜过 *n.* 打, 心悸。

beautiful [ˈbju:təfʊl] *adj.* 美丽的。

because [biˈkɔ:z] *adv. & conj.* 因为。

become [biˈkʌm] *vi.* 成为, 变为。

bed [bed] *n.* 床。

bedroom [ˈbedrʊm] *n.* 寝室。

been [bi:n, bin] *to be* 的过去分词。

before [biˈfɔ:] *adv.* 在前, 从前,
prep. 在...之前, *conj.* 在...之前
before long 不久。

begin [biˈɡin] *vi. & vt.* 开始; 着手。

beginner [biˈɡinə] *n.* 初学者, 生手。

beginning [biˈɡiniŋ] *n.* 当初, 起源。

behind [biˈhaɪnd] *adv.* 在后, *prep.*
在...之后。

being [ˈbi:ɪŋ] *be* 的现在分词。

believe [biˈli:v] *vt. & vi.* 相信, 以为

bell [bel] *n.* 钟, 铃。

belong [biˈlɒŋ] *vi.* 属, 属(某人)
所有。

bend [ber:d] *vt. & vi.* 弯, 曲, 屈服。

benefit [ˈbenɪfɪt] *n.* 利益, 好处, *vt.*
& *vi.* 得利益, 对...有利。

best [best] *adj.* 最好的, *n. & adv.*
最好。

better [ˈbetə] *adj. & adv.* 较好, 更好
n. 更好的(事物), *v.* 使更好,
提高。

between [biˈtwi:n] *prep. & adv.* 在...
之间。

beyond [biˈjɒnd] *prep.* 在那边, 在...
以外 *adv.* 以外, 在那边(很远)。

big [big] *adj.* 大的。

billiards [ˈbɪljədz] *n.* 台球, 弹子,
打弹子游戏。

bind [baɪnd] *vt. & vi.* 捆架, 绑。

bio-chemical [ˈbaɪəʊˈkemɪkəl] *adj.*
生物化学的。

bird [bɜ:d] *n.* 鸟。

bite [baɪt] *vt. & vi.* 咬。

black [blæk] *adj.* 黑色的。

blackboard [ˈblækbɔ:d] *n.* 黑板。

blood [blʌd] *n.* 血, 血液。

blow [bləʊ] *vi. & vt.* 吹, *n.* 打击。

blue [blu:d] *adj.* 蓝色的。

board [bɔ:d] *n.* 木板。

boat [bəʊt] *n.* 小船。

bodily [ˈbɒdɪli] *adj.* 身体的。

body [ˈbɒdi] *n.* 身体。

bold [bəʊld] *adj.* 大胆的, 勇敢的。

bone [bəʊn] *n.* 骨。

book [bʊk] *n.* 书。

bookcase [ˈbʊkkeɪs] *n.* 书橱, 书箱。

boot [bu:t] *n.* 长统鞋。

both [bəʊθ] *adj.* 二者, 双, *pron.* 两
者, *adv.* 两者都, both...and...
和...两者都。

bottle [ˈbɒtl] *n.* 瓶。

bottom [ˈbɒtəm] *n.* 底, 底部

bounce [baʊns] *vi. & vt.* 跳, 反跳,
反弹(球), 拍(球)。

bound [baʊnd] *n.* 界线, 跳起, *vt.*
& *vi.* 跳起, *adj.* 被束縛的。

boundless ['baundlis] *adj.* 无限的。
box [bɒks] *n.* 箱, 盒。
boy [bɔi] *n.* 男孩。
brain [brein] *n.* 脑。
brave [breiv] *adj.* 勇敢的。
bravely ['breivli] *adv.* 勇敢地。
bread [bred] *n.* 面包。
break [breik] *vt. & vi.* 打破, 折断,
n. 破坏, 裂缝, 突破。
breakfast ['brekfəst] *n.* 早餐,
breast [brest] *n.* 胸部, *vt.* 挺胸, to
breast the tape 胸前撞线, breast-
stroke 蛙泳。
breath [breθ] *n.* 呼吸。
breathe [bri:ð] *vt. & vi.* 呼吸。
breeze [bri:z] *n.* 微风。
bridge [bridʒ] *n.* 桥。
brigade [bri'geid] *n.* 旅, 队。
bright [brai] *adj.* 光明的, 明亮的,
鲜明的。
brightly ['brai] *adv.* 光明地, 明亮
地。
bring [brɪŋ] *vt.* 带来, 产生, to br-
ing about 引起, 实现 to bring
forward 提出(计划), to bring
into play 使活动。
Britain ['brɪtən] *n.* 不列颠, 英帝国。

British ['brɪtɪʃ] *adj.* 不列颠的, 英国
的, *n.* 不列颠人, 英国人。
broad [brɔ:d] *adj.* 广大的, 宽阔的,
broad jump 跳远。
brother ['brʌðə] *n.* 兄弟。
brush [brʌʃ] *n.* 刷子, *vt.* 刷, 擦。
brute [bru:t] *adj.* 残忍的, 野蛮的。
bubble ['bʌbl] *n.* 气泡, *vt. & vi.* 起
泡, 使起泡泡。
build [bɪld] *vt.* 建筑, 建设, 设立。
bulk [bʌlk] *n. & adj.* 庞大, 体积
bullet ['bulɪt] *n.* 子弹。
bundle ['bʌndl] *n.* 束, 捆
burden ['bɜ:dn] *n.* 负担, 载重量。
burn [bɜ:n] *vi. & vt.* 燃烧。
burst [bɜ:st] *vi.* 破裂, 突然而来。
bus [bʌs] *n.* 公共汽车。
business ['biznis] *n.* 事务, 事业。
busy ['bɪzi] *adj.* 忙, 勤于。
but [bʌt 或 bət] *conj. adv.* 但是, 然
而, 仅, *prep.* 仅仅, 除...之外。
by [baɪ] *prep.* 在...之旁, 为, 被,
到... (时间), 以... (手段, 方
法) *adv.* 在近旁
by-product ['baɪ'praʊdʌkt] *n.* 副产
品。

C

calf [kɑ:f] *n.* 牛犊。
call [kɔ:l] *vt.* 召唤, 称为。
calm [kɑ:m] *adj.* 镇定的, 平静的
calmly ['kɑ:mlɪ] *adv.* 镇定地。

camel ['kæmə] *n.* 骆驼。
camera ['kæmərə] *n.* 照相机。
campus ['kæmpəs] *n.* 校园。
can [kæn, kən, kn] *aux. v.* 能够, 可

以。
cap [kæp] *n.* 无边帽。
capability ['keɪpə'bɪləti] *n.* 可能, 能力, 才能。
capital ['kæpɪtl] *n.* 首都, 大写字母。
captain ['kæptɪn] *n.* 队长。
car [kɑ:] *n.* 車輛
card [kɑ:d] *n.* 紙片, 卡片, 紙牌。
care [keə] *vi.* 管, 看护, 照顧。*n.* 注意, 照顧, to care for... 照管。
careful ['keəfʊl] *adj.* 注意的, 細心的。
carefully ['keəfʊli] *adv.* 注意地, 細心地。
carnival ['kɑ:nɪvəl] *n.* 狂欢节, 运动竞赛。
carry ['kæri] *vt. & vi.* 携带, 运送, to carry out 执行, 贯彻。
cartilage ['kɑ:tɪlɪdʒ] *n.* 軟骨。
case [keɪs] *n.* 情况, 場合, 事件, 病症。in case of... 在...情况下, 如果, in all (any) cases 无论如何。
catch [kætʃ] *vt.* 捕捉, 抓到, 接住(球)赶上。
cause [kɔ:z] *n.* 原因, 理由, 目的, 事业, *vt.* 导致, 引起。
cautious ['kɔ:ʃəs] *adj.* 慎重的。
cease [si:s] *vt. & vi.* 停止, 間断。
ceiling ['si:lɪŋ] *n.* 天花板。
celebrate ['selɪbreɪt] *vt.* 庆祝。
cell [sel] *n.* 細胞。
cent [sent] *n.* 分(一元的百分之一),

百(只用在per cent 一語中)。
central ['sentrəl] *adj.* 中心的, 中央的。
centre ['sentə] 也可写为 center. *n.* 中心, 中央; centre forward 中锋, centre-half 中卫(足球)。
certain ['sɜ:tn] *adj.* 某, 一定的, 确信的。
chain [tʃeɪn] *n.* 鏈。
chairman ['tʃeəmən] *n.* 主席, 委员长。
champion ['tʃæmpjən] *n.* 战士, 冠軍, 优胜者
championship ['tʃæmpjənʃɪp] *n.* 冠軍賽, 錦標賽。
chance [tʃɑ:ns] *n.* 偶然的事, 机会。
change [tʃeɪndʒ] *vt. & vi.* 交換, 改变, 变化, *n.* 变化, 变更
character ['kærəktə] *n.* 个性, 特点, 性格。
characteristic [kærɪktə'rɪstɪk] *n.* 特征, 特色, *adj.* 特有的。
cheer [tʃiə] *vt. & vi.* 喝采, 欢呼, 鼓励(往往加用 up), *n.* 欢呼, 愉快。
cheerful [tʃiəfʊl] *adj.* 愉快的, 高兴的。
chest [tʃest] *n.* 胸。
chiefly ['tʃi:flɪ] *adv.* 主要地, 多半地。
child [tʃaɪld] *n.* 子女, 小孩。
children ['tʃɪldrən] *n.* child 的复数。
China [tʃaɪnə] *n.* 中国。

Chinese [tʃaɪ'ni:z, tʃaɪ'ni:z] *adj.* 中国的, 中国人的, *n.* 中国人, 汉语。
choice [tʃɔɪs] *n.* 选择, 选择权, the choice of... 的选择权
choose [tʃu:z] *vt. & vi.* 选择, 挑选
circulation [sə:kju'leɪʃən] *n.* 循环, 流通。
city ['sɪti] *n.* 城市。
clap klæp] *vi.* 鼓掌。
class [kla:s] *n.* 班级, 等级, first class 第一流的, 头等的。
classmate ['kla:s'meɪt] *n.* 同班同学。
clean [kli:n] *adj.* 清洁的, *vt.* 使清洁, 打扫。
clear [kliə] *adj.* 明朗的, 明了的, 确知的。 *vt. & vi.* 变为明朗, 跳越。
cleverness ['klevənɪs] *n.* 聪明, 敏捷。
cling [kliŋ] *vi.* 缠住, 依附, 坚持 (和 to 連用)。
close [klaʊs] *adj.* 紧密的, 密切的, 亲密的。
close ['klaʊz] *vt. & vi.* 关, 闭, 塞, 靠近。
closely [klaʊsli] *adv.* 紧密地, 接近地, 密切地。
clothes [klaʊθz] *n.* 衣着。
club [klʌb] *n.* 俱乐部, 高尔夫球棍。
clutch [klʌtʃ] *vt. & vi.* 紧握, 坚决, 扼 (和 at 連用)。
coach [kəʊtʃ] *n.* 竞技教練員 *vt.* 教練, 訓練。
coat [kəʊt] *n.* 外衣。
cock [kɒk] *n.* 雄鷄

coffee [kəʊfi] *n.* 咖啡。
cold [kəʊld] *adj.* 寒冷的 *n.* 寒冷, 冷气。
collapse [kə'læps] *vi.* 崩溃, 瘫倒, 失败。
collector [kə'lektə] *n.* 蒐集者。
colour ['kʌlə] *n.* 颜色, 色彩。
colourless ['kʌlələs] *adj.* 无色的。
combination [kəm'bi:neɪʃən] *n.* 联合, 组合, 化合, 结合。
combine [kəm'baɪn] *vt. & vi.* 联合, 结合, 化合, to combine with... 与...相结合。
come [kʌm] *v.* 来, 到, 发生, 出现, to come after... 继...而来, come across 发见, 遇见。
commander [kə'mændə] *n.* 司令, 指挥員。
commence [kə'mens] *vt. & vi.* 开始。
comment ['kɒmənt] *vt. & vi.* 注解, 評論。 *n.* 注释, 評論。
common ['kɒmən] *adj.* 普通的, 平凡的, 共同的, common saying 俗諺。
communism ['kɒmjʊ:nɪzəm] *n.* 共产主义。
communist ['kɒmjʊ:nɪst] *n.* 共产主义者, 共产党员, *adj.* 共产主义的。
company ['kʌmpəni] *n.* 一群人, (步兵) 連
comparative [kəm'pærətɪv] *adj.* 比較的, 相对的, 比較級的, *n.* 比較級 (語法)。

compare [kəm'peə] *vt.* 比較, 对照,
vi. 并肩, 匹敌 *n.* 比較, as com-
pared with... 与...比較起来。

compete [kəm'pi:t] *vi.* 竞争, 比賽。

competent ['kɒmpɪtənt] *adj.* 有能力的,
胜任的, 有資格的。

competition ['kɒmpɪ'tɪʃən] *n.* 竞争、
比賽。

competitor [kəm'petɪtə] 竞争者, 比
賽者, 对手。

complete [kəm'pli:t] *adj.* 十分的,
圓滿的, 完全的, *vt.* 完成。

compose [kəm'pəuz] *vt. & vi.* 組
成, 构成, to be composed of...
由...組成。

comrade ['kɒmri:d] *n.* 同志。

concern [kən'sə:n] *vt.* 对...有关系,
n. 影响, 关怀, to be concerned
in 和...有关, 牵涉到, to be con-
cerned with... 参与, as far as...
is concerned 就...來說。

concerning [kən'sə:nɪŋ] *prep.* 关于,
論及, 就...而言。

conclude [kən'klu:d] *vt.* 下結論, 終
止, *vi.* 結尾。

conclusion [kən'klu:ʃən] *n.* 末尾,
結論。

condition [kən'diʃən] *n.* 情况, 条件,
状态, in good condition 情形良
好(指身体), *vt.* 改善, 訓練。

confidence ['kɒnfɪdəns] *n.* 信心, 信
任。

confusion [kən'fju:ʒən] *n.* 混乱, 慌

乱。

conjecture [kən'dʒektʃə] *n.* 猜想,
推測。

connect [kə'nekt] *vt. & vi.* 連結, 接
合, to be connected with... 与
...有关系。

connection [kə'nekʃən] *n.* 連結, 联
系。

conscious ['kɒnʃəs] *adj.* 自覺的。

considerably [kən'sɪdərəbli] *adv.* 大
大, 相当。

consist [kən'sɪst] *vi.* 由...組成 (用
of), 存在于 (用 in)。

consistency [kən'sɪstənsi] *n.* 一致,
坚持。

constitute ['kɒnstɪtju:t] *vt.* 組成, 构
成, 制定。

contruction [kɒns'trʌkʃən] *n.* 建筑,
建設, 建筑物, 結構。

contact ['kɒntækt] *n.* 接触, 接近,
to be in contact with... 和...接触。
to come in contact with... 和...
接触。

contain [kən'teɪn] *vt.* 含有, 容纳。

contend [kən'tend] *vi.* 竞争, 竞赛。

contender [kən'tendə] *n.* 竞赛者。

content ['kɒntənt, kən'tent] *n. (pl)*
内容, 目录。

contest ['kɒntest, kən'test] *n.* 竞赛,
比賽, *vt. & vi.* 竞赛。

contestant [kən'testənt] *n.* 竞赛者,
选手。

continually [kən'tɪnjuəli] *adv.* 不断

地, 常常地。
continue [kən'tinju:] *vt. & vi.* 繼續, 延續, 延長。
contort [kən'tɔ:t] *vt.* 扭, 扭歪。
contract [kən'trækt] *vt. & vi.* 收縮, 緊縮。
contraction [kən'trækʃən] *n.* 收縮。
contrary ['kɒntrəri] *n.* 反對, 矛盾。
on the contrary 反之, 正相反。
contrast ['kɒntræst] *n.* 對照, 對照中的差別, in contrast with... 和...相比, 和...大大不同。
contribution [kəntri'bju:ʃən] *n.* 貢獻。
control [kən'trəʊl] *n.* 支配, 控制, 管理, *vt.* 管理, 控制。under the control of... 在...控制之下, without control 任意, 不受控制。
conviction [kən'vikʃən] *n.* 確信, 堅信。
convince [kən'vins] *vt.* 使信服, 使承認, to be convinced of... 確信, 承認。
cooperation [kouəpə'reiʃən] *n.* 合作, 協力。
coordinate [kou'ɔ:dineit] *vt.* 使動作協調, 調整。
coordination [kouə:di'neiʃən] *n.* 協調一致, 調整。
copper ['kɒpə] *n.* 銅, 銅幣。
corner [kɔ:nə] *n.* 角, 拐角, 角落, corner kick 角球(足)。
correct [kə'rekt] *adj.* 不錯的, 正確的,

的, *vt.* 修正, 改正, 校正。
correctly [kə'rekthi] *adv.* 正確地。
correspond [kəris'pɒnd] *vi.* 相當, 相應, 符合。
cottage ['kɒtɪdʒ] *n.* 農舍, 小房子。
could [kud, kəd] *can* 的過去式。
country ['kʌntri] *n.* 國家, 祖國, 家鄉, 鄉下。
couple ['kʌpl] *n.* 一對, 一雙, 偶伴, *v.* 伴隨。
courage ['kʌrɪdʒ] *n.* 勇氣, 胆量。
course [kɔ:s] *n.* 經過, 過程, 路程, 跑道, 課程, of course 當然, a matter of course 當然的事情。
court [kɔ:t] *n.* 院子, 天井, 場地, 球場。
court-yard ['kɔ:t'jɑ:d] *n.* 院子。
cover ['kʌvə] *n.* 復蓋物, 遮蔽, 蓋子, *vt.* 掩蓋, 包, 涉及, 走過(若干里)。
covet ['kʌvɪt] *vt. & vi.* 妄想, 渴望的, coveted cup 渴望得到的獎杯。
create [kri'eit] *vt.* 創造, 產生, 設立, 引起。
criterion [krai'tiriən] *n.* (批評, 判斷)的標準。
cross [krɒs] *vt.* 渡, 翻越, 穿過, *vi.* 交叉, 越, 橫斷。
cross-bar ['krɒs'bɑ:] *n.* (跳高)橫竿。
cross-country [krɒs'kʌntri] *n.* 越野(跑)。

crouch [kraut] *vi.* 下蹲, 跪着, 缩着, crouching start 蹲踞式起跑。
crow [krou] *vi.* 鸡叫, 啼。
crowd [kraud] *n.* 群众, 拥挤, *vt.* & *vi.* 挤, 塞满, a crowd of... 一群, to be crowded with... 给... 所挤满。
crush [kraʃ] *vt.* 压碎, 击溃。
cry [krai] *vi.* 哭, 叫喊。
culture [ˈkʌltʃə] *n.* 文化, 文明, 教

养, physical culture 体育。
cultured [ˈkʌltʃəd] *adj.* 有文化的, 有教养的。
cup [kʌp] *n.* 杯子, 奖杯。
cut [kʌt] *vt.* 切断, 割, *vi.* 切入, to cut in 切入(球类运动)。
Czechoslovak [ˈtʃekouˈslouvæk] *adj.* 捷克斯洛伐克的, *n.* 捷克人。
Czechoslovakia [ˈtʃekouslouˈvækɪə] *n.* 捷克斯洛伐克。

D

daily [ˈdeɪli] *adj.* 逐日的, 每日的, *n.* 日报。
dance [dɑːns] *vt. & vi.* 跳舞, 舞蹈, *n.* 跳舞, 舞蹈。
dancer [ˈdɑːnsə] *n.* 舞蹈者。
danger [ˈdeɪndʒə] *n.* 危险, to be out of danger 脱险。
dare [deə] *vt. & vi.* 挑逗, 敢于。
daring [ˈdeərɪŋ] *adj.* 大胆的, 勇敢的, 冒险的。
data [ˈdeɪtə] datum [ˈdeɪtəm] 的复数, *n.* 材料, 资料。
date [deɪt] *n.* 日子, 日期, up to date 直到现在, 最新的。
dawn [doːn] *n.* 黎明, at dawn 拂晓。
day [deɪ] *n.* 日, 节日, 时代, 白日, days and nights 日日夜夜。
dazzle [ˈdæzl] *vt.* 使眼花, 使迷乱, *vi.* 幌眼, 闪耀。
dead [ded] *adj.* 死的, 无生命的, 作

废的。
dear [diə] *adj.* 亲爱的, 敬爱的, 宝贵的。
death [deθ] *n.* 死亡, 死刑, 消灭。
decide [dɪˈsaɪd] *vt. & vi.* 决定, 决心, to decide against 决心不。
decisive [dɪˈsaɪsɪv] *adj.* 决定性的, 断然的。
deep [diːp] *adj.* 深的, 深奥的。
deeply [ˈdiːpli] *adv.* 深深地, 非常。
defeat [dɪˈfi:t] *vt.* 打败, 摧毁, *n.* 失败, 挫折。
defend [dɪˈfend] *vt.* 防御, 保护, *vi.* 自卫。
defender [dɪˈfendə] *n.* 防御者, 保卫者。
defense [dɪˈfens] 或写为 defence *n.* 防御, 保卫。
definite [ˈdefɪnɪt] *adj.* 明确的, 肯定的, 一定的。

degree [di'grɪ:] *n.* 程度, 度数。
delicate [ˈdelɪkɪt] *adj.* 优雅的, 柔弱的。
demand [di'mɑ:nd] *vt.* 要求, 需要, *n.* 要求, 需要。
department [di'pɑ:tmənt] *n.* 部, 部門, 科系。
depend [di'pend] *vi.* 依靠, 依賴, 因...而定, 由于(加用 on 或 upon)。
deprive [di'praɪv] *vt.* 剝奪, 阻止, 不使受, to deprive (one) of... 使(人)失去..., 把(人)...剝奪掉。
describe [dɪs'kraɪb] *vt.* 記述, 描写, 形容, to describe (one) as... 把(人)称为...。
deserve [dɪ'sɜ:v] *vt. & vi.* 应受, 应得。
designate [ˈdeɪzɪneɪt] *vt.* 指定, 把...叫做, *adj.* 指定的, 选定的。
desire [dɪ'zaɪə] *vt.* 欲, 要求, *n.* 愿望, 欲望。
desk [desk] *n.* 書桌, 写字台。
desperate [ˈdespərɪt] *adj.* 奋不顾身, 拚命的, 最后的。
despite [dɪs'paɪt] *prep.* 不管, 不顧, (in) despite of... 不管, 任凭。
destroy [dɪs'trɔɪ] *vt.* 毀坏, 破坏。
detach [dɪ'tætʃ] *vt.* 分开, 使离开。
determine [dɪ'tɜ:mɪn] *vt.* 决心, 决定, 断定, *vi.* 决心, 决定。
determination [dɪ'tɜ:mɪneɪʃən] *n.* 决心, 决定。

develop [dɪ'veləp] *vt.* 使发展, 使扩大, 使發揮, *vi.* 发展, 开展。
development [dɪ'veləpmənt] *n.* 发展, 扩大。
devote [dɪ'vəʊt] *vt.* 貢獻, 拿出, 致力於, to devote... to 把...用于(献給)...
devotion [dɪ'vəʊʃən] *n.* 熱誠, 献身, 专心。
diagnosis [daɪə'gəʊsɪs] *n.* 診斷。
dialogue ['daɪələg] *n.* 對話。
diameter [daɪ'æmɪtə] *n.* 直径。
diary ['daɪəri] *n.* 日記, 日記本。
dictionary ['dɪkʃənəri] *n.* 字典, 辞典。
die [daɪ] *vi.* 死, to die of... 因...而死。
different [ˈdɪfrənt] *adj.* 不同的, 种种的。
difficult [ˈdɪfɪkəlt] *adj.* 困难的。
difficulty [ˈdɪfɪkəlti] *adj.* 困难, 逆境。
dig [dɪg] *vt. & vi.* 挖, 掘, 探究。
digestion [dɪ'dʒestʃən] *n.* 消化。
direct [dɪ'rekt, daɪ'rekt] *vt. & vi.* 指导, 指揮, 管理, 向着。
direction [dɪ'rekʃən] *n.* 方向, 指揮, 命令(用多数)。
director [dɪ'rektə] *n.* 指揮者。
directive [dɪ'rektɪv] *n.* 命令, 指示。
disappear [dɪsə'piə] *vi.* 漸漸不見, 消失, 失蹤。
discard [dɪs'kɑ:d] *vt.* 放弃, 廢除。
discomfort [dɪs'kʌmfət] *adj.* 不安, 不舒适, *vt.* 使不安, 使不舒适。

discretion [dis'kreʃən] *n.* 謹慎, 选择的自由, 良好的判断。
at the discretion of... 随... 的意思。
discus ['diskəs] *n.* 铁饼, discus throw 掷铁饼。
discuss [dis'kʌs] *vt.* 讨论, 商榷。
dislike [dis'laɪk] *vt. & n.* 不喜欢, 厌恶。
display [dis'pleɪ] *vt. & n.* 显示, 表现, 发挥, 展出。
dissolve [di'zɒlv] *vt. & vi.* 溶解。
distance ['dɪstəns] *n.* 距离, 路程, 远方。
distinguish [dis'tɪŋɡwɪʃ] *vt. & vi.* 区别, 判别, 表现... 的特色。
distress ['dɪstrəs] *n.* 疼痛, 不幸。 *vt.* 使烦恼, 使悲痛。
divide [di'vaɪd] *vt. & vi.* 分开, 分割, 分配。
do [du:] *vt.* 做, 使... 受到 to do you good 使你得好处, to have a lot to do with... 和... 有很大关系。
doctor ['dɒktə] *n.* 医生, 博士。
dog [dɒg] *n.* 狗。
dollar ['dɒlə] *n.* 元(货币单位)。
dominate [dɒ'mɪneɪt] *vt. & vi.* 控制, 支配, 占优势。
door [dɔ:] *n.* 门, 户。
doubt [daʊt] *n.* 疑问, 疑惧, *vt. & vi.* 怀疑, 不相信。

down [daʊn] *adv.* 向下, 下, *prep.* 下, 在下, 往下。
downward ['daʊnwəd] *adj.* 下方的, 下降的, 向下的。
downwards ['daʊnwədz] *adv.* 往下, 渐下。
dozen ['dɒzn] *n.* 一打(12个), 若干, 许许多多。
drama ['dra:mə] *n.* 戏剧。
draw [drɔ:] *vt.* 拉, 抽, *v.* 拉, 靠近, *n.* 牵引, in a draw 平局。
dream [dri:m] *n.* 梦, 梦想, *vt. & vi.* 作梦, 梦想。
dribble ['drɪbl] *vt. & vi. n.* 使滴下, 滴下, 运球, 运(盘)球前进。
drink [drɪŋk] *vt.* 喝, 饮, 饮酒, *n.* 饮料。
drive [draɪv] *vt.* 驱, 赶, 推进。
driving ['daɪvɪŋ] *n.* 推进, 駕駛。
drop [drɒp] *vt. & vi.* 落下, 掉失, 滴下, 落后。
drown [draʊn] *vt. & vi.* 使溺死, 淹死。
dry [draɪ] *adj. vt. & vi.* 干燥的, 晾干, 变干
dumb-bell ['drʌmbel] *n.* 哑铃
duration [dʒuə'reɪʃən] *n.* 持久, 耐久, 持续期间。
during ['djʊərɪŋ] *prep.* 在... 期间, 在... 的时候。
duty ['dju:ti] *n.* 义务, 任务。

E

- each [i:tʃ] *adj.* 各自的, 每, *prep.* 各, 各自, each other 互相,
- ear [ɪə] *n.* 耳, 耳朵
- early [ɜ:lɪ] *adj.* 早, 初期的, *adv.* 早, 先。
- easily [i:zɪli] *adv.* 容易, 轻松地。
- east [i:st] *n.* 东方, 东侧, *adj.* 东方的, 东部的, in the east (of) 在... 的东部, on the east (of) 在... 的东端。
- easy [i:zi] *adj.* 容易的, 舒服的。
- eat [i:t] *vt. & vi.* 吃, 喝, 进食。
- economic [i:kə'nɒmɪk] *adj.* 经济学的, 经济上的, 节俭的
- economical [i:kə'nɒmɪkəl] *adj.* 节俭的, 合算的, 经济学的
- education [ˈedʒuˈkeɪʃən] *n.* 教育。
- educational [ˈedʒuˈkeɪʃnəl] *adj.* 教育学的。
- effective [ɪ'fektɪv] *adj.* 有效的, *n.* 有效(生效)。
- efficiency [ɪ'fɪʃənsi] *n.* 效率, 功效, 实效。
- effort [ˈefət] *n.* 努力, 尽力, 用力。
- egg [eg] *n.* 蛋, 鸡蛋。
- eight [eɪt] *num.* 八。
- eighteen [ˈeɪˈti:n] *num.* 十八。
- eighty [ˈeɪti] *num.* 八十。
- either [ˈaɪðə, ˈi:ðə] *adj. & pron.* 两者之中随便哪一个, *adv. & conj.* either... or... 不是...就是...。
- elastic [ɪ'læstɪk] *adj.* 有弹性的, 伸缩自如的。
- elasticity [ɪ:læs'tɪsɪti] *n.* 弹力, 伸缩力, 伸缩性。
- elbow [ˈelbəʊ] *n.* 肘。
- element [ˈelɪmənt] *n.* 要素, 成分, 原理。
- elevate [ˈelɪveɪt] *vt.* 举起, 抬高。
- eleven [ɪ'levən] *num.* 十一。
- elicit [ɪ'lɪsɪt] *vt.* 引出, 诱出。
- eliminate [ɪ'lɪmɪneɪt] *vt.* 排除, 消除。
- elimination [ɪlɪmɪ'neɪʃən] *n.* 排除, 淘汰。
- elite [eɪ'li:t] *n.* 优秀分子, 名流。
- else [els] *adj. & conj.* 此外, 别的, 另外,
- emotion [ɪ'mouʃən] *n.* 情绪, 感情。
- emotional [ɪ'mouʃənəl] *adj.* 情绪的, 感情的。
- emphasis [ˈemfəsɪs] *n.* 强调, 重点, to lay (put, place) emphasis on... 着重在..., 强调...。
- employ [ɪm'plɔɪ] *vt.* 雇用, 使用。
- enable [ɪ'neɪbl] *vt.* 使能够, 使可以, to enable a person to (do)... 使人可以(做)....。
- encourage [ɪn'kærɪdʒ] *vt.* 鼓励, 激励。
- encouragement [ɪn'kærɪdʒmənt] *n.* 鼓励, 刺激
- end [end] *n.* 尖端, 终点, 结局, 目

的, *vt.* & *vi.* 完成, 結束, 終止, at the end of 在……的結尾, in the end 結果, to end by doing 以……結束, to end in... 以……結束。

endeavour [in'devə] *n.* & *v.* 努力, 尽力。

endurance [in'djuərəns] *n.* 耐久, 耐力, 持續。

enemy ['enimi] *n.* 敌人, 仇人。

energy ['enədʒi] *n.* 气力, 精力, 精神, 能量。

engine ['endʒin] *n.* 引擎, 发动机, 机器。

English ['ɪŋɡlɪʃ] *n.* 英国人, 英語, *adj.* 英国的。

enhance [in'hɑ:ns] *vt.* 增, 加强, 提高。

enough [i'nʌf] *adj.* 充足的, 足够的, *adv.* 充分, 十分, *n.* 充足, 足够。

enter ['entə] *vt.* & *vi.* 进入, 加入, 参加。

enthusiasm [in'θju:ziəzəm] *n.* 热心, 热情。

enthusiastic [in'θju:zi'æstɪk] *adj.* 热心的, 热情的。

entire [in'taɪə] *adj.* 完全, 全体的, 純粹的。

entirely [in'taɪəli] *adv.* 完全, 全然, 一概。

episode ['epɪsəʊd] *n.* 事件, 插話。

equal [i:'kwɔ:l] *adv.* 相等的, 平等的, 公平的。

equality [i:'kwɔ:lɪti] *n.* 相等, 平等。

equipment [i'kwɪpmənt] *n.* 装备, 設備。

err [ə:] *vi.* 犯錯誤。

especially [is'peʃəli] *adv.* 特別, 尤其。

essential [i'senʃəl] *adj.* 本質的, 不可缺少的, *n.* 本質, 要素。

European [juərə'pi:ən] *adj.* 歐洲的, *n.* 歐洲人。

even [i:vən] *adj.* 相等的, 一致的, *adv.* 即使, 甚至, 更加, even if (though) 即使……也, 虽然。

evening ['i:vniŋ] *n.* *adv.* 傍晚, 晚

evenly ['i:vənli] 平均地, 对等地。

event [i'vent] *n.* 大事件, 結局, 运动中的項目, running event 跑的項目。

eventually [i'ventʃuəli] *adv.* 終于, 最后。

ever ['evə] *adv.* 曾經, 不断地, as ever 象以往那样。

every ['evri] *pron.* 所有, 全体, 一切, 每一。

everybody ['evri'bɒdi] *n.* 人人, 各人。

everyone ['evriwʌn] = everybody.

everything ['evriθɪŋ] *n.* 事事, 什么都。

evidently ['evidentli] *adj.* 显然地。

exact [ig'zækt] *adj.* 严格的, 正确的, 确切的。

examination [ig,zæmi'neiʃən] *n.* 考

試, 考查, 調查。
example [ig'zɑ:mpl] *n.* 例証, 榜樣, 先例, for example 例如, to take ... as example 拿……為例。
excellent ['eksələnt] *adj.* 優秀的, 極好的。
exchange [iks'tʃeɪndʒ] *vt.* 交換, 調換, *vi.* 可互調。
excite [ik'saɪt] *vt.* 激起, 使興奮, to be (get) excited at (over) 因……興奮, 興奮起來。
excitement [ik'saɪtmənt] *n.* 興奮, 刺激。
exclaim [iks'kleɪm] *vt. & vi.* 呼喊, 大聲叫。
excursion [iks'kɜ:ʃən] *n.* 遊覽, 旅行。
execution [eksɪ'kju:ʃən] *n.* 執行, 表演, 完成。
exercise ['eksəsaɪs] *n.* 練習, 訓練, 體操, 運動, 習題。
exert [ig'zɜ:t] *vt.* 盡力, 發揮。
exhibit [ig'zɪbɪt] *vt.* 顯示, 展覽。
exhibition [eksɪ'bɪʃən] *n.* 展覽, 顯示。

exist [ɪg'zɪst] *vt.* 存在, 現存。
existing [ɪg'zɪstɪŋ] *adj.* 現存的, 目前的。
expect [ɪks'pekt] *vt.* 期待, 預期, 指望。
experience [ɪks'pɪəriəns] *n.* 經驗, 經歷, *vt.* 體驗。
experienced [ɪks'pɪəriənst] *adj.* 有經驗的, 老練的。
experiment [ɪks'perɪmənt] *n. & v.* 實驗, 試驗。
experimentally [ɪks,perɪ'mentəli] *adv.* 實驗上。
expert ['ekspə:t] *n.* 專家, 內行。
explain [ɪks'pleɪn] *vt. & vi.* 說明, 闡明, 解釋。
explosion [ɪks,pləʊzən] *n.* 爆炸。
extermination [eks'tə:mɪ'neɪʃən] *n.* 根絕, 撲滅。
extreme [ɪks'tri:m] *adj.* 極端的, 非常的, *n.* 末端。
extremely [ɪks'tri:mli] *adv.* 極端, 非常。
eye [aɪ] *n.* 眼。

F

face [feɪs] *n.* 臉, 面, 表面, *vt.* 面對着, 向。
facilitate [fə'sɪlɪteɪt] *vt.* 促進, 使便利。
facility [fə'sɪlɪtɪ] *n.* 設備, 方便 (多用複數)。

fact [fækt] *n.* 事實, 實際, a matter of fact 事實上, in fact 事實上, 其實。
factor ['fæktə] *n.* 要素。
factory ['fæktəri] *n.* 工廠。
fail [feɪl] *vt. & vi.* 失敗, 未能, *n.*

失敗，失誤。
fail to (do) 沒能(做)。
failure ['feɪljə] *n.* 失敗。
fair [fɛə] *adj.* 美麗的，公平的，相當的，*n.* 市集，庙会。
fairly ['fɛəli] *adj.* 公平地，十分，相當地。
fall [fɔ:l] *vi.* 落下，跌倒，爬下，
to fall behind 落后，to fall to the ground 落(爬)在地上。
falschood ['fɔ:lʃud] *n.* 虛偽，錯誤。
fame [feɪm] *n.* 名聲，名譽，盛名。
family ['fæmili] *n.* 家庭，家族。
famous ['feɪməs] *adj.* 有名的。
fan [fæn] *n.* 運動迷，球迷。
fancy ['fænsi] *n.* 想象，*adj.* 想象的，
不實用而是裝門面的。
farmhand ['fɑ:mhænd] *n.* 農夫，長工。
farther ['fɑ:ðə] *adj. & adv.* far 的比較級，更遠點，進一步。
fascist ['fæsɪst] *n.* 法西斯黨徒，*adj.* 法西斯的。
fast [fɑ:st] *adj. & adv.* 快，迅速。
father ['fɑ:ðə] *n.* 父親。
fatigue [fə'ti:g] *n.* 疲勞。
favorite ['feɪvərɪt] *adj.* 所喜愛的。
favour ['feɪvə] (也寫作 favor) *n.* 偏愛，有利，贊成，in favour of .. 支持，有利於。
fear [fiə] *n. & vt.* 畏懼，害怕。
feather ['feðə] *n.* 羽毛，輕如羽毛的東西，feather weight 最輕級。(舉

重)。
February ['februəri] *n.* 2月。
feel [fi:l] *vt. & vi.* 感覺到，覺得，以為，摸到。
feeling ['fi:lɪŋ] *n.* 感覺，情緒。
few [fju:] *pron.* 少數的，少量，(quite) a few 有一些。
field [fi:ld] *n.* 田地，運動場地，(學術)領域。
fifteen ['fɪf'ti:n] *num.* 十五。
fifty ['fɪfti] *num.* 五十。
fight [faɪt] *vt. & vi.* 戰鬥，鬥爭，fight for... 為……而鬥爭，to fight against... 和……作鬥爭。
fighter ['faɪtə] *n.* 戰士。
fill [fɪl] *vt.* 注滿，填滿，充滿。
final ['faɪnəl] *adj.* 最終的，決定的，*n.* 結局，決賽，final match 決賽。
finally ['faɪnəli] *adv.* 終于，最後。
find [faɪnd] *vt.* 發現，遇見，感得，看出，找着。
fine [faɪn] *adj.* 美好的，優良的，晴朗的。
finish ['fɪnɪʃ] *vt. & vi.* 完成，結束，到達終點，*n.* 結局，終點。
fire [faɪə] *n.* 火，焰火，*vt. & vi.* 燃燒，點火，開火。
firm [fɜ:m] *adj.* 結實的，堅固的，堅定的。
first [fɜ:st] *adj. & adv.* 第一，最初，首要的，首先，*n.* 第一，首位。
fit [fɪt] *adj.* 適宜的，強健的，*vt. & vi.* 合適；使適應。

fitness [ˈfɪtnɪs] *n.* 适当, 良好(身体状态)。

five [faɪv] *num.* 五。

fix [fɪks] *vt. & vi.* 安置, 规定, 固定。

flag [flæg] *n.* 旗。

flame [fleɪm] *n.* 火焰。

fling [flɪŋ] *vt. & vi.* 投, 抛, 突进。

floor [flɔː] *n.* 地板。

flow [fləʊ] *n. & vi.* 流, 流动。

fly [flaɪ] *vi.* 飞, 飘扬

focus [ˈfəʊkəs] *n.* 焦点, *vt. & vi.* 定焦点, 集中在某点上。

folk [fəʊk] *n.* 人们(诗), 亲友。

follow [ˈfɒləʊ] *vt. & vi.* 跟着, 接着发生, 遵循, 仿照, to follow suit 照先例, to follow up 贯彻到底, as follows 如下。

food [fuːd] *n.* 食品, 粮食。

foot [fʊt] *n.* 脚足, 英尺, to be on (one's) foot 站起来, on foot 徒步, 站着。

football [ˈfʊtbɔːl] *n.* 足球。

footwork [ˈfʊtwɜːk] *n.* 步法。

for [fɔː, fə, fɒ] *prep.* 向, 到...去, 为...(目的), 因为...(理由), (时间, 距离)长短, 关于, 赞成, 虽然。

forbid [fəˈbɪd] *vt.* 禁止, 不许。

force [fɔːs] *n.* 力, 暴力, 兵力, *vt.* 强迫, 强行, forced march 强行军, 急行军。

foreign [ˈfɒrɪn] *adj.* 外国的, 外来的。

foremost [ˈfɔːməʊst] *adj. & adv.* 最初, 主要。

forever [fəˈrevə] *adv.* 永远, 永久, 常常。

forget [fəˈɡet] *vt. & vi.* 忘记, 忽略, 遗漏。

forgive [fəˈɡɪv] *vt.* 原谅, 宽恕。

form [fɔːm] *n.* 形状, 形式, 姿势, *vt. & vi.* 形成, 组成, 作出。

formation [fɔːˈmeɪʃən] *n.* 形成, 构造。

former [ˈfɔːmə] *adj.* 以前的, 在前的, the former 前者。

forth [fɔːθ] *adv.* 向前, 向外。

forward (s) [ˈfɔːwəd,-z] *adv.* 向前 *n.* 前锋, to look forward to... 展望。

foul [faʊl] *n.* 犯规, 违例, *adj.* 犯规的, *v.* 犯规。

found [faʊnd] *vt. & vi.* 建立, 打基础。

four [fɔː] *num.* 四, 四个。

fourteen [ˈfɔːˈtiːn] *num.* 十四, 十四 个。

fourth [fɔːθ] *num.* 第四。

free [friː] *adj.* 自由的, 空闲, 随意的, *vt.* 使自由, free kick 任意球。

freedom [ˈfriːdəm] *n.* 自由。

freely [ˈfriːli] *adv.* 随意地, 自由地。

freeze [friːz] *vt. & vi.* 冷冻, 打冷颤。

French [ˈfrentʃ] *adj. & n.* 法国的, 法国人, 法语。

fresh [frefʃ] *adj.* 新的, 新鲜的, 精神抖擞的。

Friday ['faɪdi] *n.* 星期五。
friend [frend] *n.* 朋友。
friendly ['frendli] *adj.* 友好的, 亲切的。
friendship ['frendʃɪp] *n.* 友谊, 友爱。
frighten ['fraɪtən] *vt.* 恐吓。
from [frəm, frɒm] *prep.* 自, 从, 以来, (表示除去)不得…。(表示原因)因, 由…(表示区别)和…不同。
front [frʌnt] *n.* 前面, 前部, *adj.* & *adv.* 前面的, 在前的, in front of...在…之前面。
fruit [fru:t] *n.* 果实, 水果, 效果。
fruitful ['fru:tful] *adj.* 效果好的, 有成果的。

fuel ['fjuəl] *n.* 燃料。
full [ful] *adj.* 满的, 充分的, 完全的, to be full of... 充满了…, full speed 全速, full-back 后卫(足球)。
fully ['fʊli] *adv.* 十分, 完全。
fun [fʌn] *n.* 游戏, 玩笑, for fun 开玩笑。
function ['fʌŋkʃən] *n.* 作用, 机能, *vt.* 起作用。
furnish ['fɜ:nɪʃ] *vt.* & *vi.* 供给, 装备。
further ['fɜ:ðə] *adj.* 进一步的, 此外的, *adv.* 进一步, 而且。
future ['fju:tʃə] *n.* 未来, 将来, 前途。

G

gain [geɪn] *vt.* & *vi.* 获得, 打胜, 进步, *n.* 利益, 进步。
game [geɪm] *n.* 游戏, 竞赛, 一局, 一盘。
gap [gæp] *n.* 间隙, 缺口, 缺陷。
gas [gæs] *n.* 瓦斯, 气体。
gather ['gæðə] *vt.* & *vi.* 集合, 搜集, 聚集。
general ['dʒenərəl] *adj.* 一般的, 概括的, 简略的, *n.* 一般, 将军, in general 大体上。
generally ['dʒenərəli] *adv.* 大概, 一般地, 广泛地。
generously ['dʒenərəsli] *adv.* 大量地, 大方地。

geographical [dʒiə'græfɪkəl] *adj.* 地理学的, 地理的。
German ['dʒɜ:mən] *n.* & *adj.* 德国人, 德语, 德国的。
get [get] *vt.* 得到, 接受, 取得, *vi.* 渐次变为…, to get set 预备(赛跑时的口令)。
ghost [gəʊst] *n.* 鬼, 幽灵。
gift [gɪft] *n.* 天赋才能, 礼物。
gifted ['gɪftɪd] *adj.* 有天才的。
girl [gɜ:l] *n.* 女孩子, 少女。
give [gɪv] *vt.* 给, 交付, 发出, 献出, give rise to...引起, to give up 放弃。
glass [glɑ:s] *n.* 玻璃, 玻璃杯。

go [gou] *vi.* 走, 去, 运转。
goal [gou] *n.* 足球門, 目的, 目标,
to score a goal 命中一球。
goal-line ['goul'lain] *n.* 底綫(足
球)。
goalkeeper ['goul'ki:pə] *n.* 足球守
門員。
gold [gould] *n. & adj.* 黄金, 金的,
金色的。
golden ['goulden] *adj.* 黄金色的,
宝贵的。
gong [gɔŋ] *n.* 鑼。
good [gud] *adj.* 好的, 优良的, 善
良的, 有效的, to be good at 善
于..., to be good for...对...有好
处。
good-bye ['gudbai] *n.* 再見。
govern ['gavən] *vt.* 統治, 管理, 支
配。
government ['gavəmənt] *n.* 政府,
統轄。
gradually ['grædʒuəli] *adj.* 漸漸地,
逐次地。
grandeur ['grændʒə] *n.* 宏大, 庄严,
华麗, 威武, 堂皇。
grasp [grɑ:sp] *vt.* 抓住, 握紧, 領
会。
grass [grɑ:s] *n.* 草, 草地。

grave greiv] *adj.* 重大的, 严重的。
gravly ['geivli] *adv.* 重大, 严重地。
great [greit] *adj.* 大, 巨大, 伟大的,
重大的。
greatly ['greitli] *adj.* 大大地, 非常。
greedy ['gri:di] *adj.* 貪心的。
greet [gri:t] *vt.* 致敬, 問好。
groan [groun] *vi.* 哼, 呻吟。
ground [graund] *n.* 地面, 土地,
运动場地, 理由, 根据。
group [gru:p] *n.* 群, 团体, 組, in
groups 成群, a group of 一群...
grow [grou] *vi. & vt.* 生长, 增加。
逐渐成为。
growl [graul] *n.* 狗发怒的叫声。
guarantee [gærən'ti:] *n.* 保証, 担保
人, *vt.* 保証, 担保。
guard [gɑ:d] *n.* 警戒, 哨兵, 后卫
(籃球), *vt.* 守卫, to be on guard
警惕着。
guidance ['gaidens] *n.* 响导, 指揮,
引导, under the guidance of 在...
的引导下。
gun [gʌn] *n.* 枪, 炮。
gymnasium [dʒim'neizjəm] *n.* 体育
館。
gymnastics [dʒim'næstiks] *n.* 体操运
动, 体育。

H

habit ['hæbit] *n.* 习惯。
hair [heə] *n.* 头发, 毛。
half [ha:lf] *n. & adj.* 半, 一半,

half time 半时(球类, 运动)。
half-conscious ['ha:lf'kɔnʃəs] *adj.*
半昏迷状态的。

hall [hɔ:l] *n.* 大厅, 馆, 会堂。
hammer [ˈhæmə] *n.* 槌子, 鏈球。
hamper [ˈhæmpə] *vt.* 妨碍, 阻止。
hand [hænd] *n.* 手, *vt.* 交付, 递给。
hand-grenade [ˈhændɡriˈneɪd] *n.* 手榴弹。
handle [ˈhændl] *n.* 把, 柄, *vt.* 用手拿, 处理, 指挥, 掌握。
hang [hæŋ] *vt. & vi.* 悬, 挂, 吊。
happen [ˈhæpən] *vi.* 发生, 偶然…
… , 碰巧…。
happily [ˈhæpɪli] *adv.* 幸而, 幸运地。
happy [ˈhæpi] *adj.* 幸福的, 快乐的。
hard [hɑ:d] *adv.* 坚硬的, 困难的,
adj. 牢, 竭力, 不容易。
hardly [ˈhɑ:dlɪ] *adv.* 几乎不, 好容易才。
hat [hæt] *n.* 帽子(有边的)。
hate [heit] *v.* 憎恨。
have [hæv] *vt.* 有(助动词之一)。
hazard [ˈhæzəd] *n.* 危险, 冒险, 阻碍。
he [hi:] *pron.* 他。
head [hed] *n.* 头, 头部, 顶部, *vt.*
用头顶(球)。
health [ˈhelθ] *n.* 健康, 健康状态。
healthy [ˈhelθi] *adj.* 健康的, 卫生的。
hear [hiə] *vt. & vi.* 听, 听见, 听取。
heart [hɜ:t] *n.* 心脏, 心, 心胸, 同情心。
heartly [ˈhɑ:tlɪ] *adj.* 衷心的, 热诚的。

heat [hi:t] *n.* 热, 热气, 热度。
heat-regulatory [ˈhi:tregjuˈlætəri]
adj. 热量调节的。
heavily [ˈhevili] *adv.* 重, 沉重, 猛烈地。
heavy [ˈhevi] *adj.* 重的, 大量的。
heel [hi:l] *n.* 踵, 脚后跟。
height [hait] *n.* 高, 高度, 顶点。
heighten [ˈhaitən] *vt. & vi.* 升高, 增高, 增加。
help [help] *vt. & vi.* 帮助, 促进, 有助…
n. 帮助, 援助, can't help…
…禁不住要…, 不得不…。
her [hɜ:] *pron.* 她, 她的。
here [hiə] *adv.* 在这里, 在这点上, 到这里, *n.* 这里, 这点。
heroic [hiˈrouɪk] *adj.* 英雄的, 英勇的。
heroine [ˈherouɪn] *n.* 女英雄, 女主人公。
hide [haɪd] *vt. & vi.* 藏, 隐藏。
hidden [ˈhɪdən] *adj.* (hide 的过去分词)隐藏的。
high [haɪ] *adj.* 高, 高处的, 高级的,
adv. 高。
high-jumper [ˈhaɪˈdʒʌmpə] *n.* 跳高运动员。
him [hɪm] *pron.* he 的宾格形式。
himself [hɪmˈself] *pron.* 他自己, 他亲自。
hip [hɪp] *n.* 臀部。
his [hɪz] *pron.* 他的。
hit [hit] *vt. & vi.* 打, 打击, 打中。

hold [hould] *vt. & vi.* 握, 抓, 容纳, 认为, 支持, *n.* 掌握。
hole [hou] *n.* 孔, 洞。
holiday ['həleɪdʒ] *n.* 节日, 假日。
home [həʊm] *n.* 家, 家庭, 故乡, *adv.* 在家, 回家。
hometown ['həʊmtaʊn] *n.* 故乡。
homework ['həʊmwɜ:k] *n.* 家庭作业。
honour ['ɒnə] *n.* 荣誉。
hook [huk] *n.* 钩, *vt.* 钩住, a hook shot 钩手投篮。
hope [həʊp] *n.* 希望, *vt. & vi.* 希望, 期待。
hospital ['hɒspɪtl] *n.* 医院。
hot [hɒt] *adj.* 热地, 热烈的, 激烈的。
hothead ['həʊθed] *n.* 性急的人, 头脑发热的人。
hour [aʊə] *n.* 小时, 时刻, 点钟。

I [aɪ] *pron.* 我。
idea [aɪ'diə] *n.* 想法, 意思, 主意。
if [ɪf] *conj.* 如果, 倘若, 即使, 不是... 是..., even if... 即使, as if... 似乎。
ignorant ['ɪgnərənt] *adj.* 无知的, to be ignorant of... 不知。
ill [ɪl] *adj.* 生病。
imitate ['ɪmɪteɪt] *vt.* 模仿, 仿效。
immediately [ɪ'mɪ:dʒətli] *adv.* 立即, 直接,

house [haʊs] *n.* 家, 屋子。
how [haʊ] *adv.* 怎样, 怎么, 如何。
however [haʊ'evə] *adv.* 然而, 无论如何, *conj.* 虽然, 然而。
human ['hju:mən] *adj.* 人的, 人类的, *n.* 人。
hundred ['hʌndrəd] *n.* 百, 百个。
hunt [hʌnt] *vt.* 追捕, 打猎。
hunted ['hʌntɪd] *adj.* 被追赶的。
hurdle ['hɜ:dl] *n.* 籬笆, 栏, 跨栏比赛, *vt.* 跨栏。
hurrah [hu'ra:, hu'reɪ] *inter.* 万岁, 欢呼声。
hurry ['hʌrɪ] *n.* 慌忙, 急, *vt.* 赶紧, 急忙, hurry up 赶快。
hurt [hɜ:t] *vt. & vi.* 伤害, 受伤, 使痛, 痛, *n.* 伤, 疼痛。
husband ['hʌsbənd] *n.* 丈夫。
hypothesis [haɪ'pɒθɪsɪ:z] *n.* 假设, 臆测, (单数) hypothesis。

I
immence [ɪ'mens] *adj.* 莫大的, 无限的。
impair [ɪm'peə] *vt.* 损害, 减少。
impede [ɪm'pi:d] *vt.* 妨碍, 阻碍。
imperialism [ɪm'piəriəlɪzəm] *n.* 帝国主义。
imperialist [ɪm'piəriəlɪst] *n.* 帝国主义者, 帝国主义的。
implement ['ɪmplɪmənt] *n.* 工具, 器械, *vt.* 完成, 补充。
importance [ɪm'pɔ:təns] *n.* 重要,

重大。
important [im'pɔ:tənt] *adj.* 重要的, 要紧的。
impossible {im'pɔsəbəl} *adj.* 不可能的。
improve [im'pru:v] *vt. & vi.* 增进, 提高, 改善, 进步。
improvement [im'pru:vmənt] *n.* 增进, 改善, 提高, 进步。
in [in] *prep.* 在……内, 在……中, 以……(方式, 工具)做, 按, 依……, *adv.* 在内, 向内, 在家, 到来。
inch [intʃ] *n.* 英寸。
incline [in'klaɪn] *vt. & vi.* 倾斜, 使倾斜, 倾向于, 易于……。
include [in'klu:d] *vt.* 包括, 包含。
increase [in'kri:s] *vt. & vi.* 增加, 增大, 增强。
increase ['ɪnkri:s] *n.* 增加。
indefinitely [in'defɪnɪtli] *adv.* 不确定, 无限地。
indicate ['ɪndɪkeɪt] *vt.* 表示, 指出, 预示。
indication [ɪndɪ'keɪʃən] *n.* 表示, 表明。
indirect [ɪndɪ'rekt] *adj.* 间接的。
individual [ɪndɪ'vɪdʒuəl] *adj.* 个别的, 个人的, *n.* 个人, 一个人。
indoor [ɪn'dɔ:ə] *adj.* 室内的。
industrious [ɪn'dɑ:striəs] *adj.* 勤劳的, 刻苦的。
industry ['ɪndəstri] *n.* 工业。
inevitable [ɪn'evɪtəbəl] *adj.* 不可避免

的, 必然的。
inexperienced [ɪnɪks'pɪəriənst] *adj.* 缺乏经验的, 不熟练的。
influx ['ɪnflʌks] *n.* 流入, 注入, 河口。
infraction [ɪn'frækʃən] *n.* 违犯, 违背。
injury ['ɪndʒəri] *n.* 损害, 伤害。
ink [ɪŋk] *n.* 墨水。
inquire [ɪn'kwaɪə] *vt. & vi.* 询问, 调查, 问。
inside ['ɪnsaɪd] *adj.* 内部的, 里面的, *adv.* 在里面, 在内部, inside-left 左内锋(足球), inside-right 右内锋(足球)。
instance ['ɪnstəns] *n.* 实例, 例证, for instance 例如。
instant ['ɪnstənt] *adj.* 立即的, 即时的。
instead [ɪns'ted] *adv.* 代替, instead of... 而不……。
institute ['ɪnstɪtju:t] *n.* 学院。
instruction [ɪns'trʌkʃən] *n.* 教导, 教训, 指示。
instrument ['ɪnstɪmənt] *n.* 工具, 器械。
insufficient [ɪnsə'fɪʃənt] *adj.* 不足的, 不够的。
intensify [ɪn'tensɪfaɪ] *vt. & vi.* 加强, 变强。
intensity [ɪn'tensɪti] *n.* 激烈, 强度。
intensive [ɪn'tensɪv] *adj.* 加强的, 强烈的。

intently [in'tentli] *adv.* 注意地, 有意地, 故意。

intercourse ['intəko:s] *n.* 往来, 交往, 交际。

interest ['intərest] *n.* 利益, (用复数形式) 兴趣, *vt.* 使发生兴趣。

intermission [intə'miʃən] *n.* 中止, 间隔, 中断时间。

international [intə'næʃnl] *adj.* 国际的, 国际上的。

interval ['intəvəl] *n.* 间隔, 中断期间, 休息时间。

into ['intu] *prep.* 向内, 往里。

intransitive [in'trɑ:nsitiv] *adj.* 不及

物的(语法)。

introduce [intrə'dju:s] *vt.* 介绍, 引导, 采用, 传入。

inviting [in'vaitɪŋ] *adj.* 诱人的。

involuntary [in'vələntəri] *adj.* 不自觉的, 不随意的。

iron [aɪən] *n. & adj.* 铁, 铁的。

is [ɪz] 动词 *to be* 的单数第三人称形式。

issue ['ɪʃu:] *vt.* 发出, *n.* 争论, 结果。

it [ɪt] *pron.* 它。

its [ɪts] *pron.* 它的。

J

jacket [dʒækɪt] *n.* 短上衣, 外套, 夹克。

January [dʒænjuəri] *n.* 一月。

Japanese [dʒæpə'ni:z] *n. & adj.* 日本人, 日语, 日本的。

javelin [dʒævln] *n.* 标枪, javelin throw 掷标枪。

join [dʒɔɪn] *vt. & n.* 联合, 协力, 加入。

joint [dʒɔɪnt] *n.* 接合处(点), 关节(骨)。

joy [dʒɔɪ] *n.* 快乐。

judge [dʒʌdʒ] *vt. & vi.* 判断, 判。
n. 裁判员, 法官。

judgement ['dʒʌdʒmənt] *n.* 判断, 裁判, 判断力

July [dʒu'laɪ] *n.* 七月。

jump [dʒʌmp] *vt. & vi.* 跳出, 跳过, 跳跃, 跳动, high jump 跳高, broad jump 跳远。

June [dʒu:n] *n.* 六月。

just [dʒʌst] *adj.* 正当的, 公正的, *adv.* 正好, 恰, 刚刚。

justify ['dʒʌstɪfaɪ] *vt.* 辩明, 证明。

K

Karl Marx [ka:l'mɑ:ks] *n.* 卡尔·马克思。

keep [ki:p] *vt. & vi.* 保持, 保存,

继续, keep...from (doing) 使不做, keep...back 打退, keep near 老跟着, 追紧(球类), keep in

good condition 保持良好状态,
keep on (doing) 繼續(做)
key [ki:] *n.* 鑰匙, 關鍵, 秘訣,
key to..., ...的關鍵(秘訣)。
kick [kik] *vt., vi. & n.* 踢, (运动)
摆腿, 踢球, kick off 开球(足),
corner kick 踢角球(足)。
kill [kil] *vt.* 杀死。
kilo-gramme (kg.) ['kiləgræm] *n.*
千克, 公斤。
kind [kaind] *n.* 种类, 方法, (all)

kinds of... 各种……, right kind
of... 正确的……。
kinesthetic ['kɪnəs'tetɪk] *adj.* 肌肉运
动的。
knee [ni:] *n.* 膝, 膝关节, *vi.* 跪。
knife [naɪf] *n.* 小刀。
knock [nɒk] *vt.* 敲, 打, 攻击。
know [nəʊ] *vt. & vi.* 知道, 認得,
理解。
knowledge ['nɒlɪdʒ] *n.* 知識, 學問。

L

labour ['leɪbə] *n.* 劳动。
lack [læk] *n. vt. & vi.* 缺乏。
lake [leɪk] *n.* 湖。
lamb [læm] *n.* 小羊。
lamp [læmp] *n.* 灯。
landlord ['lændlə:d] *n.* 地主。
lane [leɪn] *n.* 小路, 跑道(田径)。
language ['læŋgwɪdʒ] *n.* 語言。
lap [læp] *n.* 跑道的一圈。
large [lɑ:dʒ] *adj.* 大的。
last [lɑ:st] *n.* 最后, 結局, *adj. & adv.*
最后, 上次, at last 終于。
late [leɪt] *adj. & adv.* 迟, 最近。
latent ['leɪtənt] *adj.* 潜在的, 潜伏的。
lately ['leɪtli] *adv.* 近来, 最近。
later ['leɪtə] *adj.* 更迟的, 更后的。
adv. 在后, 过后。
latter ['lætə] *adj.* 后者。
laugh [lɑ:f] *vi. & n.* 笑。
law [lɔ:] *n.* 法律, 法則, 規律。

lay [leɪ] *vt.* 放, to lay emphasis on
強調……。
lazy ['leɪzi] *adj.* 懶惰的。
lead [li:d] *n.* 引导, 領導, *vt. & vi.*
引导, 领导, to lead to 导致, 引
向。
leader ['li:də] *n.* 领导人。
leading ['li:dɪŋ] *adj.* 主要的。
leap [li:p] *vt. vi. & n.* 跳起, 跳过,
the great leap forward 大跃进。
learn [lɜ:n] *vt. & vi.* 学习, 知道,
弄清楚, to learn by heart 誦記,
背誦。
least [li:st] *adj. & adv.* 最少。
leave [li:v] *vt.* 离开, 留下, *vi.* 出
发。
lecture ['lektʃə] *n.* 講課, 講話。
left [left] *adj.* 左面的。
leg [leg] *n.* 腿。
length [leŋθ] *n.* 長度。

Leninism [ˈlenɪnɪzəm] *n.* 列宁主义。
less [les] *adj. & adv.* 更少, 較少。
lessen [ˈlesn] *vt.* 使小(少), 減少。
lesson [ˈlesn] *n.* 功課, 課程。
lest [lest] *conj.* 免得。
let [let] *vt.* 讓, *vj.* 租。
letter [ˈletə] *n.* 信件, 文字。
libaility [laɪəˈbɪləti] *n.* 义务, liability
to 有……的傾向, 易于。
liberation [lɪbəˈreɪʃən] *n.* 解放。
library [ˈlaɪbrəri] *n.* 圖書館。
lie [laɪ] *vi.* 躺, 臥, 坐落, lie in 在
于。
life [laɪf] *n.* 生活, 生命。
lifetime [ˈlaɪftaɪm] *n.* 一生, 終生。
lift [lɪft] *vt. & vi.* 举起, 昇起。
light [laɪt] *n.* 光, 光輝, *vt. & vi.* 点
火, 照亮, *adj.* 輕的, 輕便的。
lightness [ˈlaɪtnɪs] *n.* 輕, 敏捷, 明
亮。
like [laɪk] *vt. & vi.* 喜欢, *adj., adv.*
& *prep.* 象, 如。
limb [lɪm] *n.* 肢, 手足。
limit [ˈlɪmɪt] *n.* 极限, 范围, 界限。
line [laɪn] *n.* 綫, in line with 和……
一致, 依据。
linesman [ˈlaɪnzmen] *n.* 巡边員(足)。

listen [ˈlɪsn] *vt. & vi.* 听, 留心听。
little [ˈlɪtl] *adj.* 小, 少。
live [lɪv] *vi.* 居住, 生活, *vt.* 过(…
…的生活)。
living-room [ˈlɪvɪŋ ˈru:m] *n.* 起居室。
load [ləʊd] *n. vt. & vi.* 装载, 負担。
lock [lɒk] *n.* 鎖, *vi. & vt.* 上鎖, 使
固定。
long [lɒŋ] *adv.* 长, *adv.* 长久, *n.* 长
期間, before long 不久, as long
as…只要, long distance race 长跑。
longevity [lɒŋˈdʒevɪti] *n.* 长寿, 寿命。
look [lʊk] *vi. & vt.* 看, 注視, 預
期, look after 照应, look at 看,
注視, look for 期待, 找。
lose [lu:z] *vt. & vi.* 丢失, 失敗。
lot [lɒt] *n.* 籤, 命运, a lot of =
lots of 大量的, 許多的, to draw
lot 抽籤。
loud [laʊd] *adj.* 大声的。
love [lʌv] *n.* 爱好, 爱情, *vt. & vi.*
爱, 喜欢。
low [ləʊ] *adj.* 低的。
luck [lʌk] *n.* 运气。
luckily [ˈlʌkɪli] *adv.* 幸亏, 幸运地。
lunch [lʌntʃ] *n.* 午餐。
lung [lʌŋ] *n.* 肺。

M

machine [məˈʃi:n] *n.* 机器, machine-
gun 机关槍。
magazine [mæɡəˈzi:n] *n.* 杂志。
magic [ˈmædʒɪk] *adj.* 魔术的, 不可

思議的, *n.* 魔术。
maiden [ˈmeɪdn] *n.* 处女, 少女。
main [meɪn] *adj.* 主要的。
major [ˈmeɪdʒə] *adj.* 較大的, 較重

要的, 主要的。
make [meik] *vt. & vi.* 作, 制造, 做, 使...
man [mæn] *n.* 男人, 士兵, man-to-man 人盯人。
manage ['mænidʒ] *vt.* 办理, 设法。
manoeuvre [mæ'nu:və] *n.* 运动(军事), *vt. & vi.* 运用, 演习。
manifest ['mænifest] *adj.* 显然的, 明白的, *vt. & vi.* 表明, 现表。
manifestation [mæ'nifesteɪʃən] *n.* 表明, 表示。
many ['meni] *adj.* 许多的。
map [mæp] *n.* 地图。
Marathon ['mærəθən] *n.* 马拉松。
March [mɑ:tʃ] *n.* 三月。
march [mɑ:tʃ] *n.* 行军, 进军, Long March 长征, forced march 急行军, *vt. & vi.* 进军。
mark [mɑ:k] *n.* 考试分数, 记号, 标准, 起跑线, On your marks! 各就各位(赛跑口令)。
Marxism ['mɑ:ksizm] *n.* 马克思主义。
master ['mɑ:stə] *n.* 主人, 能者, 大师, master of sport 运动健将, *vt.* 精通, 控制, 掌握。
match [mætʃ] *n.* 比赛, *vt. & vi.* 相配, 敌得过。
mate [meit] *n.* 同事, 伙伴。
material [mə'tiəriəl] *adj.* 物质的, 重大的, *n.* 资料, 材料。
matter ['mætiə] *n.* 事情, 重大事件,

no matter how (what, when which, who, where) 不管怎样(什么, 什么时候, 哪一个, 谁, 什么地方)。
maximum ['mæksiməm] *n.* 极点, 最大限度, *adj.* 最高(大)的。
May [mei] *n.* 五月。
may [mei] *aux. v.* 可以, 可能。
maybe ['meibi] *adv.* 或许, 大概。
me [mi:, mi] *pron.* 我。
meal [mi:l] *n.* 一餐。
mean [mi:n] *n.* 方法(复数), 手段(复数), as a means of 作为...的一种手段, by means of 以...用...。
measure ['meʒə] *vt. & vi.* 测量, 估量, *n.* 方法, 尺度。
meat [mi:t] *n.* 肉。
mechanism ['mekənizəm] *n.* 机械, 机制。
medal ['medl] *n.* 奖章。
medley ['medli] *n.* 混合。
meet [mi:t] *vt. & vi.* 遇见, 相会, *n.* 会, athletic meet 田径运动会, to meet the needs of 满足...的需要。
member ['membə] *n.* 成员, 部分。
memory ['meməri] *n.* 记忆, 纪念。
mental ['mentl] *adj.* 精神的, 智力的。
mere [miə] *adj.* 仅仅的。
merit ['merit] *n.* 功劳, 价值, *vt.* 值得。

message ['mesidʒ] *n.* 音信, 信号。
method ['meθəd] *n.* 方法。
metre ['mi:tə] *n.* 米。
middle ['midl] *adj.* 中等的, 正中的, *n.* 正中, 中間部分, middle distance race 中距离跑。
midnight ['midnait] *n.* 半夜。
might [maɪt] *may* 的过去式。
mile [maɪl] *n.* 英里。
military ['mɪlɪtəri] *adj.* 軍事的。
milk [mɪlk] *n.* 牛奶。
million ['mɪljən] *n.* 百万。
mind [maɪnd] *n.* 心, 精神, *vt.* & *vi.* 留心。
mine [maɪn] *pron.* 我的, *n.* 矿山。
miner ['maɪnə] *n.* 矿工。
minimum ['mɪnɪmə] *n.* 最小量, 最低限度。
minor ['maɪnə] *adj.* 較小的, 次要的。
minute ['mɪnɪt] *n.* 分鐘。
miss [mɪs] *vi.* & *vt.* 錯過, 失, 不見, *n.* 少女。
mistake [mɪs'teɪk] *vt.* & *vi.* 誤解, *n.* 過失, 錯誤。
misunderstand ['mɪsʌndə'stænd] *vt.* & *n.* 誤會, 不和, 理解錯誤。
mobilise ['mɒbɪlaɪz] *vt.* & *vi.* 動員。
modern ['mɒdə] *adj.* 現代的。

modesty ['mɒdɪstɪ] *n.* 謙虛, 謹慎。
moment ['məʊmənt] *n.* 瞬間。
Monday ['mʌndɪ] *n.* 星期一。
month [mʌnθ] *n.* 月。
more [mɔː, mɔː] *n.* *adj.* & *adv.* 更多, 更大。
morning ['mɔːnɪŋ] *n.* 上午, 早晨。
most [məʊst] *adj.*, *adv.* & *n.* 最多, 最大, 最。
mother ['mʌðə] *n.* 母親。
motherland ['mʌðə'lænd] *n.* 祖國。
motion ['məʊʃən] *n.* 動作, 活動, 移動。
mountain ['maʊntɪn] *n.* 山。
mouth [maʊθ] *n.* 嘴, 口。
move [mu:v] *vt.* & *vi.* 移動, 遷居。
movement ['mu:vmənt] *n.* 運動, 移動, 動作。
much [mʌtʃ] *adj.*, & *adv.* *n.* 多。
murder ['mɜːdə] *n.* & *vt.* 謀殺, 殺害。
muscle ['mʌsl] *n.* 肌肉。
muscular ['mʌskjʊlə] *adj.* 肌肉的。
museum [mju:'ziəm] *n.* 博物館。
must [mʌst, məst] *aux. v.* 必須。
my [maɪ] *pron.* 我的。
myself [maɪ'self] *pron.* 我自己。
mystery ['mɪstəri] *n.* 神秘, 不可思議。

N

name [neɪm] *n.* 名稱, 名義, *vt.* 說出(人或物的)名稱。

nation ['neɪʃən] *n.* 國家, 民族。
national [næʃnəl] *adj.* 國家的, Na-

ational Day 国庆节。
nature ['neɪtʃə] *n.* 天然, 自然, 性質。
near [niə] *adj., adv. & prep.* 接近。
nearby ['niəbaɪ] *adv.* 附近。
nearly ['niəli] *adv.* 几乎, 相近地。
necessary ['nesɪsəri] *adj.* 必要的, 必須的。
need [ni:d] *vt. & vi.* 需要, *n.* 需要, 必要物, to meet the needs of ... 满足...的需要。
neither ['naɪðə, 'ni:ðə] *adv., prep. & adj.* 都不, 双方(两者)都不。
nervous ['nɜ:vəs] *adj.* 神經的, 神經過敏的, 神經緊張的。
net [net] *n.* 網。
neuromuscular [njuəro'maskjələ] *adj.* 神經肌肉的。
never ['nevə] *adv.* 从未, 一向不。
new [nju:] *adj.* 新的。
newly ['nju:li] *adv.* 重新地, 新近地。
news [nju:z] *n.* 新聞。
newspaper ['nju:s'peɪpə] *n.* 報紙。
next [nekst] *adj., adv. & prep.* 邻接, 其次, 下一个, 次于。
next-to-impossible ['nekst tə im-

object ['ɒdʒɪkt] *n.* 目的, 物体, 宾語(語法); *vt. & vi.* 反对。
objection [əb'dʒekʃən] *n.* 反对, 妨碍。

'posəbl] *adj.* 几乎不可能的, 能力所达到的最高度。
night [naɪt] *n.* 夜晚。
nine [naɪn] *num.* 九。
no [nəʊ] *adj.* 不, 沒有。
noise [nɔɪz] *n.* 吵鬧声, 声嘶。
noon [nu:n] *n.* 中午。
normally ['nɔ:məli] *adv.* 正常地, 普通的。
north [nɔ:θ] *n.* 北方。
nose [nəʊz] *n.* 鼻。
not [nɒt] *adv.* 不。
nothing ['nʌθɪŋ] *n.* 沒有什麼事(物)。
notice ['nəʊtɪs] *n.* 注意, 通知, 告示, *vt.* 注意到, 留心。
noun [naʊn] *n.* 名詞。
nourish ['nʌrɪʃ] *vt.* 供給养料。
November [nə'vembə] *n.* 十一月。
now [naʊ] *adv.* 現在, now and then 时常。
nowadays ['naʊədeɪz] *adv.* 現今。
number ['nʌmbə] *n.* 数字号码, a number of 一些。
numerous ['nju:mərəs] *adj.* 許多的, 大批的。
nurse [nɜ:s] *n.* 护士。

objective [əb'dʒektɪv] *adj.* 客觀的, *n.* 目的, 方針。
objectivity [əb'dʒektɪvɪti] *n.* 客觀性。
oblige [ə'blɪdʒ] *vt. & vi.* 不得不,

感謝。

observance [əb'zɑ:vəns] *n.* 遵守(規則, 法令), 慣例。

observe [əb'zə:v] *vt.* 觀察, 遵守(規則, 法令), *vi.* 觀察。

obstacle ['ɒbstəkl] *n.* 障礙物, 妨害。

obtain [əb'teɪn] *vt.* 獲得。

obviously ['ɒbvɪəsli] *adv.* 顯然地。

ocean ['ouʃən] *n.* 海洋。

o'clock [ə'klɒk] (Of the clock 的縮寫), 鐘點。

October [ək'təʊbəl] *n.* 十月。

of [ɒv, əv] *prep.* 屬於……。

off [ɔ:f, əf] *adv. & prep.* 離開, *adj.* 遠的, 那一邊的。

offense [ə'fens] *n.* 攻擊, 犯法, 犯規。

offer ['ɒfə] *vt. & vi.* 提出, 呈現, 給。

official [ə'fɪʃəl] *adj.* 正式的, 官方的。

often ['ɒfn] *adv.* 往往, 常常。

oh [ou] *interj.* 哦。

old [əʊld] *adj.* 老年的, 旧的, 古老的。

Olympic [ə'lɪmpɪk] *adj.* 奧林匹克,

Olympic games 奧林匹克運動會。

on [ɒn] *prep.* 在……之上。

once [wʌns] *adv.* 一次, 曾經, *conj.* 一旦, once upon a time 從前, at

once 立即。

oncoming ['ɒnkʌmɪŋ] *n. & adj.* 接近(的)。

only ['əʊnli] *adj.* 唯一的, *adv.* 只。

單, not only ... but also 不僅……而且……。

onto ['ɒntu:] *prep.* = on to 向。

open ['əʊpən] *adj.* 開著的, 公開的, *vi. & vt.* 開。

operation [əpə'reɪʃən] *n.* 手術(醫), 作用, 作戰(軍)。

opinion [ə'pɪnjən] *n.* 意見。

opponent [ə'pəʊnənt] *n. & adj.* 對手, 敵對。

opportunity [əpə'tju:nɪti] *n.* 機會。

oppose [ə'pəʊz] *vt.* 反對。

opposite [ə'pɒzɪt] *adj.* 相對的, 對方的, *adv.* 在對面。

oppression [ə'presʃən] *n.* 壓迫。

oppressor [ə'presə] *n.* 壓迫者。

or [ɔ:] *conj.* 或者, 否則。

order ['ɔ:də] *vt.* 命令, *n.* 次序, 命令, in order to 為了。

ordinary [ə'dɪnəri] *adj.* 普通的, 平常的。

organ ['ɔ:gən] *n.* 器官。

organism [ə'gənɪzəm] *n.* 有機體。

origin [ə'ɒrɪdʒɪn] *n.* 起源, 來歷, 起點。

original [ə'ɒrɪdʒənəl] *adj.* 原來的, 最初的。

other [ʌðə] *adj.* 別的, 其他的, *pron.* 別人, 其他東西。

ought [ɔ:t] *aux. v.* 應該。

our ['aʊə] *pron.* 我們的。

ours [aʊəz] *pron.* 我們的(東西)。

out [aʊt] *adv.* 外面, out of 從……,

出自……。

outdo [aʊt'du:] *vt.* 优于, 超过。
outlook ['aʊtlʊk] *n.* 眼界, 观点。
outmaneuver [aʊtmə'nu:və] *vt.* 运球过人, 计谋胜过, 用谋略制胜。
outside ['aʊt'saɪd] *n.* 外界, 表面,
adv. & prep. 在外面, outside-right 右边锋(足球), outside-left 左边锋(足球)。
outstanding [aʊt'stændɪŋ] *adj.* 显著的, 突出的, 杰出的。

over ['oʊvə] *prep. adv.* 超过。
overcome [oʊvə'kʌm] *vt. & vi.* 克服, 制胜。
overhand ['oʊvə'hænd] *adj. & adv.* 举手过肩, 肩上。
overweight ['oʊvə'weɪt] *n.* 过重。
overwhelm [oʊvə'hwelm] *vt.* 压倒, 挫败。
own [aʊn] *adj.* 自己的, *vt.* 有。
oxidize ['ɒksaɪdaɪz] *vt. & vi.* 氧化。
oxygen ['ɒksɪdʒən] *n.* 氧。

P

pace [peɪs] *n.* 步调, 速度, 步子。
pack [pæk] *n.* 行李, 包裹, *vt. & vi.* 包装, 打包。
page [peɪdʒ] *n.* 页。
pain [peɪn] *n.* 苦痛, 悲痛。
pair [peə] *n.* 一对。
palace ['pælɪs] *n.* 宫殿, 宏大建筑物, the Summer Palace 颐和园。
pale [peɪl] *adj.* 苍白的。
paper ['peɪpə] *n.* 纸, 文件。
parade [pə'reɪd] *n.* 游行。
parent ['peərənt] *n.* 父(或)母亲。
part [pɑ:t] *n.* 部分, *vt. & vi.* 分开。
to take part in 参加。
partially ['pɑ:ʃiəlɪ] *adv.* 部分地。
participation [pɑ:tɪ'si'peɪʃən] *n.* 参加。
particular [pə'tɪkjʊlə] *adj.* 特别的,
n. 细目, 详细情况(用复数)。
particularly [pə'tɪkjʊləli] *adv.* 特别,

分别。
party ['pɑ:ti] *n.* 政党, 集会, 同行者。
pass [pɑ:s] *vi.* 通过, *vt.* 通过, 传(球)
passer ['pɑ:sə] *n.* 传(球)者。
past [pɑ:st] *adj.* 过去的, *prep. & adv.* 过去。
path [pɑ:θ] *n.* 小路, 道。
pathway ['pɑ:θweɪ] *n.* 通道, 小路。
patience ['peɪʃəns] *n.* 忍耐。
patient ['peɪʃənt] *n.* 病人, *adj.* 能忍耐的。
pattern ['pætən] *n.* 样本, 花样, 式样, (球的)打法。
pay [peɪ] *vt. & vi.* 支付, *n.* 薪水,
to pay respects to 向……致敬。
peace [pi:s] *n.* 和平。
peace-loving [pi:s'lʌvɪŋ] *adj.* 爱好和平的。

peak [pi:k] *n.* 山頂, 高峰。
peasant [ˈpeɪzənt] *n.* 农民。
peculiar [piˈkju:ljə] *adj.* 特有的, 奇怪的。
Peking [piˈkiŋ] *n.* 北京。
pen [pen] *n.* 笔。
penalty [ˈpenlti] *n.* 处罰。
pencil [ˈpensl] *n.* 鉛笔。
penetrate [ˈpenitreit] *vt. & vi.* 透入, 洞察。
people [ˈpi:pl] *n.* 人民。
per [pə:] *prep.* 每一, per cent 百分之……。
perfect [ˈpə:fɪkt] *adj.* 完全的, 圓滿的。
perfection [pəˈfekʃən] *n.* 完美无缺, 成熟。
perfectly [pəˈfɪktli] *adv.* 完善地, 完全地。
perform [pəˈfɔ:m] *vt. & vi.* 执行, 演出, 做。
performance [pəˈfɔ:məns] *n.* 执行, 演出, 行动, 动作。
period [ˈpiəriəd] *n.* 时期。
permissible [pəˈmɪsəbl] *adj.* 可以允許的。
persistent [pəˈsɪstənt] *adj.* 坚持的, 持久的。
person [ˈpɜ:sn] *n.* 人。
phase [feɪz] *n.* 局面, 状态, 形势, 方面。
photograph [ˈfəʊtəgrɑ:f] *n.* 相片。
physical [ˈfɪzɪkəl] *adj.* 身体的, phy-

sical culture 体育。
physician [fɪˈziʃən] *n.* 医生。
physiologic [fɪziˈɒlədʒɪk] *adj.* 生理学的。
physiological [fɪziˈɒlədʒɪkəl] *adj.* 生理学上的。
physiology [fɪziˈɒlədʒi] *n.* 生理学。
pick [pɪk] *vt. & vi.* 挑揀, to pick up speed 加快速度。
picture [ˈpɪktʃə] *n.* 图片。
piece [pi:s] *n.* 一块, 一部, a piece of……一块……。
pistol [ˈpɪstl] *n.* 手鎗。
pitch [pɪtʃ] *n.* 球場(足球), *vt. & vi.* 投擲。
pity [ˈpɪti] *n.* 可惜的事。
pivot [ˈpɪvət] *vi.* 旋轉, 轉身(球)。
PLA—People's Liberation Army 人民解放軍。
place [pleɪs] *n.* 地方, 場所, 位置, to take place 发生, 举行, in place of 代替, *vt.* 放。
plan [plæn] *n.* 計劃。
platform [ˈplæt(f)ɔ:m] *n.* 台, 講台, play [pleɪ] *vt. & vi.* 玩, 打(球), 演, *n.* 玩, 戏剧。
player [ˈpleɪə] *n.* 運動員(球类), 演員。
please [pli:z] *vt. & vi.* 喜欢, 高兴。請(祈使句)。
pleasing [ˈpli:zɪŋ] *adj.* 舒适的, 愉快的。
plenty [ˈplenti] *n.* 多, 充分, plenty

- of 很多的。
- plunge [plʌndʒ] *vt. & vi.* 投身, 跳进。
- plural ['plʊərəl] *n.* 复数(语法)。
- poem ['pəʊem] *n.* 诗。
- point [pɔɪnt] *n.* 点, 分数, *vt. & vi.* 指示, 指出, turning point 转折点。
- poison ['pəɪzn] *n.* 毒药。
- policy ['pəlɪsi] *n.* 政策, 方针。
- political [pə'litɪkəl] *adj.* 政治的。
- poor [puə] *adj.* 穷的, 不好的, 不幸的。
- popular ['pɒpjələ] *adj.* 普通的, 流行的。
- popularity [pɒpjʊ'lærɪtɪ] *n.* 普及, 流行。
- popularly ['pɒpjʊləli] *adv.* 普遍地, 一般地。
- position [pə'zɪʃən] *n.* 位置, 姿势, 处境, 地位。
- positive ['pɒzətɪv] *adj.* 确实的, 肯定的, 正的, *n.* 原级(语法)。
- possess [pə'zes] *vt.* 占有, 具有。
- possessive [pə'zɛsɪv] *adj.* 所有的, *n.* 所有格(语法)。
- possibility [pɒsə'bɪlɪtɪ] *n.* 可能, 可能性。
- possible ['pɒsəbl] *adj.* 可能的, as... as possible 尽可能……, if possible 可能的話。
- post [pəʊst] *n.* 职位, 岗位。
- potentiality [pə'tenʃɪ'ælɪtɪ] *n.* 潜力, 可能性。
- powder ['paʊdə] *n.* 粉末, 粉药。
- power ['paʊə] *n.* 能力, 威力。
- powerful ['paʊəfʊl] *adj.* 强大的, 有力的。
- practice ['præktɪs] *n.* 实践, 练习。
- practise ['præktɪs] *vt.* 练习, 训练。
- preceding [pri'si:diŋ] *adj.* 前的, 先的。
- precise [pri'saɪs] *adj.* 正确的, 沒錯的。
- precision [pri'sɪʒən] *n.* 精确, 正确。
- preparation [prepə'reɪʃən] *n.* 准备。
- prepare [pri'peə] *vt. & vi.* 准备。
- prerogative [pri'rogətɪv] *n.* 特权。
- presence ['prezns] *n.* 存在, 出席。
- present ['preznt] *adj.* 现在的, 出席的。
- present [pri'zent] *vt.* 提出, 呈现。
- preservation [prezə'veɪʃən] *n.* 保存, 保持。
- president ['prezɪdnt] *n.* 校长, 总统, 主席。
- press [pres] *vt. & vi.* 压, 逼, 印刷, *n.* 出版物。
- pressure ['preʃə] *n.* 压力。
- prevent [pri'vent] *vt. & vi.* 阻止, 防止, to prevent...from (doing) 防止...(做)。
- previous [pri:vjəs] *adj.* 先前的, 以前的。
- pride [praɪd] *n.* 骄傲。
- principally ['prɪnsəpəli] *adv.* 主要地。

principle ['prɪnsəpl] *n.* 原則, 原理。
private ['praɪvɪt] *adj.* 私人的, 私立的 (學校), private property 私有財產。
prize [praɪz] *n.* 獎品。
problem ['prɒbləm] *n.* 問題。
procedure [prə'si:dʒə] *n.* 程序。
proceed [prə'si:d] *vi.* 繼續進行, 着手。
process ['prəʊses] *n.* 過程, 進行。
produce [prə'dju:s] *vt.* 生產, 引起, 拿出。
production [prə'dʌkʃən] *n.* 生產, 作品, 產物。
productive [prə'dʌktɪv] *adj.* 生產的。
progress ['prəʊgres] *n.* 進行, 進步, *vi.* (讀 [prə'gres]) 進展, 進步。
progressively [prə'gresɪvli] *adv.* 逐漸地, 漸進地, 進步地。
promise ['prɒmɪs] *n.* (有前途的) 希望, 約定, *vt. & vi.* 允許, 答應。
proper ['prəpeɪ] *adj.* 適當的, 相當

的。
properly ['prɒpəli] *adv.* 相當地, 適當地。
property ['prɒpəti] *n.* 財產。
prospect ['prɒspekt] *n.* 前景。
protect [prə'tekt] *vt.* 保護。
protract [prə'trækt] *vt.* 延長, 持久, protracted war 持久戰。
prove [pru:v] *vt. & vi.* 證明。
provide [prə'vaɪd] *vt. & vi.* 準備, 供應, 提供。
psychological [saɪkə'lɒdʒɪkəl] *adj.* 心理上的。
public ['pʌblɪk] *adj.* 公共的。
puff [pʌf] *vt. & vi.* 喘氣, 噴, *n.* 吹, 夸口。
pull [pʊl] *vt. & vi.* 拉, 拖。
pump [pʌmp] *vt. & vi.* 抽壓, 抽動。
punish ['pʌnɪʃ] *vt.* 罰, 懲罰。
pupil ['pjʊ:pɪl] *n.* 學生 (指小, 中學生)。
purpose ['pɜ:pəs] *n.* 目的, 用途。
put [pʊt] *vt.* 放, put on 穿。

Q

quality ['kwɒləti] *n.* 性質, 品質。
quarrel ['kwɒrəl] *vi.* 吵架。
quarter ['kwɔ:tə] *n.* 四分之一。
question ['kwɛstʃən] *n.* 疑問, 問題。
questionable ['kwɛstʃənəbl] *adj.* 可疑

的。
quick [kwɪk] *adj.* 快的, 迅速的。
quickly ['kwɪkli] *adv.* 快, 迅速。
quite [kwaɪt] *adv.* 非常, 十分。

R

race [reis] *n.* 賽跑。

radio ['reɪdiəʊ] *n.* 收音機。

rain [rein] *vi.* 下雨, *n.* 雨。
raise [reiz] *vt.* 抬起, 提起, 引起。
range [reindʒ] *n.* 范围, 距离。
rank [ræŋk] *n.* 等级, 次序, 排。
rapid ['ræpid] *adj.* 快的, 急的, 迅速的。
rapidly ['ræpidli] *adv.* 快速。
rarely ['reəli] *adv.* 难得, 很少。
rash [ræʃ] *adv.* 轻率的, 鲁莽的。
rate [reit] *n.* 速度, 比率, 程度。
rather ['rɑ:ðə] *adv.* 相当。
reach [ri:tʃ] *vt. & vi.* 到达。
reaction [ri'ækʃən] *n.* 反作用, 反动, 反应。
read [ri:d] *vt. & vi.* 读。
reader ['ri:də] *n.* 读者。
readily ['redili] *adv.* 爽快地, 容易地。
ready ['redi] *adj.* 有准备的, 现成的。
real [riəl] *adj.* 真实的, 实际的。
reality [ri'ælitɪ] *n.* 现实。
really ['riəli] *adv.* 真正地。
rear [riə] *adj. & n.* 后部。
reason ['ri:zn] *n.* 理由, 原因。
rebuke [ri'bjʊ:k] *vt.* 斥责, 谴责。
receive [ri'si:v] *vt. & vi.* 接受, 收到。
recent ['ri:snt] *adj.* 新近的, 近来的。
recently ['ri:sntli] *adv.* 新近, 近来。
reckless ['rekli:s] *adj.* 不顾前后的, 轻率的。
recognize ['rekəgnaiz] *vt.* 认识, 认

出。
record ['rekə:d] *n.* 纪录。
recovery [ri'kʌvəri] *n.* 恢复, 复原。
recreational [rekri'eɪʃənl] *adj.* 娱乐的。
red [red] *adj.* 红的。
reduce [ri'dju:s] *vt.* 减少, 减轻。
refer [ri'fə:] *vi.* 参看, 涉及(用to)。
referee [refə'ri:] *n.* 裁判员。
reflex [ri'fleks] *adj. & n.* 反射, 反应。
regiment ['redʒimənt] *n.* 团(军)。
regular ['regjələ] *adj.* 通常的, 有规则的, 按规定的, 定期的。
regularity [regju'ləriti] *n.* 有规则, 不变, 整齐。
regulatory [regju'leitəri] *adj.* 调节的。
rehearsal [ri'hɜ:səl] *n.* 练习, 排演。
reject [ri'dʒekt] *vt.* 拒绝, 否认。
relax [ri'læks] *vt. & vi.* 放松。
relaxation [ri'læks'eɪʃən] *n.* 放松。
relay [ri'lei] *n.* 接力。
relief [ri'li:f] *n.* 解除, 放心, 减轻, 接班。
relieve [ri'li:v] *v.* 换班, 解除。
rely [ri'lai] *vi.* 依靠, 信任, to rely on (upon) 依靠。
remain [ri'mein] *vi.* 留下, 仍然是。
remember [ri'membə] *vt. & vi.* 记得, 回忆。
remove [ri'mu:v] *vt. & vi.* 移动, 迁移,

renovate [ˈrenoveɪt] *vt.* 更新, 改善。
repeat [riˈpi:t] *vt., vi. & n.* 重复。
replace [riˈpleɪs] *vt.* 調換, 代替, 还。
replacement [riˈpleɪsmənt] *n.* 替補, 調換。
reply [riˈplai] *vt., vi. & n.* 回答。
report [riˈpɔ:t] *vt. & vi.* 報告, 報導, *n.* 報告, 公報。
republic [riˈpʌblɪk] *n.* 共和國。
reputation [repjuˈteɪʃən] *n.* 名譽, 聲望。
require [riˈkwaɪə] *vt. & vi.* 需要, 要求, 請求。
requirement [riˈkwaɪəmənt] *n.* 要求, 需要, 必需品。
requisite [ˈrekwɪzɪt] *adj.* 必要的, 需要的, *n.* 必需品。
research [riˈsɜ:tʃ] *n.* 研究, 調查。
reserve [riˈzɜ:v] *n.* 預備隊員(球), 貯存, 後備, *vt. & vi.* 保留。
respect [rɪsˈpekt] *n.* 尊敬, 敬意, to pay respects to... 向...致敬。
respectively [rɪsˈpektɪvli] *adv.* 各自, 分別。
respiration [respəˈreɪʃən] *n.* 呼吸。
responsible [rɪsˈpɒnsɪbl] *adj.* 負責任的, responsible for... 負責...。
rest [rest] *vt. & vi.* 休息, 放, 靠, *n.* 休息, 其他。
restless [ˈrestləs] *adv.* 不安定的, 不休息的。
restriction [rɪsˈtrɪkʃən] *n.* 限制。

result [rɪˈzʌlt] *n.* 結果, 成績, *vi.* 由...引起 (from), as a result of... 的結果。
resume [riˈzju:m] *vt.* 恢復, *vi.* 重新開始。
return [riˈtɜ:n] *vi., vt. & n.* 回, 還。
reveal [riˈvi:l] *vt.* 揭露。
review [riˈvju:] *vt.* 複習。
revision [riˈvɪʒən] *n.* 複習, 修正。
revolution [revəˈljʊ:ʃən] *n.* 革命。
rid [rɪd] *vt.* 使解脫, to get rid of 擺脫, 排除。
ride [raɪd] *vt. & vi.* 騎, 乘。
ridiculous [rɪˈdɪkjʊləs] *adj.* 可笑的。
right [raɪt] *adj.* 右的, 權利, 正確的, *adv.* 正確地, 恰好地, right from the beginning 从一开始。
rigid [ˈrɪdʒɪd] *adj.* 嚴格的, 嚴密的, 堅固的。
ring [rɪŋ] *vt. & vi.* 鈴响, 搖鈴, *n.* 圓圈。
rise [raɪz] *vt. & vi.* 上升, 提高, 起身, *n.* 上升。
risk [rɪsk] *n.* 冒險, to take risk 冒險。
rival [ˈraɪvəl] *n.* 對手, 敵手。
river [ˈrɪvə] *n.* 河, 川。
road [rəʊd] *n.* 道路。
roadway [ˈrəʊdweɪ] *n.* 道路(特別指行車的部分)。
roll [rəʊl] *vt. & vi.* 滾轉, 滾動。
Rome [rəʊm] *n.* 羅馬。
room [ru:m] *n.* 房間, 余地, to have room for improvement 有改進的

余地。
room-mate ['ru:'meit] *n.* 住同屋者。
rope [rəʊp] *n.* 繩。
rosy ['rouzi] *adj.* 玫瑰色的。
rotate [rou'teit] *vi. & vt.* 輪流, 旋轉。
rough [rʌf] *adj.* 粗暴的, 粗率的, 艰难的。
roughness ['rʌfnɪs] *n.* 粗暴, 粗糙。
round [raʊnd] *adj.* 圓的, *adv. & prep.* 繞着。
row [rou] *vt. & vi.* 划船, *n.*

rule [ru:l] *n.* 規則, *vt.* 支配, 判決, 管理。
run [rʌn] *n. vt. & vi.* 跑, home run 跑完一圈(棒球)。
runner ['rʌnə] *n.* 賽跑運動員。
rush [rʌʃ] *n. vt. & vi.* 向前猛沖, 沖擊。
Russian ['rʌʃən] *adj. & n.* 俄語, 俄羅斯人。
ruthless ['ru:θlis] *adj.* 无情的, 殘忍的。

S

sad [sæd] *adj.* 悲傷的, 可憐的。
salt [sɔ:lt] *n.* 鹽。
same [seim] *adj.* 相同的。
Saturday ['sætədi] *n.* 星期六。
save [seiv] *vt. & vi.* 拯救, 節省。
say [sei] *vt. & vi.* 說, 講。
saying ['seiɪŋ] *n.* 說, 格言, It goes without saying that... 当然不用說...
scale [skeil] *n.* 等級, 尺, 程度。規模。
scene [si:n] *n.* 場面, 景色。
schedule ['ʃedju:l] *n.* 目錄, 時間表, 預定計劃, *v.* 安排, 制訂表格。
school [sku:l] *n.* 學校。
science ['saɪəns] *n.* 科學。
scientific [saɪən'tɪfɪk] *adj.* 科學的。
scientist ['saɪəntɪst] *n.* 科學家。
score [skɔ:] *n.* 得分, 分數, *vt. & vi.*

得分, 命中。
screen [skri:n] *n.* 幕, *vt.* 掩護。
season ['si:zn] *n.* 季節。
second ['sekənd] *num.* 第二, *n.* 秒, second wind 第二種呼吸, in a second 立刻。
sector ['sektə] *n.* 扇形區, 接力賽跑運動員應跑的一段。
see [si:] *vt. & vi.* 看, see to 留心, 注意。
seem [si:m] *vi.* 好像是, 似乎是。
seize [si:z] *vt. & vi.* 抓住。
select [si'lekt] *vt.* 挑選。
self-satisfaction ['self sətɪs'fækʃən] *n.* 自滿。
sell [sel] *vt. & vi.* 出售。
send [send] *vt. & vi.* 派遣, 送。
sense [sens] *n.* 感覺。
sentence ['sentəns] *n.* 句子, 宣判,

vt. 宣判。
separate ['sepəreit] *vt. & vi.* 分开，
隔离。
September [səp'tembə] *n.* 九月。
series ['siəri:z] *n.* 連續，a series of
一連串，一系列。
serious ['siəriəs] *adj.* 严肃的，严重的。
serve [sə:v] *vt. & vi.* 服务，发球。
set [set] *vt. & vi.* 安置，树立，*n*
套，*adj.* 固定的，to set fire 放火，
to set a record 創造紀錄，a set
of—套，to get set 预备(賽跑时
口令)。
seven ['sevn] *num.* 七。
seventeen ['sevn'ti:n] *num.* 十七。
seventy ['sevnti] *num.* 七十。
several ['sevrəl] *adj.* 种种的，几个。
shake [ʃeik] *vt. & vi.* 振动，搖。
shall [ʃæl] *aux. v.* 将。
shape [ʃeip] *n.* 式样，形状，身体状
况。
share [ʃeə] *n.* 应有的一分，部分，*vt.*
& *vi.* 分担，共享。
she [ʃi:] *pron.* 她。
shine [ʃain] *vi. & vt.* 发光，照耀。
shirt [ʃɔ:t] *n.* 衬衫。
shock [ʃɒk] *n.* 震动，突击，冲击 *vt.*
& *vi.* 激动，冲突。
shoe [ʃu:] *n.* 鞋。
shoot [ʃu:t] *vt., vi. & n.* 射击，投
籃，射門。
shore [ʃɔ:] *n.* 海岸。

short [ʃɔ:t] *adj.* 短的，矮小的，*adv.*
短小地。突然地。
shot [ʃɒt] *n.* 彈丸，射門(投籃)的球，
shot put 推鉛球。
should [ʃud] *aux. v.* 将(shall 的过
去式)，应该。
shoulder ['ʃouldə] *n.* 肩。
shout [ʃaut] *vi. & vt.* 喊叫。
show [ʃou] *vt. & vi.* 表示，出現。
shrink [ʃrɪŋk] *vi. & vt.* 畏縮，退縮。
shut [ʃʌt] *vt. & vi.* 关闭。
shut-out ['ʃʌtaut] *n.* 得零分。
side [said] *n.* 旁边，側，*adj.* 旁的，
home side 主队，visiting side 客
队。
signal ['signl] *n.* 信号，*vi. & vt.* 发
信号。
silence ['siləns] *n.* 安靜。
silent ['silənt] *adj.* 安靜的。
silk [sɪlk] *adj. & n.* 絲綢。
similar ['similə] *adj.* 类似的。
simple ['sɪmpl] *adj.* 简单的，簡易
的。
simply ['sɪmpli] *adv.* 单纯地，仅仅。
since [sɪns] *adv. & prep.* 自从，*conj.*
自从，因为，既然。
sincerely [sin'siəli] *adv.* 誠实地，
忠誠地。
sing [sɪŋ] *vt. & vi.* 唱。
single [sɪŋgl] *adj.* 单独的，*n.* 单，
单打。
sink [sɪŋk] *vt. & vi.* 沉沒，陷落。
sir [sɜ:] *n.* 先生，閣下。

sister ['sɪstə] *n.* 姊妹。
sit [sɪt] *vi. & vt.* 坐。
situation [ˌsɪtʃu'eɪʃən] *n.* 形势, 情况, 位置。
six [sɪks] *num.* 六。
sixteen [sɪks'ti:n] *num.* 十六。
sixty ['sɪksti] *num.* 六十。
size [saɪz] *n.* 大小, 尺寸。
skate [skeɪt] *vi.* 滑冰。
ski [ski:] *vi.* 滑雪。
skier ['ski:ə] *n.* 滑雪者。
skilful ['skɪlfʊl] *adj.* 熟练的, 巧妙的。
skill [skɪl] *n.* 技巧。
skim [skɪm] *vt. & vi.* 轻快地跃过, 掠过, 粗读。
skin [skɪn] *n.* 皮肤。
skip [skɪp] *vt. & vi.* 跳跃, 跳过, 跳绳。
skirt [skɜ:t] *n.* 女裙。
sky [skai] *n.* 天空。
slacken [s'lækən] *vt. & vi.* 减弱, 和缓。
slave [sleɪv] *n.* 奴隶。
sleep [sli:p] *vt. & vi.* 睡眠。
slightly ['slaɪtli] *adv.* 轻微地。
slow [sləʊ] *adj.* 缓慢的, 迟的。
slowly ['sləʊli] *adv.* 缓慢地。
small [smɔ:l] *adj.* 小的, 少的。
smell [smel] *vt. & vi.* 嗅, 闻, *n.* 气味。
smile [smaɪl] *vi., vt. & n.* 微笑。
smoke [sməʊk] *vi.* 吸烟, *n.* 烟。

so [soʊ] *adv., pron. & conj.* 所以, 非常, 如, so far as... is concerned 就...而論, so that 因此, so...that... 如此...以致..., and so on 等等。
soap [soʊp] *n.* 肥皂。
soccer ['sɒkə] *n.* 足球。
social ['soʊʃəl] *adj.* 社会上的, 社交的。
socialism ['soʊʃəlɪzəm] *n.* 社会主义。
socialist ['soʊʃəlɪst] *n.* 社会主义者。
society [sə'saɪəti] *n.* 社会, 协会。
soft [sɒft] *adj.* 柔软的。
soldier ['səʊldɪə] *n.* 军人, 战士。
solve [sɒlv] *vt.* 解决。
some [sʌm] *adj. pron. & adv.* 某些, 若干, 少许。
somebody ['sʌmbədɪ] *n.* 某人。
somehow ['sʌmhaʊ] *adv.* 不知何故, 因某种原因, 用某种方法。
someone ['sʌmwʌn] *n.* 某人。
something ['sʌmθɪŋ] *n.* 某物, 几分。
sometimes ['sʌmtaɪmz] *adv.* 有时。
somewhat ['sʌmhwət] *adv.* 有几分, 有点。
son [sʌn] *n.* 儿子。
song [sɒŋ] *n.* 歌曲。
soon [su:n] *adv.* 即刻, as soon as... 当, no sooner...than... 一...就...。
sort [sɔ:t] *n.* 种类, a sort of 一种。
soul [səʊl] *n.* 灵魂, 人。
sound [saʊnd] *n.* 声音, 音调, *adj.* 健全的, *vi.* 听起来似乎是...

south [sauθ] *n.* 南方。
Soviet ['souviət] *n.* 蘇維埃, *adj.* 蘇維埃的。
spare [spɛə] *vt. & vi.* 節省, *adj.* 閒暇的, 空余的。
speak [spi:k] *vi. & vt.* 說, 演說。
specialize ['speʃəlaɪz] *vt.* 特殊化, 專門化。
specify ['spesɪfaɪ] *vt.* 逐一指明, 列舉。
spectacular [spek'tækjʊlə] *adj.* 壯觀的。
speech [spi:tʃ] *n.* 言論, 演說。
speed [spi:d] *n. vt. & vi.* 速度, 加速 (和 up 連用), 急趕, to pick up speed 加快速度, speed walking 競走。
speedily ['spi:dɪli] *adv.* 迅速地。
spend [spend] *vt. & vi.* 度過, 浪費, 用掉。
spin [spɪn] *vt. & vi.* 迴旋。
spirit ['spɪrɪt] *n.* 精神, 鬼, in good spirits 情緒飽滿, in low spirits 意氣消沉, 情緒不高,
spit [spɪt] *vt. & vi.* 吐, 唾。
splash [splæʃ] *vt. & vi.* 濺水。
sponge [spʌndʒ] *n.* 海綿。
sport [spɔ:t] *n.* 運動。
sportsman ['spɔ:tsmən] *n.* 運動員。
spot [spɒt] *n.* 場面, 地點。
spread [spred] *vt. & vi.* 展開, 傳播。
spring [sprɪŋ] *vi. & vt.* 跳, 彈出, *n.* 跳躍, 彈力。
sprint [sprɪnt] *n.* 短跑, *vi.* 跑短跑。

sprinter ['sprɪntə] *n.* 短跑運動員。
square [skweə] *n.* 正方形, 廣場, *adj.* 四方的。
stadium ['steɪdɪəm] *n.* 體育場。
stage [steɪdʒ] *n.* 舞台, 階段, *vt. & vi.* 上演。
stake [steɪk] *n.* 賭本, 賞品, *vt.* 以 (金錢、生命) 為孤注。
stamina ['stæmɪnə] *n.* 精力。
stance [stæns] *n.* 姿勢。
stand [stænd] *vt. & vi.* 站立, 忍耐。
standard ['stændəd] *n.* 標準, 水平。
start [stɑ:t] *vi. & vt.* 開始, 出發, *n.* 出發, 起跑, crouching start 蹲踞式起跑, standing start 站立式起跑。
starter ['stɑ:tə] *n.* 發令員。
state [steɪt] *n.* 國家, 州, 狀態, *vt.* 陳述, 宣稱。
station ['steɪʃən] *n.* 車站, *vt.* 配置, 駐。
stay [steɪ] *vi. & vt.* 停留, 堅持, to stay the distance 堅持跑完整段距離。
steady ['stedi] *adj.* 穩的, 堅固的。
steal [sti:l] *vt. & vi.* 偷, 潛行。
steel [sti:l] *n.* 鋼。
step [step] *vi. & vt.* 行步, *n.* 步, 步驟。
stick [stɪk] *n.* 棒, *vi.* 依附, to stick to... 堅持。
stiffness ['stɪfnɪs] *n.* 強硬, 不自然。
still [stɪl] *adv.* 仍然。

stimulus ['stimjələs] *n.* 刺激物, 刺激。

sting [stɪŋ] *vt.* 刺, 使痛。

stop [stɒp] *vt. & vi.* 停止, 阻碍。

storm [stɔ:m] *n.* 暴风雨, *vt.* 袭击, 冲击。

story [s'tɔ:ri] *n.* 故事。

straight [streɪt] *adj.* 直的。

straighten ['streɪtn] *vt. & vi.* 使直。

strain [streɪn] *vt.* 使紧张, 使过劳,
vi. 奋力, 出大力, *n.* 紧张, 过劳。

strange [streɪndʒ] *adj.* 奇异的, 不可思议的。

strategy ['strætɪdʒɪ] *n.* 战略。

stream [stri:m] *n.* 小河, 小溪。

street [stri:t] *n.* 街道。

strength [streŋθ] *n.* 气力, with all
one's strength 以一个人的全力。

strengthen ['streŋθən] *vt. & vi.* 加强。

strenuous ['strenjuəs] *adj.* 勇猛的,
奋力的。

stretch [stretʃ] *vt. & vi.* 伸展力, 引
伸, 延伸。

strict [strikt] *adj.* 严格的, 严密的。

strictly ['striktli] *adv.* 严格地, 严密
地。

stride [straɪd] *n.* 跨步, *vt. & vi.* 跨
步。

strike [straɪk] *vt. & vi.* 打击, 敲。

strive [straɪv] *vi.* 努力, 奋斗, to
strive for 力求, 力争。

stroke [straʊk] *n.* 打击, 划水(游

泳)。

strong [strɒŋ] *adj.* 强的, 有力的。

stronghold ['strɒŋhəʊld] *n.* 堡垒。

strongman ['strɒŋmən] *n.* 大力士。

strongly ['strɒŋli] *adv.* 强壮地, 有
力地。

structure ['strʌktʃə] *n.* 结构, 建造
物。

struggle ['strʌgl] *vt. & n.* 斗争。

stubborn ['stʌbən] *adj.* 顽固的, 顽
强的。

student ['stju:dənt] *n.* 大学生。

study ['stʌdi] *vt. & vi.* 学习, 研究,
n. 研究, 书房。

stumble ['stʌmbəl] *vi., vt. & n.* 摔
倒。

stupid ['stju:pɪd] *adj.* 愚蠢的。

subject ['sʌbdʒɪkt] *n.* 科目, *adj.* 附
属的, 易受的, to be subject to
易于。

subjective [sʌb'dʒektɪv] *adj.* 主观的。

substitute ['sʌbstɪtju:t] *n.* 替补者,
代替品, *vt.* 代替。

succeed [sək'si:d] *vt. & vi.* 成功,
继承。

success [sək'ses] *n.* 成功。

successful [sək'sesfʊl] *adj.* 成功的。

such [sʌtʃ] *adj.* 这样的, 如此的,
pron. 这样的人或事物, such as
例如。

sudden [sʌdn] *adj.* 突然的。

suddenly ['sʌdnli] *adv.* 突然地。

sufficient [sə'fɪʃənt] *adj.* 充分的, 足

够的。
sugar [ˈʃʊgə] *n.* 糖。
suggest [səˈdʒest] *vt.* 提議, 提出。
suit [sju:t] *vt. & vi.* 适合, 一套 *n.*
服装。
suitcase [ˈsju:tkeɪs] *n.* 旅行皮箱。
summer [ˈsʌmə] *n.* 夏, 夏天, 夏季。
sun [sʌn] *n.* 太阳。
Sunday [ˈsʌndi] *n.* 星期日。
sunny [ˈsʌni] *adj.* 有阳光的, 愉快的。
superlative [ˈsju:əˈpɪlətɪv] *adj.* 最高的, 最高級的(語法)。
supper [ˈsʌpə] *n.* 晚餐。
supply [ˈsʌplaɪ] *vt.* 供給, *n.* 供給, 补充。
support [səˈpɔ:t] *vt. & n.* 支持, 維持。
suppose [səˈpəʊz] *vt.* 假定。
suppurate [ˈsʌpjʊəreɪt] *vi.* 化膿。

table [ˈteɪbl] *n.* 桌子, 图表。
table-tennis [ˈteɪblˈtenɪs] *n.* 乒乓球。
tactics [ˈtæktɪks] *n.* 战术。
take [teɪk] *vt. & vi.* 拿, 取, 需要,
to take place 举行, 发生, to
take up position 站位置, to take
photograph 照象, to take some-
body in 騙人 to take a look 看一
下, to take it as 当成...看, to
take the risk 冒险。
tall [tɔ:l] *adj.* 高的。

sure [ʃʊə] *adj.* 确信的, 一定的。
surely [ˈʃʊəli] *adv.* 必定地, 确实地。
surface [ˈsɜ:fɪs] *n.* 表面。
surpass [səˈpɑ:s] *vt.* 胜过。
surprise [səˈpraɪz] *vt. & n.* 惊愕。
suspicious [səsˈpɪʃəs] *adj.* 多疑的,
怀疑的。
sweep [swi:p] *vt. & vi.* 扫。
swell [swel] *vi. & vt.* 增大, 膨胀,
肿
swift [swɪft] *adj.* 迅速的。
swim [swɪm] *vi. & vt.* 游泳。
swimmer [ˈswɪmə] *n.* 游泳运动员。
swimming [ˈswɪmɪŋ] *n.* 游泳。
swing [swɪŋ] *vi. & vt.* 摆动。
symptom [ˈsɪmptəm] *n.* 征候, 症状。
system [ˈsɪstɪm] *n.* 系統, 組織(身
体各部分)。
systematic [ˌsɪstɪˈmæɪtɪk] *adj.* 系統
的。

T

tap [tæp] *n. vt. & vi.* 輕叩。
tape [teɪp] *n.* 終点帶。
target [ˈtɑ:ɡɪt] *n.* 目标, 指标。
task [tɑ:sk] *n.* 任务, 工作。
taste [teɪst] *vt. & vi.* 尝味。
teach [ti:tʃ] *vt. & vi.* 教。
teacher [ˈti:tʃə] *n.* 教师。
team [ti:m] *n.* 队。
team-mate [ˈti:meɪt] *n.* 同队队员。
teamwork [ˈti:mwɔ:k] *n.* 队的配合。
tear [tiə] *n.* 泪。

tear [teə] *vt. & vi.* 撕裂。
technique [tek'ni:k] *n.* 技术。
tell [tel] *vt. & vi.* 告, 談述。
temperature [ˈtemprɪtʃə] *n.* 温度。
ten [ten] *num.* 十。
tennis [ˈtenɪs] *n.* 網球。
tense [tens] *adj.* 紧张的, 拉紧的, *v.* 使紧张, *n.* 时态(语法)。
term [tɜ:m] *n.* 学期, 期限, *v.* 称呼, 称为。
terrible [ˈterəbl̩] *adj.* 可怕的。
test [test] *vt. & n.* 試驗, 測驗。
text [tekst] *n.* 課文。
than [ðæn, ðən] *conj. & prep.* 比較。
that [ðæt] *pron.* 那(指人或物), *conj.* 因, 以便。
the [ði:, ðə] *arti.* 这。
theatre [ˈθiətə] *n.* 戏院, 劇場。
their [ðeə] *pron.* 他們的。
them [ðem, ðəm] *pron.* 他們。
themselves [ðəm'selvz] *pron.* 他們自己。
then [ðen] *adv. & conj.* 于是, 其后, 当时, *adj.* 当时。
theory [ˈθiəri] *n.* 理論。
there [ðeə] *adv.* 在那边。
therefore [ˈðeəfɔ:] *adv. & conj.* 因此。
these [ði:z] *pron.* 这些。
they [ðei] *pron.* 他們。
thief [θi:f] *n.* 賊。
thing [θɪŋ] *n.* 物, 事。
think [θɪŋk] *vt. & vi.* 想, 怀念,

以为。
third [θɜ:d] *num.* 第三。
thirteen [ˈθɜ:ti:n] *num.* 十三。
this [ðɪs] *pron.* 这。
thorough [ˈθɒrə] *adj.* 彻底的, 完全的。
thoroughly [ˈθɒrəli] *adv.* 彻底地, 全然地。
those [ðəuz] *pron.* 那些。
though [ðəu] *conj.* 虽。
thought [θɔ:t] *n.* 思想, 思考。
thousand [ˈθauzənd] *num.* 千。
three [θri:] *num.* 三。
throat [θrəʊt] *n.* 咽喉。
through [θru:] *prep.* 通过, *adv.* 遍及。
throughout [θru:'aʊt] *prep.* 遍, 全, *adv.* 到处地。
throw [θrou] *vt., vi. & n.* 投擲。
Thursday [ˈθɜ:zdi] *n.* 星期四。
ticket [ˈtɪkɪt] *n.* 入場券, 門票。
tie [tai] *vt.* 捆, *vi. & n.* 得分相等(运动)。
tight [taɪt] *adj.* 紧密的, 紧的。
tighten [ˈtaɪtn] *vt. & vi.* 紧张, 使紧。
till [tɪl] *prep. & conj.* 直到。
time [taɪm] *n.* 時間, (运动項目用時間計算的)成績, once upon a time 从前, 次数。
tiny [ˈtaɪni] *adj.* 小的, 微弱的。
tire [ˈtaɪə] *vt. & vi.* 使疲劳, 厌倦。
tired [ˈtaɪəd] *adj.* 疲倦
tissue [ˈtɪʃu:] *n.* 組織(生物)。

title ['taɪtl] *n.* 称号, 标题, 書名。
to [tu:, tə] *adv.* 向, *prep.* 向, 对
于。
today [tə'deɪ] *n.* & *adv.* 今日。
together [tə'geðə] *adv.* 共同地。一
起。
tommy-gun ['tɒmi'gʌn] *n.* 冲锋槍。
tomorrow [tə'mɒrəʊ] *n.* & *adv.* 明
天。
tone [taʊn] *n.* 声調。
too [tu:] *adv.* & *conj.* 过于, 也。
tooth [tu:θ] *n.* 牙齿。
top [tɒp] *adj.* 最高的, *n.* 頂上, 最
高点。
top-class ['tɒp'kla:s] *adj.* 头等的。
toss [tɒs] *vt.* & *vi.* 抛, 搖, to toss
up擲銅錢(选择比賽場地)。
touch [tʌtʃ] *vt.* & *vi.* 接触。
touch-line ['tʌtʃ'laɪn] *n.* 边綫。
towards [tu'wɔ:dz] *prep.* 向, 朝着,
对。
tower ['taʊə] *n.* 塔。
town [taʊn] *n.* 城鎮。
track [træk] *n.* 跑道。
train [treɪn] *vt.* & *vi.* 訓練, 教育,
n. 火車。
trainer ['treɪnə] *n.* 教練員, 教師。
transfer ['trænsfə] *n.* 交接, 轉移,
轉送。

transform [træns'fɔ:m] *vt.* & *vi.* 变
形, 变化。
transitive ['trɑ:nstɪv] *adj.* 及物的
(語法)。
treat [tri:t] *vt.* 对待, 处理, 治疗。
treatment ['tri:tmənt] *n.* 处理, 待
遇, 治疗。
tree [tri:] *n.* 树。
tremendous [tri'mendəs] *adj.* 极大
的, 非常的。
trial ['traɪəl] *n.* 試驗, 考驗, 預賽。
trick [trɪk] *n.* 詭計
trouble ['trʌbl] *vt.* & *vi.* 苦恼, *n.* 煩
恼, 病痛, 困苦。
trouser ['traʊzə] *n.* 褲(多用复数)。
true [tru:] *adj.* 真实的。
truthfully ['tru:θfʊli] *adv.* 实在地。
try [traɪ] *vt.* & *vi.* 試, 試驗。
tube [tju:b] *n.* 管。
Tuesday ['tju:zdi] *n.* 星期二。
turn [tɜ:n] *vt.* & *vi.* 旋轉, 轉, *n.*
轉, 輪流, to take turns 輪流,
in turn 依次。
twelve [twelv] *num.* 十二。
twenty ['twenti] *num.* 二十。
twice [twais] *adv.* 两次地, 再次。
two [tu:] *num.* 二。
type [taɪp] *n.* 类型, 样式。

U

unable [ʌn'eɪbl] *adj.* 不可能的。
unanimous [ju:'nænɪməs] *adj.* 一致
的, 无異議的。
uncertainty [ʌn'sə:tntɪ] *n.* 不确定,

不定的事物。
uncle [ˈʌŋkl] *n.* 伯父, 叔父, 舅父
 …等(父母亲之兄弟)。
unconscious [ʌnˈkɒŋʃəs] *adj.* 不省人
 事的, 不自觉的。
under [ˈʌndə] *prep.* 在…之下, **und-**
er the guidance of 在…的引导
 下, **under control** 在控制下。
underhand [ˈʌndəhænd] *adv.* 手在肩
 以下, *adj.* 低手(传球)
understand [ˈʌndəˈstænd] *vt. & vi.*
 领会, 理解。
undertake [ˈʌndəˈteɪk] *vt. & vi.* 承
 担, 著手, 从事。
unexpected [ˈʌnɪksˈpektɪd] *adj.* 出乎
 意料的。
unfortunately [ʌnˈfɔ:tʃənɪtli] *adv.* 不
 幸地, 遗憾地。
uniform [ˈju:nɪfɔ:m] *adj.* 同样的,
 一致的, 调和的, *n.* 制服。
union [ˈju:njən] *n.* 联合。
unless [ʌnˈles] *conj.* 除非。
un-spent [ʌnˈspent] *adj.* 未用的,
 动力未尽的, 未耗尽的。

until [ʌnˈtɪl] *prep. & conj.* 直到。
untrained [ʌnˈtreɪnd] *adj.* 未受过训
 练的。
unwilling [ʌnˈwɪlɪŋ] *adj.* 不肯的,
 不願的。
up [ʌp] *prep. & adv.* 在上, 向上。
upon [əˈpɒn] *prep.* 在……上。
us [ʌs, əs] *pron.* 我們。
U.S. = United States 合众国(即美
 国)。
use [ju:z] *vt.* 利用, 使用,
vi. & n. 使用, 利用。
used [ju:st] *adj.* (用在to前) 惯于,
 常常, 向来。
useful [ˈju:sfʊl] *adj.* 有用的, 有益
 的。
useless [ˈju:sɪsɪs] *adj.* 无用的, 无益
 的。
usual [ˈju:ʒuəl] *adj.* 常常的, 一向
 的。
usually [ˈju:ʒuəli] *adv.* 常常, 一向。
utmost [ˈʌtməʊst] *adj.* 极度的, 极
 限的, *n.* 极限, 极力。

V

valiant [ˈvæljənt] *adj.* 勇敢的。
variation [ˈvæəriˈeɪʃən] *n.* 变化, 变
 形。
various [ˈvæəriəs] *adj.* 种种的, 各个
 的, 不同的。
vary [ˈvæəri] *vt. & vi.* 变化, 差异。
vast [vɑ:st] *adj.* 广大的, 繁多的。

vegetable [ˈvedʒɪtəbl] *n.* 蔬菜。
verb [vɜ:b] *n.* 动词(语法)。
very [ˈveri] *adj.* 绝对的, 即此的,
adv. 很, 非常。
victory [ˈvɪktəri] *n.* 胜利。
vigorous [ˈvɪɡərəs] *adj.* 强的, 有力
 的, 猛烈的。

vigorously [ˈvɪɡərəsli] *adv.* 有力地。
village [ˈvɪlɪdʒ] *n.* 乡村。
violation [ˌvaɪəˈleɪʃən] *n.* 违犯, 侵害。
vision [ˈvɪʒən] *n.* 视力。
visit [ˈvɪzɪt] *vt. & vi.* 访问。
visitor [ˈvɪzɪtə] *n.* 访问者, 客人。

vital [ˈvaɪtəl] *adj.* 重大的, 致命的。
vivid [ˈvɪvɪd] *adj.* 生动的, 鲜明的。
voice [vɔɪs] *n.* 声音, with one voice 齐声。
volleyball [ˈvɒlɪˈbɔ:l] *n.* 排球。
voluntary [ˈvɒləntəri] *adj.* 志愿的, 随意的。

W

wage [weɪdʒ] *n.* 工资。 *v.* 从事于, 进行(战争)。
wait [weɪt] *vt. & vi.* 等待。
wake [weɪk] *vi. & vt.* 醒, 叫醒。
walk [wɔ:k] *vi. & vt.* 步行, 散步, *n.* 行程, speed walking 竞走。
walker [ˈwɔ:kə] *n.* 竞走运动员, 步行者。
wall [wɔ:l] *n.* 墙。
want [wɒnt] *vt.* 想要, 欲。
war [wɔ:] *n.* 战争。
warm [wɔ:m] *vt. & vi.* 使暖和, 变暖。 *adj.* 暖和的, warming up 做准备活动。
was [wɔ:] *be* 的过去式。
wash [wɒʃ] *vt. & vi.* 洗。
waste [weɪst] *vt.* 浪费, *adj.* 废物的。
watch [wɒtʃ] *n.* 錶, 守望, *vt.* 观看, 看守, 留心, *vi.* 注视。
water [ˈwɔ:tə] *n.* 水。
wave [weɪv] *n.* 波浪, *vt. & vi.* 波动, 挥舞, 飘扬。
way [weɪ] *n.* 道路, 方法, by the

way 顺便。
we [wi:] *pron.* 我们。
weapon [ˈwepən] *n.* 武器。
wear [weə] *vt.* 穿, 戴。
Wednesday [ˈwenzdi] *n.* 星期三。
week [wi:k] *n.* 週, 星期。
weigh [weɪ] *vt. & vi.* 重, 称量。
weight [weɪt] *n.* 重量。
weight-lifting [ˈweɪtˈlɪftɪŋ] *n.* 举重。
welcome [ˈwelkəm] *vt.* 欢迎。
welfare [ˈwelfeə] *n.* 福利, 幸福。
well [wel] *adj.* 很好的, 健康的, *adv.* 很好地, 充分地, as well 也, as well as 和……同样。
well-trained [welˈtreɪnd] *adj.* 有良好训练的。
went [went] *go* 的过去式。
were [wɜ:, weə, wɜ:] *be* 的过去式。
west [west] *n.* 西方, *adj.* 西方的。
what [hwɒt] *pron. & interr.* 什么。
whatever [hwətˈevə] *pron.* 不论什么。
when [hwen] *conj. interr.* 当……时, 何时。

where [hwa:s] *conj.* 在那里, *interr.*
何处。

whether ['hweθə] *conj.* 不論, 是
否, *pron. & adj.* 二者中的一个,
whether...or 不論...或者。

which [hwitʃ] *pron. & adj.* 哪一个,
哪些。

while [hwaɪl] *n.* 一会儿。

whistle ['hwɪsl] *vt. & vi.* 吹笛, 吹
哨, *n.* 哨子。

who [hu:] *interr. & pron.* 誰。

whole [həʊl] *adj.* 整个的, 全体的。

whole-heartedly ['həʊl'hɑ:tɪdli] *adv.*
全心全意地, 誠懇的。

whom [hu:m, hum] *pron.* 誰。

whose [hu:z] *pron.* 誰的, 某人的。

why [hwaɪ] *interr.* 为什么。

wide [waɪd] *adj.* 寬的, 廣闊的, 廣
大的。

wife [waɪf] *n.* 妻。

will [wɪl] *aux. v.* 将要。

will [wɪl] *n.* 願望, 決心, 意志。

will-power ['wɪl'paʊə] *n.* 意志力。

win [wɪn] *vt. & vi.* 贏得, 得, to
win the day 战胜。

wind [wɪnd] *n.* 风, 气息, second
wind 第二种呼吸。

windpipe ['wɪnd'paɪp] *n.* 气管。

window ['wɪndəʊ] *n.* 窗子。

wine [waɪn] *n.* 葡萄酒, 果酒, 酒。

wing [wɪŋ] *n.* 翅膀, 翼, 鋒(足球)。

winner ['wɪnə] *n.* 得胜者。

winter ['wɪntə] *n.* 冬天。

wise [waɪz] *adj.* 聰明的, 博學的。

wish [wɪʃ] *n, vt. & vi.* 希望, 想
要。

with [wɪð] *prep.* 和...一起, 用。

within [wɪð'in] *prep.* 在...內。

without [wɪð'au] *prep.* 在...外,
沒有。

witness ['wɪtnɪs] *n.* 証明, 亲眼看見
的人。

woman ['wʊmən] *n.* 女人。

wonder ['wʌndə] *n, vt. & vi.* 惊
奇。

woods [wudz] *n.* 小树林(单、复数
通用)。

wooden ['wʊdn] *adj.* 木制的。

word [wɜ:d] *n.* 單詞, 言語, in a
word 总而言之, in other words
换言之。

work [wɜ:k] *vi.* 工作, *n.* 著作,
work out 詳細作出(計劃)。

worker ['wɜ:kə] *n.* 工人。

world [wɜ:ld] *n.* 世界, all over the
world 全世界。

worry ['wɒrɪ] *vi.* 駭心。

worse [wɜ:s] *adj.* 更坏的, *bad.* 的
比較級。

worst [wɜ:st] *adj.* 最坏的, *bad.* 的
最高級。

worsted ['wʊstɪd] *n.* 毛絨絨。

would [wʊd, wəd] *will* 的过去式。

wound [waʊnd] *n.* 伤。

write [raɪt] *vt. & vi.* 写。

writer ['raɪtə] *n.* 作家。

Y

year [jɜː, jɪə] *n.* 年, 年餘(复数)。

yellow ['jelou] *adj.* 黄色的。

yes [jes] *adv.* 是的。

yesterday ['jestədi] *n.* 昨天。

yet [jet] *adv.* 还(沒有……)。

you [juː, ju] *pron.* 你, 你們。

young [jʌŋ] *adj.* 年輕的。

your [jɜː] *pron.* 你的, 你們的。

yours [jɜːz] *pron.* 你的(东西),
們的(东西)。

yourself [jɜː'self] *pron.* 你自己。

youth [juːθ] *n.* 青年。

Z

zest [zest] *n.* 兴趣, 热心。

zone [zoun] *n.* 区域。